



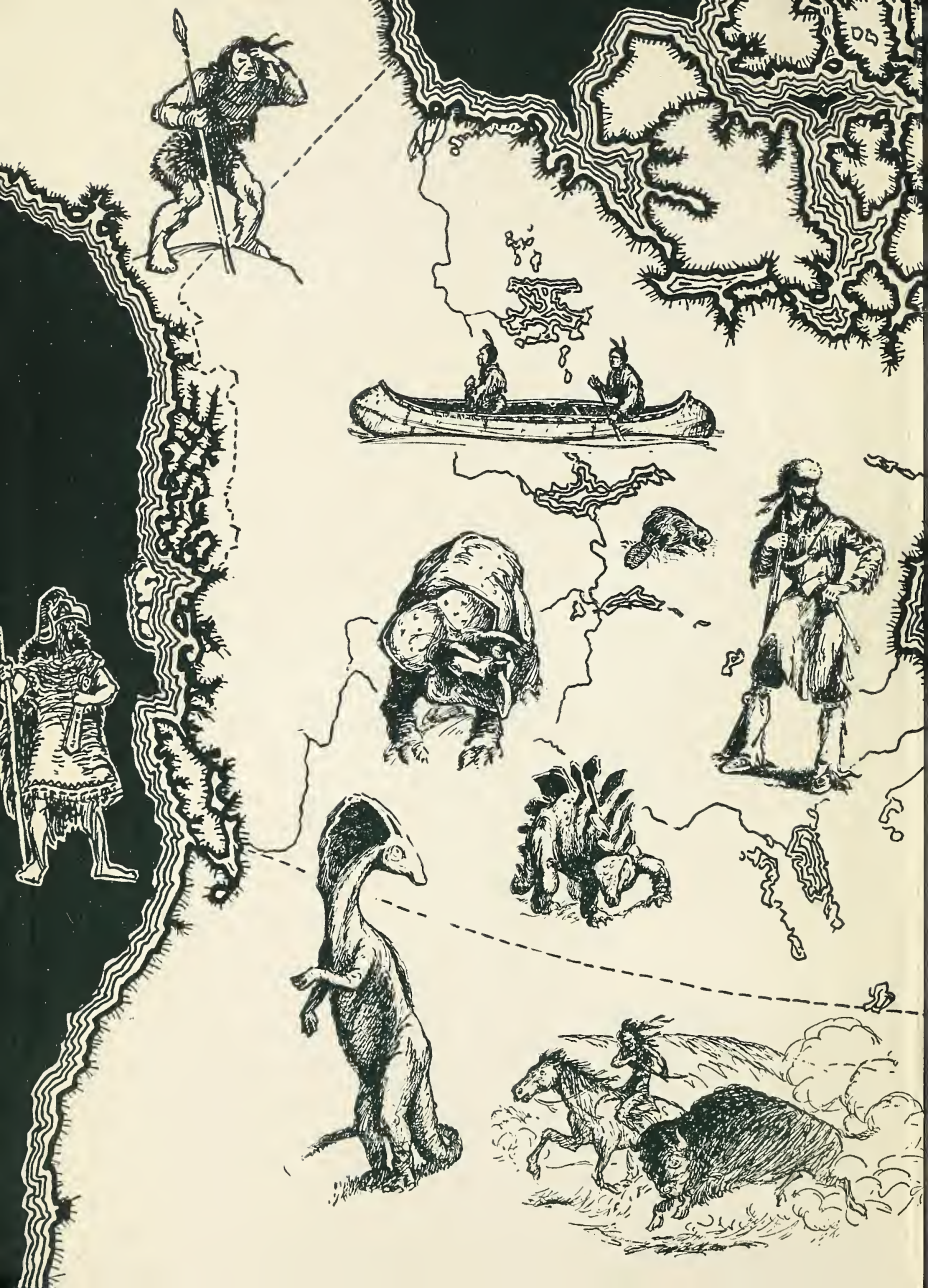
ARCHIVES

DO NOT REMOVE

NO. \_\_\_\_\_

# THE GREAT ADVENTURE







**DIRECTOR OF CURRICULUM**

FEB 19 1951





EX LIBRIS  
UNIVERSITATIS  
ALBERTÆNSIS

---

PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES  
OF ALBERTA

ACC.

73.224

# THE GREAT ADVENTURE

*An Illustrated History of Canada for Young Canadians*







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
University of Alberta Libraries

<https://archive.org/details/greatadventureil00dick>



# The Great Adventure

*An Illustrated History of Canada for  
Young Canadians*

by

DONALDA DICKIE

The John S. Sandercock Library

Department of Educational Foundations

The University of Alberta

Edmonton, Alberta

T63 2G5

*Illustrations by Lloyd Scott*

003141

J. M. DENT & SONS (CANADA) LIMITED  
TORONTO VANCOUVER

All rights reserved  
Copyright, 1950  
by  
J. M. DENT & SONS (CANADA) LIMITED

First printing, September, 1950

*Printed and Bound in Canada*  
by  
THE HUNTER ROSE CO. LIMITED



DEDICATION

*To the memory of*

THOMAS ALTON HALL DICKIE

killed at Vimy

April 9, 1917



## FOREWORD

Most parents and teachers recognize and appreciate the valuable training now given young Canadians in social studies; but an increasing number of us feel that this important work is hampered by the pupils' lack of any connected knowledge of Canadian history. In social studies, history, of necessity, appears in bits and patches as the topics of study require. As a result the pupils not only lose much of the significance of many social studies topics, but they leave school without ever having read a complete, connected history of their country.

The history of Canada is a thoroughly good story; a "movie" in technicolor, enacted on a vast stage, by characters lively, intriguing, romantic, wise and foolish, good and bad, but hardly ever dull. It is full of excursions and alarms; hair-breadth escapes with life and fortune perched upon a paddle blade; great attempts made boldly, lost or won gaily; important events with at least one development that has played, and is playing, an important part in the evolution of the free world of today.

We believe that in preparation both for high school and for life every Canadian boy and girl should read that story, not fictionalized but as history, told simply with plenty of story quality to carry the thread and emphasize the continuity, necessarily lost in social studies, but of first importance for understanding and memory. Such a reading would, we believe, increase the pupil's interest in, and grasp of, his social studies, and send him out of high school with a knowledge of Canada's past, a pride in the nationhood she has won, and an understanding of her responsibilities in the modern world, that would greatly increase his effectiveness as a citizen.

The attempt to prepare a history text simple enough for junior high school reading, with story quality and continuity sufficiently marked has been an intriguing one. As the chapters were drafted they were read and discussed by pupils in grades

6, 7, and 8, in the classrooms, by groups of pupils, and by individual students considering and reporting upon various aspects of the material. Through two years these young assistants did their best, kindly but firmly, to keep the writer's feet on the ground of their world, and to avoid as far as possible "dry stuff about governments", and "unnecessary information". A committee of pupils checked the vocabulary by the Thorndike Twenty Thousand Work Book and assisted in bringing it to, in the first half, the grade 6; in the second half, the grade 7 level. The concepts were tested in discussion and by practical, as well as written, comprehension tests.

For this invaluable assistance in the preparation of the book I am deeply indebted to Mr. Murray MacDonald, the principal, and to the students of the University School, Edmonton; to the teachers and student groups in the different provinces who read and reported upon special chapters or parts of chapters; and particularly to Miss Isabella Long (Grade 8) for much useful comment, and to Miss Alice Long (Grade 7) who read the completed manuscript.

I am sincerely grateful also to Miss Edith Deyell and Mr. Clyde McK. Smith for their friendly criticism and valuable suggestions; to Mr. V. L. Denton who before his death in 1944 did much by his criticism and commendation to guide and shape the book; to Professor M. E. Long, and Professor J. M. S. Careless for their reading and correction of the galleys; to Mrs. Adrian Magrath who patiently typed and retyped the manuscript; to Mrs. Bruce Parker for her care in reading the proof, and to Mr. C. J. Eustace for his piloting the book through the press; and finally to Mr. W. G. Stephen by whose encouragement the work was begun, and whose steady faith has made it possible to complete it, to Mr. Lloyd Scott whose delightful drawings so skilfully express the spirit as well as the facts of the story; to Mr. A. W. Parsons who read the passages relating to Newfoundland.



# CONTENTS

## The First Adventure: Canada Is Born

### *Chapter One: How it Began*

1. How Canada and North America Were Built . . . . .	1
2. Canada Fills Her Basement . . . . .	3
3. Canada Has Her Face Lifted . . . . .	5
4. Canada's Advantages and Disadvantages . . . . .	6
a. Advantages . . . . .	6
b. Disadvantages . . . . .	8

### *Chapter Two: First Came the Red Men*

1. The First People . . . . .	10
2. The First Canadians . . . . .	12
a. They Used Chiefly the Animal Life . . . . .	12
b. They Co-operated . . . . .	15
c. The Red Men Were Democratic . . . . .	17
3. What the White Man Owes to the Redman . . . . .	18

### *Chapter Three: Then Came the White Men*

1. The Vikings, 1000 A.D. . . . .	21
2. Sugar and Spice, Silks, Jewels and Gold, 1200-1500 . . . . .	24
a. The Race for the Spice Islands . . . . .	25
b. Christopher Columbus Seeks Spice and Finds Sugar . . . . .	26
c. John Cabot Discovers North America . . . . .	27

## The Second Adventure: Discovering Canada

### *Chapter Four: The Fishermen Step in (1500 to 1600)*

1. The "New Found Land" . . . . .	31
a. The Fishermen Knock at the Door . . . . .	31
b. The Grand Bank . . . . .	32
2. Jacques Cartier Steps Inside . . . . .	34
a. The World Is Proved Round . . . . .	34
b. Cartier Follows the Fishermen In . . . . .	36
c. Quebec; The Beautiful . . . . .	36
d. Alas for Charlesbourg-Royal . . . . .	38
e. The Castaways . . . . .	39
3. In the Queen's Name . . . . .	41
4. Dry Fishing . . . . .	42
a. Fishing and Drying . . . . .	43
b. First Fishing Stations . . . . .	45

*Chapter Five: The Fur Traders Take Possession (1600-1635)*

1. Furs Were As Good As Gold . . . . .	47
2. Beaver Hats Were Fashionable . . . . .	48
3. Port Royal: The First Settlement . . . . .	49
a. Exploration Needs a Settlement . . . . .	49
b. Welcome to New France . . . . .	51
c. Farewell Port Royal . . . . .	52
4. England Steps Out . . . . .	53
a. Virginia . . . . .	53
b. Newfoundland . . . . .	55
5. Champlain Finds Quebec . . . . .	57
a. He Takes Sides with the Northern Indians . . . . .	57
b. The Ports Defy the Company . . . . .	58
6. The Discovery of Ontario . . . . .	60
a. The Vignau Story . . . . .	60
b. Champlain Opens the Ottawa Route . . . . .	62
7. The Father of Canada . . . . .	63
a. A Very Great Man . . . . .	63
b. What Champlain Did for Canada . . . . .	65

*Chapter Six: Enter Nova Scotia and Ontario (1635-1660)*

1. Picture of Young Canada . . . . .	68
a. Canada's First Fair . . . . .	69
b. The Canadians Complain . . . . .	71
2. Acadia Becomes Nova Scotia . . . . .	71
a. New Neighbors Move In . . . . .	72
b. The La Tour Story . . . . .	73
Act I: Father and Son . . . . .	74
Act II: Enter the Villain . . . . .	74
Act III: The Best Man Wins . . . . .	76
c. The School for Sailors . . . . .	76
3. The Church Wins Ontario . . . . .	78
a. The Jesuits' Plan . . . . .	78
b. Again the Best Man Wins . . . . .	79
4. Maisonneuve Finds Montreal . . . . .	81
5. The Iroquois' Revenge . . . . .	82
a. The Martyrs . . . . .	82
b. The Heroes . . . . .	84
c. Canada In Despair . . . . .	85

*Chapter Seven: How Canada Was Saved (1660-1682)*

1. What Boucher Told Colbert . . . . .	87
2. Canada Becomes a Royal Province of France . . . . .	89
a. De Tracy Subdues the Iroquois . . . . .	91

# CONTENTS

xi

3.	Talon Settles Canada . . . . .	92
	a. The Seigneurs . . . . .	93
	b. The Habitants . . . . .	94
	c. The Brides "Were a Handful" . . . . .	95
	d. Life in Early Days . . . . .	96
	e. The Captain and the Curé . . . . .	98
	f. Laval: Bishop and Saint . . . . .	98
	g. Canada Begins to Support Herself . . . . .	100
4.	Nova Scotia and Her Neighbors . . . . .	101
	a. Acadia Gets More Acadians . . . . .	101
	b. The English Colonies Were Growing Fast . . . . .	103

## The Third Adventure: Exploring Canada

### *Chapter Eight: Canada Takes Possession of the Great West* (1663-1684)

1.	The Situation . . . . .	106
2.	Radisson and Groseilliers Lead the Way . . . . .	108
	a. They Make Friends . . . . .	108
	b. They Organize the Fur Trade . . . . .	110
	c. The Great Bay of the North . . . . .	112
3.	Canada Takes Possession of the West . . . . .	114
	a. The Fathers Enter the Upper Country . . . . .	114
	b. Ontario's First Tourists: De Casson and Party . . . . .	115
	c. The Gentlemen Adventurers Seize Hudson Bay . . . . .	117
	d. The Taking Possession Parties . . . . .	118
4.	Frontenac: The Great Onontio . . . . .	120
	a. Fort Frontenac and the Frontenac Traders . . . . .	122
5.	La Salle Makes His Dream Come True . . . . .	123
	a. Fort Brokenheart . . . . .	123
	b. Louisiana . . . . .	125

### *Chapter Nine: The Fight For Canada (1682-1763)*

1.	The Situation . . . . .	127
2.	The Raiders (1682-1713) . . . . .	128
	a. The Massacre of Lachine . . . . .	128
	b. The Commandos . . . . .	129
	c. Sir William Phipps of Boston . . . . .	130
	d. Le Moyne D'Iberville Raids Newfoundland . . . . .	132
	e. A Polite Conquest . . . . .	133
3.	The Combatants: Canada . . . . .	136
	a. Montreal Was Rough and Tough . . . . .	136
	b. Quebec was Dignified . . . . .	137
	c. The People Were Happy . . . . .	138
	d. Canada's Advantages and Disadvantages . . . . .	139
	e. The English Colonies were Independent . . . . .	139

4.	Preparations for the Fight . . . . .	141
	a. Canada Prepares . . . . .	141
	b. The Curtain Raiser . . . . .	143
	c. Britain Builds Halifax . . . . .	144
5.	The Last Round of the Long War (The Seven Years' War 1756-1763) . . . . .	145
	a. The Expulsion of the Acadians . . . . .	145
	b. Canada Wins the Battle But— . . . . .	147
	c. On the Plains of Abraham . . . . .	148
	d. Britain Won the War . . . . .	151

*Chapter Ten: Britain Takes Over Canada (1760-1783)*

1.	After the War . . . . .	152
2.	The Conspiracy of Pontiac . . . . .	154
3.	How America Was Divided . . . . .	157
4.	Nova Scotia Surges Forward . . . . .	159
	a. The First Legislature . . . . .	159
	b. Maudslow . . . . .	161
	c. The Port of Joy . . . . .	163
5.	Newfoundland Seizes Her Chance . . . . .	164
6.	Canada Also Begins to Prosper . . . . .	166
7.	Canada's Three Problems . . . . .	169
8.	The English Colonies Become the United States . . . . .	171
	a. The Quarrel . . . . .	171
	b. The Fight . . . . .	173

*Chapter Eleven: The Pedlars and the Gentlemen (1760-1793)*

1.	The Rivals . . . . .	177
	a. The Gentlemen Make Hay . . . . .	177
	b. The Pedlars Return to the Camps . . . . .	179
2.	British and French Canadians Become Partners . . . . .	180
	a. Alexander Henry Led the Way . . . . .	180
	b. The Partners: French and British . . . . .	181
3.	The Pedlars Cut the Gentlemen's Line . . . . .	183
	a. Grand Portage to Athabasca . . . . .	183
	b. The North West Company . . . . .	185
4.	The Rivals Get Set . . . . .	187
	a. The Nor' Westers Organize their Business . . . . .	187
	b. The Gentlemen Explore the North . . . . .	188
5.	The Nor' Westers Win—and Lose . . . . .	191
	a. Peter Pond Did the Spade Work . . . . .	191
	b. The River of Disappointment . . . . .	192
	c. The End of the Long Trail . . . . .	195



6. Enter British Columbia . . . . .	197
a. Captain Cook . . . . .	197
b. A Play in Three Acts	
Captain Vancouver—Don Quadra . . . . .	198

## The Fourth Adventure: Settling Canada

### *Chapter Twelve: The Loyalists (1783-1791)*

1. The United Empire Loyalists . . . . .	200
2. Then Came the Loyalists . . . . .	201
a. Old Friends and New Homes in Nova Scotia . . . . .	201
b. On the Saint John . . . . .	204
3. New Provinces . . . . .	206
a. New Brunswick and Cape Breton . . . . .	206
b. Prince Edward Island . . . . .	207
4. The Loyalists in Canada . . . . .	208
a. Farmer Settlers . . . . .	208
b. The Hungry Year . . . . .	211
5. The Loyalists Make Homes . . . . .	212
a. Fashions in Houses . . . . .	212
b. Fashions in Food and Clothing . . . . .	213
c. Fashions in Fun: Bees . . . . .	215
6. British North America . . . . .	216
7. Newfoundland's Difficulties . . . . .	218

### *Chapter Thirteen: British North America Gets a Foothold (1791-1814)*

1. The Nor'Westers Win British Columbia . . . . .	222
a. Simon Fraser Explores the "Impassable River" . . . . .	222
b. David Thompson Outwits the Piegans . . . . .	225
c. "Slow and Steady" Loses the Race . . . . .	228
2. The Second Wave of Settlers . . . . .	230
a. The Displaced Scots . . . . .	230
b. More United Empire Loyalists . . . . .	231
3. Their Transportation Was Terrible . . . . .	232
a. Bateaux, Durham Boats, and Bad Roads . . . . .	232
b. "Wooden Wagons" on the Lakes . . . . .	233
4. The Big Chance in Trade . . . . .	234
a. Wheat and Timber . . . . .	235
b. The British Provinces Leap into the Breach . . . . .	236
5. British North America Defends Herself . . . . .	238
a. How it Began . . . . .	238
b. What Happened . . . . .	240
c. The Privateers . . . . .	242
d. How it Ended . . . . .	243

*Chapter Fourteen: New Provinces Sprouting (1815-1840)*

1. Our Eastern Lookout Triumphs . . . . .	245
a. Newfoundland Begins to Climb . . . . .	245
b. The "Unhappy Time" . . . . .	247
c. Triumph . . . . .	248
2. The Red River Story . . . . .	249
a. The Companies Quarrel . . . . .	249
b. The Silver Chief Founds Red River . . . . .	250
c. The Nor'Westers Attack . . . . .	251
d. The Selkirk Settlers Fight Back . . . . .	252
3. The Pedlars and the Gentlemen Unite . . . . .	254
a. The Fight for Athabasca "As the Story Goes" . . . . .	254
b. Union . . . . .	256
c. The Little Emperor . . . . .	257
4. Our Westward Lookout: Columbia . . . . .	259
a. Quick-Witted Bride . . . . .	259
b. The Okanagan Trail: End of the First Trans-Canada . . . . .	260
c. Fort Vancouver . . . . .	262
d. McLoughlin's Men . . . . .	263

*Chapter Fifteen: The Pioneers (1815-1850)*

1. Enter the Pioneers . . . . .	265
a. Many Borrowed the Money to Come . . . . .	265
b. The Officials Mis-manage the Lands . . . . .	267
2. The Pioneers Improve Communications . . . . .	268
a. Stage Coach Days . . . . .	268
b. Stylish Steamers . . . . .	270
c. Canals Were All the Fashion . . . . .	271
d. Railways were Coming In . . . . .	272
3. Canada Takes Over Her Own Post Office . . . . .	274
4. What They Worked at . . . . .	275
a. Timber Takes the Lead . . . . .	275
b. Poor Farming . . . . .	277
c. Good Fishing . . . . .	278
d. Great Ship Building . . . . .	279
e. Proud Growing . . . . .	280
5. The Good Times They Had . . . . .	280

*Chapter Sixteen: The British Provinces Win Their Tools (1815-1860)*

1. The Bells Begin to Ring . . . . .	286
a. The Church Bells . . . . .	286
2. The School Bells Call All the Children . . . . .	288

3. The Pioneers Solve a Puzzling Problem . . . . .	291
a. The Situation . . . . .	292
b. The Struggle . . . . .	294
c. The Moderate Reformers Think it Out . . . . .	296
d. The Problem . . . . .	297
e. The Solution . . . . .	298
f. How They Worked it Out . . . . .	299

## The Fifth Adventure: Canada Becomes A Country

### *Chapter Seventeen: Confederation (1815-1867)*

1. Dreams . . . . .	305
a. British North America is Pushed Out of the Nest . . . . .	305
b. The Small Dream . . . . .	306
c. The Railways Did It . . . . .	307
d. The Big Dream . . . . .	308
2. Dangers . . . . .	309
a. Red River Threatened . . . . .	309
b. Fifty-four Forty or Fight! (British Columbia) . . . . .	311
c. The Gold Rush . . . . .	313
d. Civil War in the United States . . . . .	315
3. Deadlock . . . . .	316
4. Dreamers: The Fathers of Confederation . . . . .	318
5. Discussion . . . . .	320
6. Dominion . . . . .	321

### *Chapter Eighteen: Building East and West (1867-1886)*

1. The First Dominion Parliament . . . . .	325
2. Bringing In the Provinces . . . . .	327
a. The Crisis in the Maritimes . . . . .	327
b. The Tragedy at Red River (The first "Western") . . . . .	328
c. British Columbia Joins the Dominion . . . . .	330
d. Prince Edward Island Comes In . . . . .	333
3. The "Great Lone Land" and Its People . . . . .	333
a. The Missionaries . . . . .	334
b. The Whiskey Smugglers . . . . .	335
c. The North West Mounted Police . . . . .	336
d. The Indian Treaties . . . . .	338
e. The Old Timers . . . . .	340
4. The North West Rebellion (A Shooting "Western") . . . . .	342

5. The Second Trans-Canada . . . . .	344
a. The Intercolonial . . . . .	345
b. A New Idea: the "National" Policy . . . . .	345
c. Getting the Money . . . . .	346
d. Building the Line . . . . .	347
e. The Last Spike . . . . .	349

*Chapter Nineteen: Growing Up (1867-1914)*

1. The Morning After: Reaction . . . . .	351
2. The Builders . . . . .	354
a. The Poets Sing for Canada . . . . .	354
b. The Story Tellers Write of Canada . . . . .	356
c. The Press Teaches Canada . . . . .	357
3. The Changing World Helps . . . . .	359
a. Changes by Inventions . . . . .	359
b. Changes by Education . . . . .	361
c. Horse and Buggy Days . . . . .	363
d. A Great Canadian . . . . .	366
4. Canada's Century . . . . .	367
a. The New Leader . . . . .	367
b. Nobody Came to the Party; Then Stampede! . . . . .	368
c. Up-to-date Immigration . . . . .	369
d. Wheat Becomes Canada's Staple . . . . .	370
e. "New Canadians" . . . . .	371
f. Two New Provinces . . . . .	373
5. Power, Coal and Steel, Gold and Silver . . . . .	374
6. Newfoundland Grows Up by Herself . . . . .	376
7. Canada Feels Herself a Nation . . . . .	377

*Chapter Twenty: Canada Becomes A Nation (1914-1939)*

1. Canada Takes Her Test . . . . .	380
a. The Rising Storm . . . . .	380
b. The Canadians Win Great Glory . . . . .	381
c. The Home Front Passes the Test . . . . .	384
2. Canada Becomes a Nation . . . . .	386
a. In the Commonwealth . . . . .	386
b. In the League of Nations . . . . .	387
3. The Brave New World . . . . .	389
4. Co-operation . . . . .	391
a. The Working People Unite . . . . .	391
b. The Farmers Form Wheat Pools . . . . .	392
c. The Fishermen Co-operate . . . . .	393

5. The Great North . . . . .	394
a. Bush Pilots . . . . .	394
b. Down North . . . . .	396
c. Northern Trade and Government . . . . .	398
6. Boom . . . . .	399
7. The Great Depression . . . . .	400
a. Drought . . . . .	401
b. Newfoundland Takes it on the Chin . . . . .	403
c. A Great Social Change . . . . .	404
d. Enter the Ladies and Two New Parties . . . . .	406
e. The Visit of the King and Queen . . . . .	408

## The Great Adventure: Canada Steps Out Into The World

### *Chapter Twenty-One: Canada In the Second World War (1939-1945)*

1. How the Second World War Began . . . . .	411
a. Here Come the Canadians . . . . .	412
b. Dunkirk . . . . .	413
c. The Battle of Britain . . . . .	414
2. The Battle of the Atlantic . . . . .	416
a. The Royal Canadian Navy . . . . .	417
b. The Royal Canadian Airforce . . . . .	418
3. Enter the United States . . . . .	420
4. With the Canadian Army . . . . .	421
a. At Dieppe . . . . .	421
b. In Italy . . . . .	423
5. D-Day and After . . . . .	424
6. How It Ended . . . . .	427
a. The Battle of Germany . . . . .	427
b. A Tragedy and a Comedy . . . . .	429
c. The Secret Service Men . . . . .	430
7. Welcome Home . . . . .	431
a. The Homefolks . . . . .	431
b. The Homeland . . . . .	435

### *Chapter Twenty-Two: Canada and the Neighbors (1763-1950)*

1. The Big League . . . . .	439
a. The Scrub Team Wins a Game . . . . .	440
b. A Dangerous Situation . . . . .	442
c. Canada Plays as a Junior Team . . . . .	444
d. The Pirate Don Durk of Dowdee . . . . .	446
e. Partners . . . . .	447
f. Quitters . . . . .	448

2.	The British Commonwealth of Nations . . . . .	451
	a. The Old Commonwealth . . . . .	451
	b. The New Commonwealth . . . . .	453
3.	Canada and the United Nations . . . . .	455
	a. The Atlantic Charter . . . . .	455
	b. The United Nations Organization . . . . .	456
	c. Canada Becomes a Middle Power . . . . .	457
	d. The United Nations At Work . . . . .	459
	e. The Atlantic Pact . . . . .	460
	f. The Cold War . . . . .	462
4.	Enter Newfoundland . . . . .	462



# *The First Adventure: Canada is Born*

## Chapter One

### HOW IT BEGAN

#### I

#### HOW CANADA AND NORTH AMERICA WERE BUILT

THE story of Canada begins with one of the biggest explosions the world has ever seen. It happened in the days when the sea covered the earth and God said:

“Let the waters under the heavens be gathered together unto one place and let the dry land appear.” And it was so.

The rising of the dry land was a tremendous affair. Terrific earthquakes tore open the floor of the sea and threw up vast volcanoes which rose above the water. Huge cracks opened in the sides of these volcanoes and boiling lava poured out, building the mountains higher and higher and bridging the spaces between them. With the lava, up from the center of the earth, came copper, lead, zinc, nickel, iron, silver, gold, platinum. The minerals filled the cracks in the rocks and the lava piled new mountains on top of them. It took millions of years, but in the end a





chain of towering mountains stood in a great curve round Hudson Bay.

Frost cracked them, winds blew upon them, rains carried their sands down to the sea. Today there is left of them only the worn, old Laurentian Mountains in Quebec; and the wide



Prehistoric North America

band of rough lowland which is called the Canadian Shield. The Shield, which covers almost two-thirds of Canada, is one of the oldest pieces of land in the world.

The second part of Canada to rise above the sea was a mountain range along what is now the west coast. Another chain, the Appalachian, lifted its peaks above sea level in the east. Round these three corner posts, the continent of North America was built.

## II

## CANADA FILLS HER BASEMENT

The sea drained off the Great Plain between the east and west ranges. The climate, even in Canada, was then as warm and moist as the tropics are now. The plants, which had been living only in the sea, crept out of the water and began to live in the great swamps of the lowlands. These first land plants were just short, branching stems, but they grew larger, and presently tall tree ferns, horsetails, and seal trees grew thick in the marshes. These first trees had neither flowers nor fruit, but they were green. America was no longer bare; she had begun to put on the beautiful green dress she wears today.

Soon she was no longer still and silent for the animals followed the plants out of the water. First came the amphibians, frogs and their kind. The swamps suited them; they paddled about on their short legs, looking for small fish to eat. As yet there were no bees, birds, or butterflies, but giant insects flew among the clumsy-looking trees. In those days dragonflies had wings two feet across, and huge spiders lived in the rotting logs. Our continent had now both color and movement.

As the ages passed, the amphibians grew smaller and the reptiles ruled the land. There were vast numbers of reptiles of all sizes. Some were plant-eaters, others flesh-eaters. Some lived in the water, others on the land, still others in the air. The largest were the dinosaurs. They



Dinosaurs

were the largest animals that ever lived, great towering beasts, 20 feet long, 20 feet high, and weighing up to 40 tons. In Dinosaur Park near Drumheller, Alberta, the skeletons of more than 20 kinds of dinosaurs have been found; their bones lie thick on the ground. In that strange valley it is easy to picture that far-off early world. Everything was strange and huge there, the mountains higher than any we know, the great swamps knee deep in mud and steaming in the tropical sun. Enormous palms, ferns and grasses crowded the swamps. Among them the dinosaurs wandered, and over them the flying reptiles swooped like model airplanes.



Dinosaurs and flying Reptiles

For millions of years the great trees and plants and the huge animals lived and died. Layer after layer of their bodies fell upon the spongy earth, each layer pressing those below it into peat. Then the seas swept over the plains and their heavy sands pressed the peat into coal and oil. In this way Canada and the United States filled their basements with fuel for their people.

When the Rocky Mountains rose, they, too, brought up from the center of the earth gold, silver, lead, zinc, copper. The Rockies gave Canada a second rich mineral field, a wonderful playground, and some of the finest scenery in the world. When the seas drained off the plains for the last time, they left the thick layer of rich black soil which now makes the wheat lands of Manitoba and Saskatchewan.

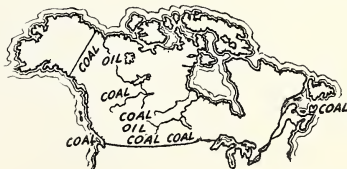
This belt of good soil is one of Canada's richest resources. In the past, floods and winds have worn it away; prairie fires have burned, and careless farmers have worked some of the goodness out of it, but it still grows the finest wheat in the world. Modern Canadians are learning how to conserve, that is to save and take care of this great resource. Ways of guarding against fire, flood, and wind are being worked out and farmers are being taught how to keep their fields fertile.<sup>1</sup>

### III

#### CANADA HAS HER FACE LIFTED

With the rising of the Rocky Mountains a strange thing happened. The climate turned cold. Great ice sheets moved across the country, ploughing out valleys beneath them and piling up hills of earth in front of them. For thousands of years an ice cap covered nearly all of what is now Canada and part of what

<sup>1</sup> You would enjoy the film *Birth of the Soil*.



is now the United States. Then warmer weather returned. The glaciers melted back to the mountain tops and the polar regions; plants and animals moved north again.

The ice did great things for Canada. It scraped a thick layer of top soil off the Canadian Shield, leaving its minerals near the surface where men could reach them. It carried the good soil south and laid it over the southern part of Canada where the climate is suitable for farming. Most interesting of all, it "lifted Canada's face" and made her beautiful. From east to west it scattered hills and valleys, the Great Lakes, and a thousand small lakes and bright rivers. And now over all America modern trees filled the sheltered spaces; grass and flowers swept across the plains. The great fierce animals were gone; the small ones had grown to useful sizes. America and Canada were ready for their people.

#### IV

##### CANADA'S ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES

Canada had great wealth to offer her people. The wealth of a country depends on the resources that nature has given it such as: good land, timber, minerals, water power; the cleverness and skill of its people to make useful products from these resources; their care in conserving their resources and in replacing those they use when they can do so; the country's nearness to markets where the products can be sold; and upon the land, water, and air ways by which the products can be carried to those markets. Rich resources, cleverness and skill, careful conservation, markets and good transportation, make a country wealthy.

##### (a) *Advantages*

As we have seen, nature built Canada in five great regions each with its own riches: The Canadian Shield has valuable



minerals and great water power. The West Coast and Rocky Mountain region is rich in fish, timber, minerals, water power; it has a fine climate and beautiful scenery. The Atlantic region has timber, coal and other minerals, a moderate climate, many fine harbors for trade and ship building, and one of the greatest fishing grounds in the world. The Great Plains region has rich



soil, vast grain and ranch lands, coal, oil, and gas. The Great Lakes and St. Lawrence Valley region has fine mixed farming land, good water power, a moderate climate, charming scenery, and the greatest inland waterway in the world.

Over all, Canada is a fortunate country. She has three and a half million square miles of land and one third of a million square miles of water. Of the territory suitable for living in, about half a million square miles are farm lands, one and a quarter million are forested, and there are over 34 millions

h.p. of water power. Her minerals are now worth over \$600 million a year and no one knows what they may come to be worth in the future. In all but the far north Canada has a good climate, as hot as Spain in summer, as cold as Sweden in winter. In all but the south-western prairie region, she has enough rainfall.

Canada also has a good location. She faces upon three oceans and reaches far out across the Atlantic and the Pacific to the two great markets of the world: Europe and Asia. The shortest route between these two continents, the shortest air and water routes from America to both of them, run through Canada. She stands at one of the crossroads of world trade.

#### (b) *Disadvantages*

On the other hand, Canada has several serious disadvantages. Her first disadvantage is the cold climate of her northern parts. This narrows the space where people can live easily, and so has kept her population small for her size. Her second disadvantage is that a large part of the Canadian Shield is not fertile and cannot be used either for farming or foresting. A third disadvantage is our country's great width, broken by two stretches of rocky wilderness. This makes it necessary to build long and expensive rail and air lines to carry her goods to market. A fourth is that, as she has a large quantity of each resource and a small population, she cannot use all of any resource at home, but must sell most of it to other countries and take what price she can get for it. A fifth is that for most of her life, Canada has been a country that produced only two crops at a time. For the first 300 years she sold fish and furs; for the next 100, mainly timber and wheat. The disadvantage of this has been that when one crop failed she had only one other to fall back upon. Of late years



Canada has changed this; she is now building up many different kinds of industry.

There she is then; that is our Canada as nature gave her to us: a country of great, but not limitless riches; riches that are difficult to reach, easily wasted, and often hard to market. Such a country needs wise, careful and determined people to build her up into a great nation. The most interesting thing in her story is the way in which our forefathers worked and struggled to use her advantages, and the almost miraculous way in which they overcame her disadvantages. They were not always wise, but they were bold, brave, and determined. They made Canada a nation. They have left it to us to make her a great nation and we must not fail them.

Reading the story of what they did and how they did it, will help you to do your part. That is what this book is for.



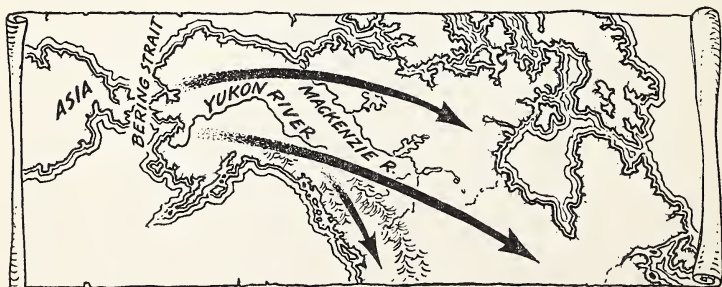
## Chapter Two

### FIRST CAME THE RED MEN

#### I

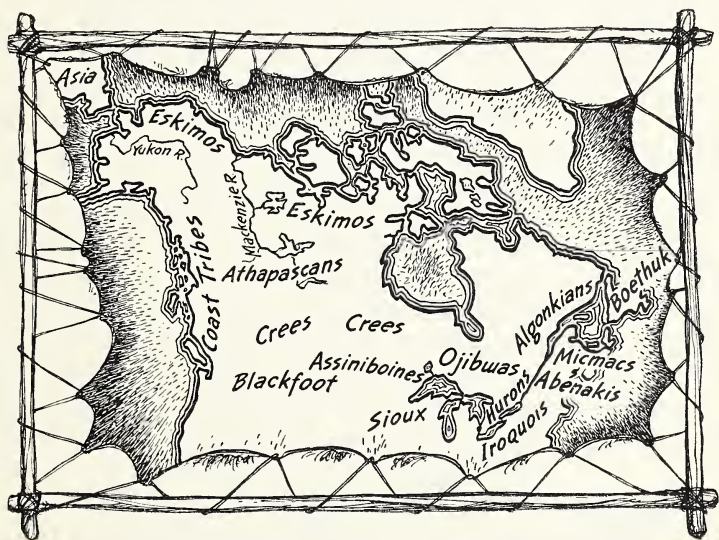
##### THE FIRST PEOPLE

THE first people who lived in America were not born here. No one knows for certain where they came from or how they came. Scientists know that there were people living in Europe and Asia before the ice-age. Perhaps, as the world grew warm again, they wandered north till they came at last to the narrow waters of Bering Strait. Beyond the Strait on a clear day they could see the shore of Alaska. You may be sure it was not long before some bold adventurer paddled across to explore the strange land. See him spring ashore, the First Discoverer of America!



Routes from Asia

The First Discoverer must have given a good report of the new country when he paddled back to Asia, for band after band of his people crossed the Strait to settle in America. Slowly these early folk moved up the Yukon River and across the water-shed into the valley of the Mackenzie. From there they spread across Canada into the United States, perhaps on into



Central and South America. They were the forefathers of our Indians and Eskimos. There were probably about 220,000 Indians and Eskimos living in Canada when the white man came here. The Algonkian (Al gon kee an) tribes hunted in the eastern woodlands, the Cree and Assiniboine in Manitoba. The Blackfoot Confederacy held the prairies; the Athapaskan tribes, the Mackenzie Valley; the Eskimos, the far north; and the coast tribes, British Columbia.

## II

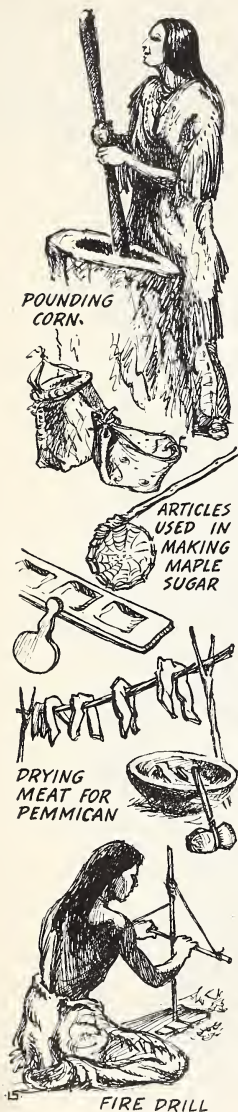
### THE FIRST CANADIANS

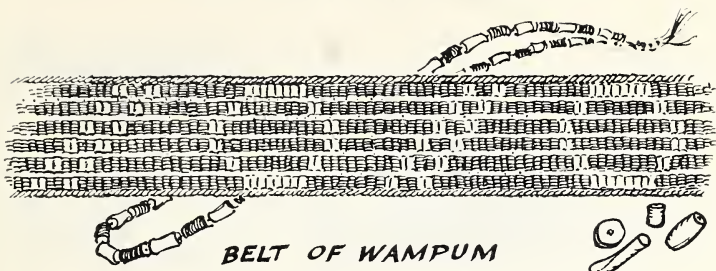
#### (a) *They Used Chiefly the Animal Life*

These first Canadians all looked more or less alike. They all had brown skins, brown eyes and black hair, erect and graceful bodies, small hands and feet. They all used stone tools: knife, axe, scraper and point for spear or arrow. The needles and combs used by the women were carved from bone, horn or ivory.

With these poor tools the Indian had to get his food, clothing, and shelter. For these he depended chiefly on the animal life of the country. Each tribe hunted the large animal common in its hunting ground: moose in the woodlands, buffalo on the prairies, caribou and seal in the north, besides bear, deer, wolf, rabbit, fish and wildfowl which were found everywhere in Canada. The Iroquois (Ir ō qua) and Hurons grew corn and tobacco. The Ojibways made maple sugar and gathered the wild rice which flourished in their region. Small fruits were plentiful in most parts and upon these the tribes feasted in season. Deerskin was used everywhere for clothing. The women of the coast tribes wove also cloaks of cedar-bark strips for common folk, goat's wool for chiefs, and beautiful ones of bright-colored feathers for great occasions.

Homes were made of whatever materials the hunting grounds supplied. The frames had to be of a kind that could be set up and taken





down quickly, so the Indian invented the wigwam, or teepee, which was used in all parts of Canada. The eastern tribes made wigwams of poles interlaced at the top and covered with birch-bark. The Ojibway and Cree used a round-topped shelter made of willow boughs stuck in the ground at both ends. The western peoples lived in skin covered teepees. The Eskimo built a log, or snow house, or sheltered in a tent of skin, according to the season and the work he was doing.

The Hurons and Iroquois did a little farming and so built more permanent homes. Their "long-houses" were apartment houses, 50 yards long by 12 wide with a central passage dotted with fires, one fire to each family. When a young couple married, the household moved the end wall of the house along and



Wigwams





Long-house

built two or three yards of new side wall to make room for the new family and the new hearth.

The Pacific coast Indians had a steady supply of fish and lived much of their lives in one place, so they built houses of solid lumber. They were shaped like the Iroquois "long-house" but framed with cedar posts and beams and covered with wide cedar planks. They carved the posts of the house and carved and painted totem poles to stand in front of it.

With the materials in his neighborhood, the Indian built also the different kinds of transport he needed. There were trails, but no roads or bridges in Canada before the white man came. In winter the eastern tribes moved their goods about on toboggans. The northern peoples used dog-sleds, while the



TRAVOIS

TOBOGGAN

prairie Indian used the travois (trāv wa) summer and winter. Snowshoes were common everywhere. Summer travel was by canoe. The east coast tribes covered their canoes with moose hide, the woodlands people used birch-bark, and the west coast people made dug-outs from their big trees. The birch-bark canoe was a dainty craft, light to handle in the water and on the portage, but the Eskimo kyak probably required more skill to build and to use. It is as light as a canoe and almost unsinkable.

(b) *They Co-operated*

There were so few Indians and they used so little of Canada's resources that there was no need for them to practise conservation. Their poor tools made it necessary for them to help each other in the battle for food and shelter. They did most things co-operatively and so had the comfort of company in their hardships. The family was the unit of their social life. A few families of kinsfolk joined in a band and a number of bands made up a tribe. The natural products of the tribe's hunting-ground belonged to all in common. The fortunate hunter shared his game with all. The band feasted together and starved together.

When a child was born, the older women came to help the mother. If the baby fell ill, the medicine man charmed away

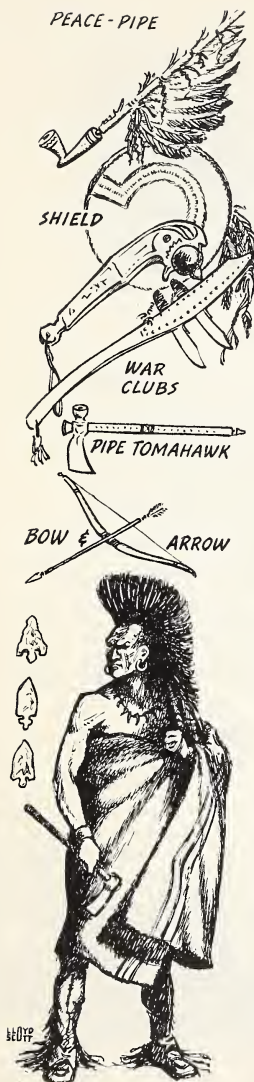


CANOE



KYAK





the evil spirits. Indian parents seldom scolded their children and almost never struck them. They taught them to do the different kinds of work required, and in the evening all drew round the fire to listen to the old men tell stories of the great deeds of their forefathers. At 13 the boy or girl spent a few days alone, fasting and hoping to dream of a good spirit who would come to guide his or her life. Young people married about 18. The groom paid for his bride with gifts to her parents. In the new home, the husband hunted, fished and made the tools and utensils, while the wife brought in the meat and firewood, cooked, dressed the skins, and made the clothing. She sewed the tent and canoe coverings, too, and set up the wigwam. When they were on the trail, the woman carried the load, for the man must have his weapon always in his hand to kill game, or to protect his family.

Leisure hours were filled with wrestling, racing, spear throwing and games such as lacrosse, football, and shinny which was usually played by the women. Gambling and dancing were the most popular amusements.

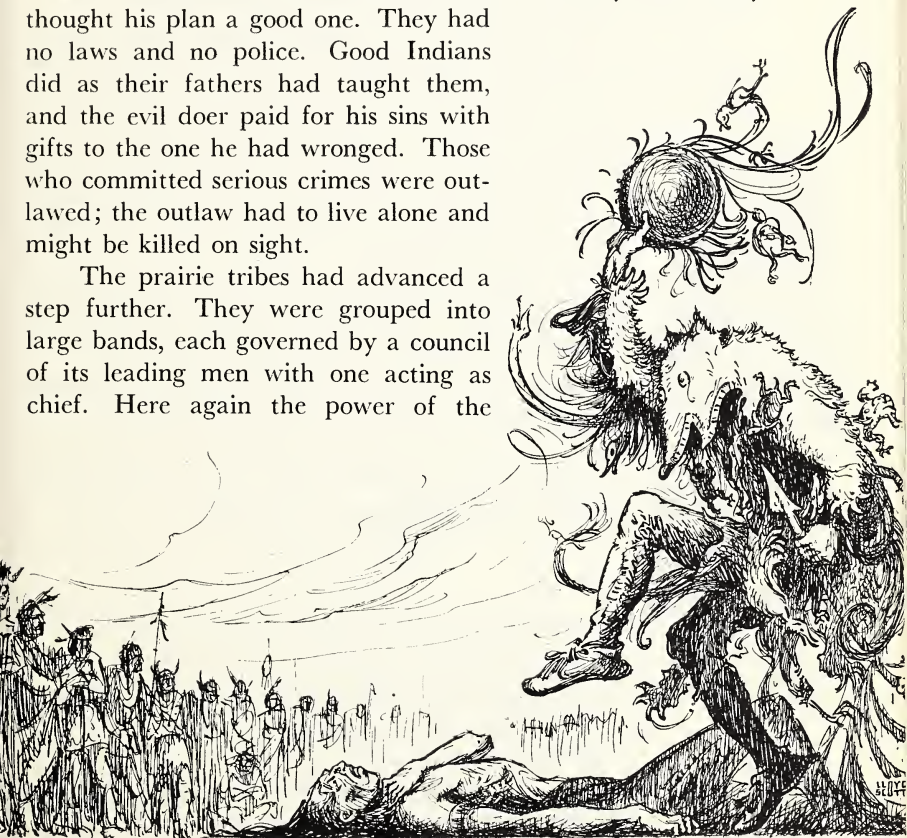
The Indians were religious people. They believed that the natural objects and animals about them were inhabited by spirits, and their prayers, dances, feasts and ceremonies were performed to win the help of these spirits. The medicine men were their doctors and priests. All Indians seem to have believed in heaven and placed food and weapons beside

their dead to help them on their way to the Happy Hunting Ground.

*(c) The Red Men Were Democratic*

The red men were democratic. Among the woodland tribes each band chose as leader a man who was brave, or good, or a skilful hunter; but the others followed him only when they thought his plan a good one. They had no laws and no police. Good Indians did as their fathers had taught them, and the evil doer paid for his sins with gifts to the one he had wronged. Those who committed serious crimes were outlawed; the outlaw had to live alone and might be killed on sight.

The prairie tribes had advanced a step further. They were grouped into large bands, each governed by a council of its leading men with one acting as chief. Here again the power of the



Medicine man

leaders depended on the people, who obeyed them only as long as they respected, or feared them. Each summer, all the bands of a tribe met, chose their council and head chief, and spent two or three weeks in discussing the affairs of the tribe and in parties and dances. Later, four prairie tribes: Blackfoot, Blood, Piegan, Sarcee, formed a confederacy which fought the Cree Confederacy for possession of the buffalo plains.

The farming tribes of the Iroquois Confederacy elected village councils of men and women to make rules and keep order in the community. Each tribe had also a council of lead-

ing men; and over the six tribes of the Confederacy there was a League Council of civil chiefs chosen to represent the tribes. The famous chief, Hiawatha, is believed to have organized the League Council.

Only the west coast tribes were divided into social classes. With them all the members of one family lived in the same plank house, but the people in the house were divided into slaves, commoners, and nobles. A commoner would save for years to give one great feast in order to gain a higher social position. The slaves did the hard work of the house and community.

### III

#### WHAT THE WHITE MAN OWES TO THE RED MAN

The greatest gift we owe to the Indians is our broad land which they allowed us to take over without making any great general war against us. Indeed the red man seems to have been much less warlike than the story books and moving pictures make out. When the white folk came as



immigrants and began taking their lands from them, the Indians naturally tried to kill them and drive them away. This, with their painted faces and blood curdling warwhoops, made the early settlers think of them as frightful savages; but by far the largest part of Canada's dealing with them has been in the way of peaceful trade.

Some of the tribes were poor and wretched, but others were intelligent, proud people. They have given us hundreds of musical place names for our country and added many useful words to our language. Their songs, dance rhythms, designs and colorings have enriched our arts; and they have left us one of the largest collections of myths and legends possessed by any nation. They have taught us also many practical things: to grow corn, potatoes, tobacco; to make maple sugar, and play lacrosse. Their trails, their inventions: the canoe, teepee, toboggan, and snowshoe; their ways of hunting, trapping, travelling, making a fire and a shelter, were adopted by the white men and were used by them in exploring and opening up our country. White men still use these gifts of the Indians, though they are seldom as skilful in doing so as their red brothers.

In return for these gifts the white men tried to christianize the Indians, but did little towards civilizing them. Only in our own day has Canada begun to make citizens of her first settlers and to fit them into the national life.

. . . . .

In spite of their many good points, the Canadian Indians were still nomads, wanderers, uncivilized people. They had not learned to farm. Farming was the beginning of civilization for it tied a man to one place. He learned to build a house and, later, towns where each person could work at one trade and so become really skilful at it. It was in this way that people became civilized. Because of being uncivilized, the In-

dians could not make use of Canada's good farmland, nor the other rich resources that nature had given her. To use these gifts Canada needed civilized people, and they were already at her door.





## Chapter Three

### THEN CAME THE WHITE MEN

#### I

#### THE VIKINGS

1000 A.D.

THE first civilized men who came to America were white. They came from Europe by the north route, using Iceland and Greenland as stepping stones, as the planes do today. They had learned to farm, and to build cities and ships strong enough to cross the ocean; they had the daring to do this. The first who came were Norsemen.<sup>1</sup> They did not stay long but their adventures were interesting. The Norse are great sailors and good fighters. A thousand years ago they were sailing their proud little ships out into the Atlantic Ocean, seeking new lands, conquering them and settling them. They were the Vikings, kings of the sea in those days. They settled in France, in Scotland, and in Ireland.

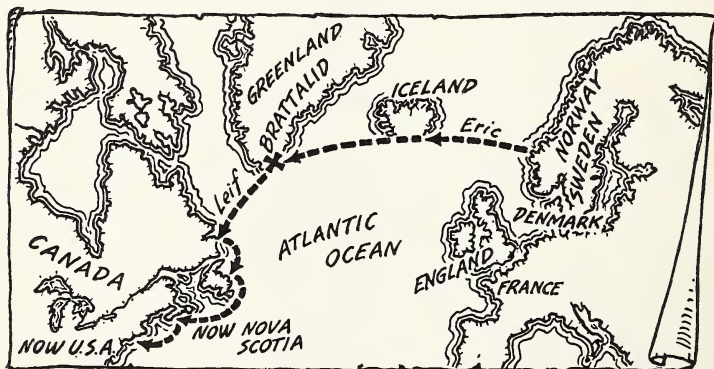
Eric the Red, a hot-tempered Viking, killed a man in a quarrel and fled from Norway to Iceland. He was soon in trouble there also and was outlawed from the island. Sailing west with his friends, he discovered Greenland and built a settlement there called Brattalid.

One Christmas, in Norway, a bold young fellow named

<sup>1</sup> In those days the Scandinavians were called Norsemen.

Biarni decided to spend the holiday with his father in Iceland. Springing into his ship as lightly as you would into your car, he sailed to Iceland only to find that his father had gone to Greenland with Eric. Biarni followed, but in the fog he missed Greenland and arrived off a shore where there were trees. He knew that this was not Greenland so he turned north, and presently reached Brattalid.

Biarni's tale of a land with trees caused great excitement in Brattalid where they had no timber. Eric and his son, Leif the Lucky, called on Biarni and when they had heard his story, Leif bought a ship from him. Leif was a large man, always



wise and just. He enlisted a crew of 35 men and sailed to explore the new land. They landed first on a bare, rocky shore; and next on a level wooded land. Two days later, they came to a pleasant country with many trees and bushes. Here they drew their ship up a river into a lake where they carried their hammocks ashore and prepared to spend the winter.

They built a large house and Leif divided them into two parties, one to guard the house, while the other explored the land. The explorers' party agreed not to separate, and not to go farther than they could go and return in one day. They



found salmon in the river, finer and larger salmon than they had ever seen. The country seemed suitable for cattle. There was no forest and the grass did not wither much. The days and nights were more equal in length than in Greenland. It sounds as though they had landed in what is now Nova Scotia.

In spite of their care the exploring party returned one evening without Tyrker, Leif's foster-father. Leif at once set off with 12 men to search for him and soon met him, grinning and talking excitedly in his native language, German.

"I did not go much farther than you," he said, when they had persuaded him to speak Norse, "and yet I found vines and grapes."

"Is this true, foster-father?" asked Leif.

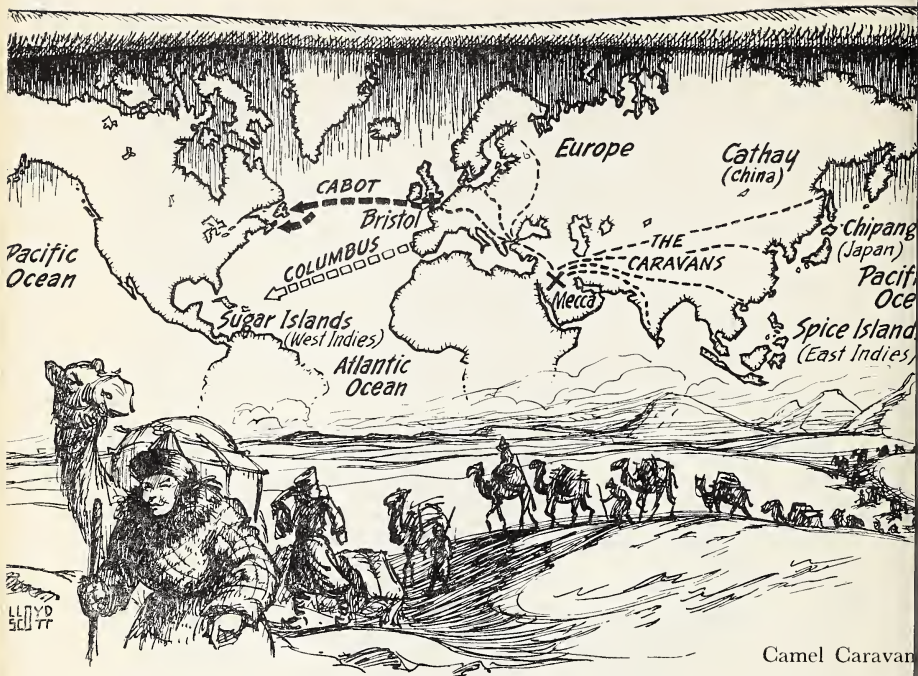
"Certainly it is true," replied Tyrker, "for I was born where there is no lack of either grapes or vines."

"We will now divide our labors," said Leif to his men next morning. "Each day we will gather grapes, or cut down vines and trees to obtain a cargo of these for my ship."

The men agreed to this and they worked hard all winter. Because of the quantity of grapes, Leif named the country Vineland. In the spring they loaded their ship and sailed home.



Tyrker and the Grapes



Camel Caravan

Leif the Lucky never returned to Vineland, but his brother Thorwald, his sister, and several others made voyages to it and even settlements in it. The Indians seem to have driven out these first white settlers and gradually Vineland was forgotten. Its story became a legend told round the evening fire.

## II

### SUGAR AND SPICE, SILKS, JEWELS AND GOLD

1200—1500

The story of modern Canada really begins with the bad meat of the middle ages. In those days the people of Europe had no refrigerators and in hot weather they had great difficulty

in keeping their food fresh. When meat began to spoil, as it quickly did, they spiced it to hide the unpleasant taste. They needed a great deal of spice which was very expensive because it was brought by caravan thousands of miles from east Asia to the great spice market in Mecca. Merchants from the different countries in Europe went to Mecca to buy it.

(a) *The Race for the Spice Islands*

One year, Marco Polo, a young Italian, returned with the caravans to China where he worked for the Khan for 17 years. When he came back he wrote a book describing China and Japan, which he called Cathay and Chipango. At first people did not believe his stories, but the travellers who followed him found that he had spoken the truth. About that time, too, sailors began to use the compass which made it safe for ships to sail out of sight of land. Sailors ventured farther out to sea and brought home word of several new countries. It is much cheaper to transport goods by sea than by land. As the sailors grew bolder, they thought they might be able to take the rich spice and jewel trade from the caravans, and the great race to find a way to the Spice Islands by sea began.

The first two contenders lost that race but won a greater prize. There were, in those days, two boys living in Genoa, Italy, who must have played round the same docks for they both loved ships. They must have studied geography for they both knew that the earth is round, though most people then believed it to be flat. They both wanted to be sailors and both dreamed the same dream: they wished to sail west to find East Asia with its spices, gold and jewels. The exciting

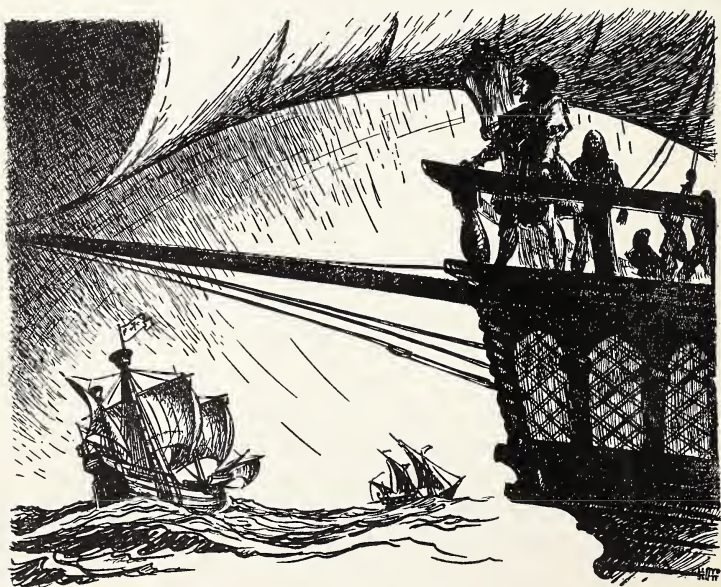


Costume in time of Columbus

thing about the two boys is that they both got the first part of that wish, and by getting it opened the way for other men to get the second part. The one became the discoverer of South America, the other the discoverer of North America. Their names were Christopher Columbus and John Cabot.

(b) *Christopher Columbus Seeks Spice and Finds Sugar*

Columbus was a sailor and a map-maker. As he worked at his maps, he figured out that, if the world was round, Polo's Cathay and Chipango must be just across the Atlantic from Europe. He did not know that not only the Atlantic, but also America and the Pacific lay between Europe and Asia. He felt



Columbus sails for the New World



sure that he could reach China and the Spice Islands by sailing across the Atlantic. As you will remember he interested Queen Isabella of Spain in his ideas and she sold her jewels to buy him three ships in which he set out upon the most famous voyage ever sailed. With his terrified sailors expecting every moment to come to the end of the world and drop off, he landed on one of the West Indies. With gifts he made friends of the gentle brown natives whom he called Indians because he thought he had reached the East Indies, the "Spice Islands". Instead he had discovered the West Indies, the "Sugar Islands".

Columbus made three more voyages, reaching the mainland of South America in 1498. He took it also to be part of Asia and never did find out that he had discovered a new continent. By this time jealous men had turned the king against him. His honors were taken from him and he died in poverty.

### *(c) John Cabot Discovers North America*

Meantime, John Cabot had also become a famous sailor with headquarters in Venice, Italy. Then his business took him to England where he lived in Bristol. Probably his business had to do with the spice trade for he visited the great spice market at Mecca. In Mecca he talked with the caravan men, asking them where the spices grew. They did not know. Their spices, they told him, were brought to them by other caravans riding from still farther east. There were many caravans; the spices came from very far east.

A relay of caravans from the farthest east! Sailor Cabot thought about that. The farthest east should be Chipango, the island about which Marco Polo had written. If that were where the spices came from—and if the world was round—it would certainly be quicker and cheaper to bring the goods in ships across the Atlantic Ocean. He looked at the globe he had made

for himself. America was not shown on it; there was nothing but ocean between Western Europe and Japan. England would be the nearest country, Cabot thought, and Bristol the nearest port. His friends, the people of Bristol, had, for the last seven years, been sending ships out into the Atlantic to search for the "Island of Brazil". Japan must be out there somewhere. If they could find it, they might make Bristol a greater spice market than Mecca.

The reports of Columbus' voyage roused great excitement in Bristol, as indeed they did everywhere. They seemed to prove that Cabot had been right in his thinking. He and his merchant friends were eager to try their fortune. King Henry VII promised them the use of any lands they might discover and, in 1497, Cabot set sail with 18 men in a small ship called the *Matthew*.

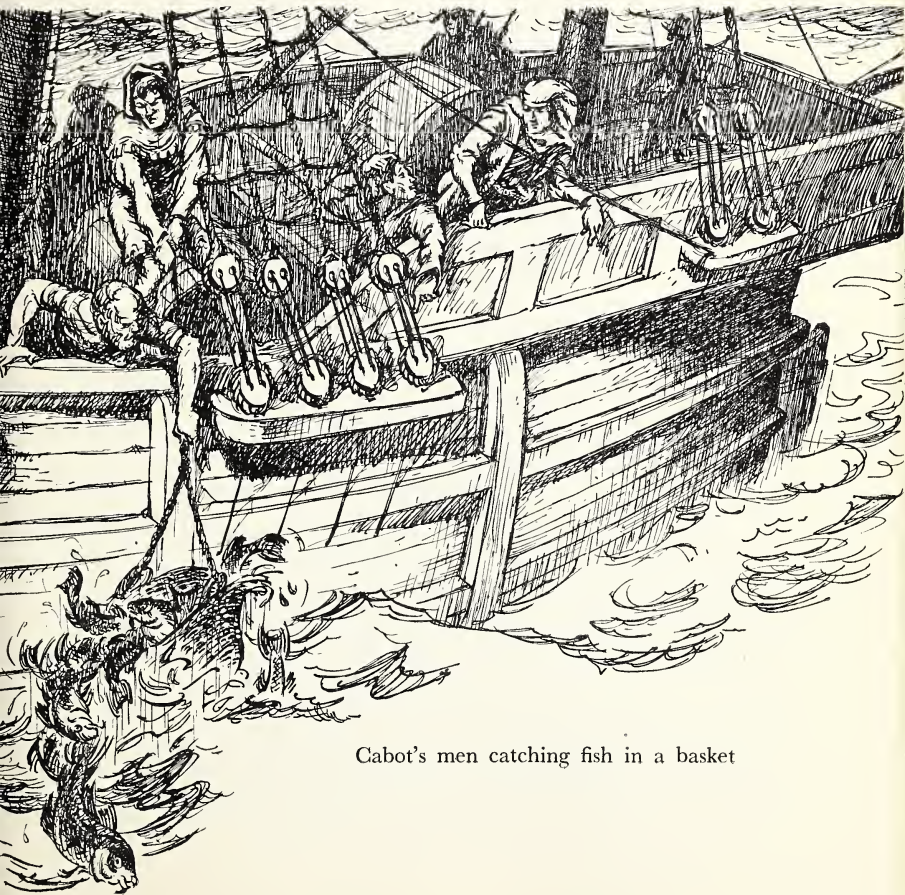
Keeping the north star on his right, and knowing from Columbus' voyage roughly how far he had to go, Cabot sailed across the Atlantic to America. Looking at the globe, it seems probable that he came first to Labrador or Newfoundland.<sup>1</sup> Like Columbus, he thought he had reached Asia. He coasted along for 300 leagues and landed, it is thought, in Cape Breton. He took possession of the land for King Henry and raised the English flag. Then, being short of provisions, he sailed home again. Cabot reported the "new found land" to be a pleasant one. He thought silk might grow there. The sea was so full of fish that they were caught in baskets sunk in the water with a stone. They had met no one, but had seen cut wood and snares set for animals, so that they knew the country was inhabited.

High honor was now paid to Cabot. He was named Admiral and "the English ran after him like mad people". The King gave him \$1000 with which to amuse himself till spring.

<sup>1</sup> The land first seen by Cabot is believed to have been Cape Bonavista, which means "Oh happy sight".

He promised that he would then give him a fleet of ships and the convicts from the prisons to establish a colony in the "new found land".

Cabot and his son, Sebastian, did make a voyage the next year. They sailed along the coast from Labrador to Chesapeake Bay, but found no spices, no silks, no jewels. When Cabot



Cabot's men catching fish in a basket



returned to England with only a few furs and fish to show, his fine friends all left him. Within a year he died, like Columbus, broken-hearted.

As a result of these voyages, Spain claimed Central and South America, England claimed North America, and France demanded her share. This led to trouble as you shall hear.

Civilized men had now arrived in America to stay. They knew how to use not only the animal, but also the plant, soil, and mineral resources of the new continent. But they had to discover them and to compete for them with the Indians and with one another. Seeing the new world so rich, they called its resources "limitless", seized them greedily, and used them wastefully. No one thought of conservation in those days. All these things make Canada's second adventure an exciting story.



## *The Second Adventure: Discovering Canada*

### Chapter Four

#### THE FISHERMEN STEP IN

1500—1600

#### I

##### THE "NEW FOUND LAND"

##### *(a) The Fishermen Knock at the Door*

THE first need of people, then as now, was food. Spices and jewels were all very well for kings, but common people were more interested in the cod fish that Cabot and his men found swarming in the Canadian seas. Fish were in great demand in those days, because it was so difficult to keep meat fresh, and because the Roman Catholic Church required fish to be eaten on all Fridays and holy days. England had been importing large quantities of fish from Iceland.

"But now," writes Anthony Parkhurst, "they say that they will bring so many fishes from the new found land that England will no longer have need of Iceland."

After Cabot's voyages news of the new fisheries spread swiftly among the fishing towns on the west coasts of England, France, and Portugal. Each spring more small fishing boats sailed out into the stormy Atlantic and somehow fought their way

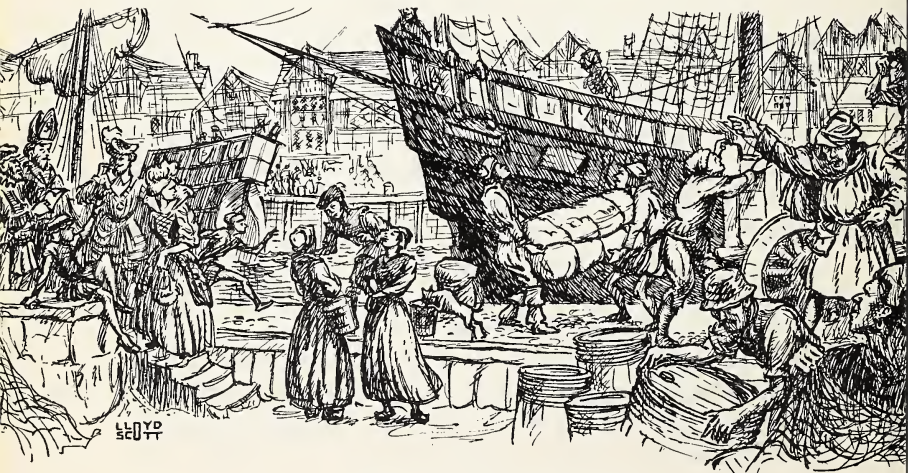
across it. To do this the fishermen had to conquer not only the wild waves, but their own fears of the unknown shore. There were no radios or moving pictures in those days. Poor fisher folk knew nothing about the world outside their own villages and the sea in which they fished. The Canadian beaches seemed to them to be the end of the world. God Himself seemed warning them not to go farther, for gulls screamed at them from rocks, and huge bull walrus rushed their small boats.

"The bears also be so bold, they will not spare at midday to take your fish before your face," says Parkhurst.

They believed that Labrador was inhabited by griffins, and Belle Isle by demons. Their maps showed them as devils with wings, horns, and tails, luring sailors into their haunted caves.

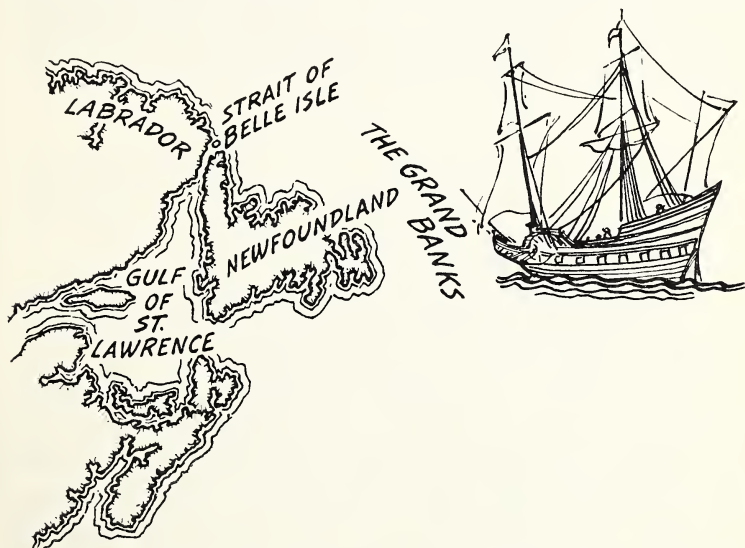
### (b) *The Grand Banks*

All the fishermen now used St. John's Harbor as a center. Newfoundland seemed made for them. Spreading out from her



Departure of the Fishing Fleet

eastern and southern shores, there is a great underwater plateau called the Grand Banks. Over it the sea is shallower and quieter than in the outer ocean and across it flows the cold Arctic Current. In these cool, shallow seas live countless millions of cod and other fish. It is not surprising that the early fishermen saw no need for conservation. Nova Scotia and New England



have smaller Banks in front of them, but Newfoundland has the Grand Banks. Inland, the big island itself is a plateau covered with forests, marshes, lakes and ponds; but round its high, rocky shores there are hundreds of safe harbors where fishermen can fish, land, and dry their fish.

In those days the Portuguese fished round the south east shore of Newfoundland; while the French worked all along the shore from Nova Scotia to the Strait of Belle Isle. Presently, in defiance of the demons, French fishermen poked the noses

of their small boats into the Strait. A few ventured into the great Gulf now called St. Lawrence, but as yet they did not fish there.

So, for 30 years along the Canadian shores, the fishermen rioted among swarming schools of cod, racing for the best fishing grounds, seizing one another's cargoes, filling their small ships with Canadian fish. From Canada, each August and September, the new found land fishing fleets sailed home to England, France, Portugal and Spain.

## II

### JACQUES CARTIER STEPS INSIDE

#### (a) *The World Is Proved Round*

During those 30 years England did nothing more about her new found land, but Spain and Portugal worked steadily in theirs. Carrying home rich cargoes of gold, jewels, and sugar<sup>1</sup> from the "Sugar Islands", the Spanish explored Mexico and Central America, crossed the Isthmus of Panama, discovered the Pacific Ocean, and conquered Peru. The Portuguese discovered Brazil, and Vasco da Gama sailed south of Africa to India. Magellan rounded the southern end of America and crossed the Pacific to the Philippine Islands. He was killed there by the natives, but his son sailed on and, at last, in 1521, reached the Spice Islands (East Indies). Young Magellan and his men then sailed south of Africa and home to Portugal; they were the first men to circumnavigate the earth.

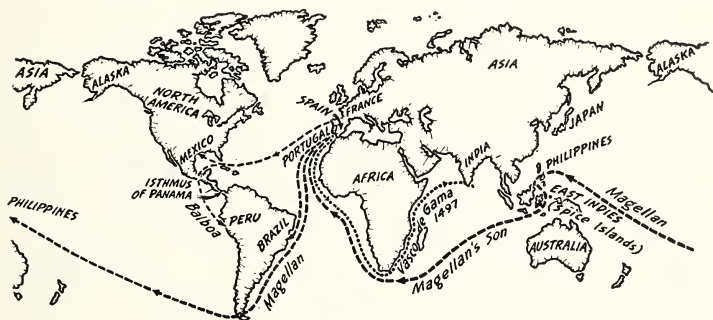
The Magellans proved that the world is a sphere and that

<sup>1</sup> Sugar was so scarce and expensive in early days that only very rich people used it. The Spaniards found that sugar cane grew well in the West Indies and brought back shiploads of it so that common people began to be able to afford it. Imagine what a treat that was.



America and the Pacific Ocean, as well as the Atlantic, lie between Europe and East Asia. But da Gama's voyage to India took two years, and Magellan's to the Spice Islands took three years. These new routes were longer than the caravan trails, so the search for a shorter way went on. Balboa and Magellan had proved that it was not to be found through the middle, or round the southern end of America. So the explorers began to search for a way round the northern end of the new continent.

France now entered the race to find new lands and a short



route to China. When Francis the First became king of France and saw his hated rival, Charles of Spain, bringing home from America shiploads of silver, gold, pearls, and sugar, he roused himself.

"Shall the kings of Spain and Portugal divide all America between them without giving me a share?" he exclaimed.

By this time, boldly defying the demons, French fishermen had built a fishing station called Brest on the shore of the Strait, and Jean Denys, and Thomas Aubert of Dieppe had sailed far up the river. It looked as if the Strait, Gulf and river might be the way through the land. King Francis planned a voyage of exploration and chose Jacques Cartier (Zha-car shay) of St. Malo, one of the fishing towns, to lead it.



*(b) Cartier Follows the Fishermen in*

Cartier knew from the fishermen the way into the Gulf of St. Lawrence and, in 1534, he made a flying trip to look it over. He stopped at the Isle of Birds where his men took two boats full of fat birds, and at Brest where he took on wood and fresh water. Turning south, he coasted round the shores of the Gulf till he came to Bay Chaleur (Sha lure).

When he found that this passage did not lead him through the land, he sailed on west to Gaspé. There he set up a tall cross and took possession of the land for France. When he had sailed across the wide mouth of the river to Anticosti, he returned to France to make his report to the king. The people of St. Malo welcomed him with cheers, but he got only sour looks from the other pilots who were jealous of him. The king was delighted with his report and appointed him to lead a second expedition the next year.

He set out again in May, 1535, and this time sailed at once up the great river which he called the River of Canada. He steered his ships safely to anchor near the foot of Cape Diamond, the tall cliff upon which the city of Quebec now stands. Here they were welcomed by the Iroquois Chief, Donnacona, and his Indians to their village of Stadacona.

*(c) Quebec: The Beautiful*

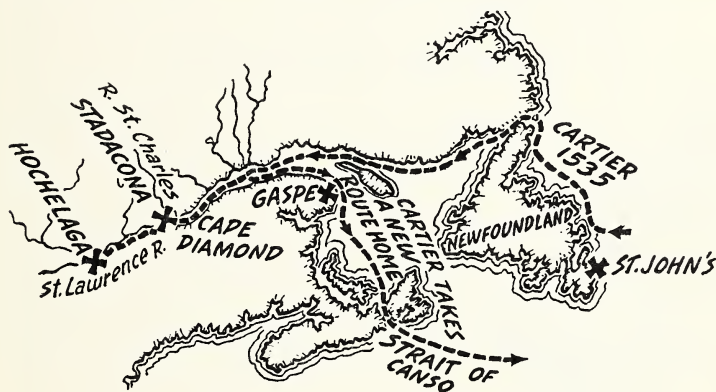
Cartier then anchored his two largest ships in the St. Charles and went on up the great river in the smallest one. It was October and the maples blazed scarlet against the gold and green of the forest along the shores. Vines



Jacques Cartier

heavy with grapes hung from the trees, and wild fowl thronged the marshes. The St. Lawrence was then, as it is still, one of the noblest rivers in the world. To Cartier and his men it must have seemed a fitting passageway to the splendors of Cathay.

Near the site of Montreal, a crowd of singing, dancing Iroquois met them and led them through woods and cornfields to their town of Hochelaga (Hosh a laga). The Indians thought that the white men were gods and brought their sick folk to



Cartier, who read over them passages from the Bible. The braves were given knives and hatchets, the squaws, beads. At Hochelaga, Cartier found his way upstream barred by the rapids of Lachine (La Sheen) and he returned to Canada, the Indian name for the country round Stadacona.

The crews of the two ships left there had hauled them up the St. Charles and built a fort where the company settled down for the winter. It was a most unhappy one. The men were not used to the cold and snow of Canada. They had little to eat but salt pork and fell sick with scurvy. Twenty-five of them died in

that lonely place and the survivors, unable to break the frozen ground, hid their bodies in the snow. Then one day, Cartier met an Indian who told him that tea made of spruce bark would cure their sickness. In six days the Frenchmen drank down a full sized tree, and grew well again.

But they had had enough of Canada, and began eagerly to prepare their ships for the voyage home. Cartier wished to have witnesses to the report of his discoveries, so he kidnapped Donnacona and three of his chiefs. As soon as the ice went out of the river they sailed for France.

(d) *Alas for Charlesbourg-Royal*

It was six years before Cartier made a third voyage. The king of France now planned to build a colony in "the lands of Canada and Hochelaga" which he believed to be part of Asia. Roberval, a favorite of the king, was appointed Governor and Cartier, Captain-General. For settlers, they were allowed to take their pick of the criminals in the jails of France. They were so slow in preparing the ships that at last Cartier set sail with those that were ready, leaving Roberval to follow with the others.

"Where are Donnacona and our chiefs?" inquired the Indians when the Frenchmen anchored at Stadacona.

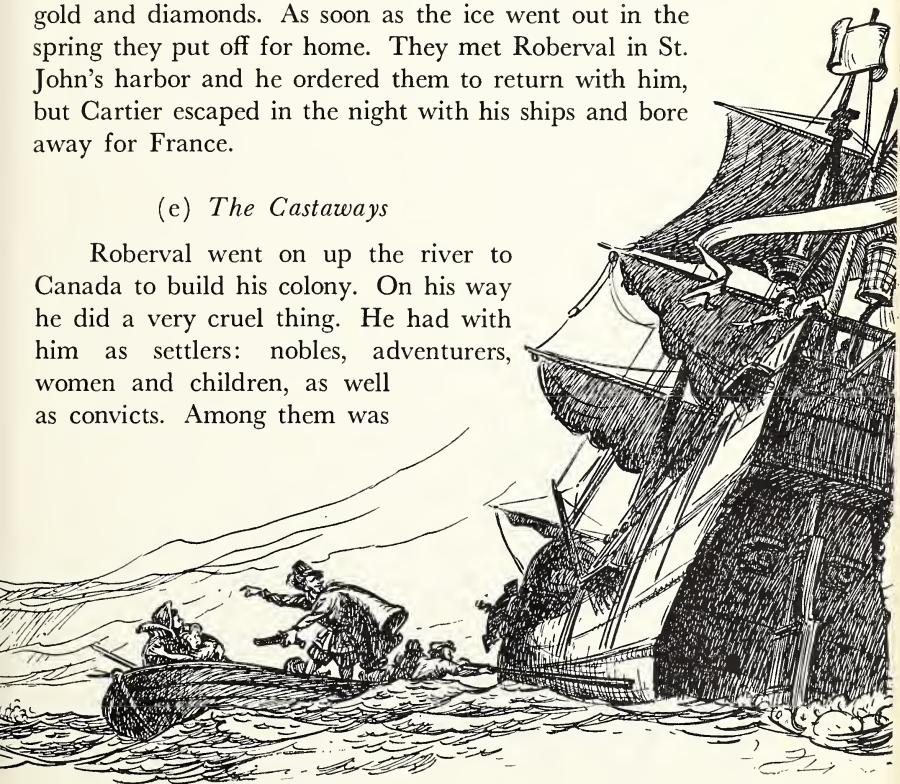
Cartier admitted that Donnacona was dead, but said falsely that the others were living happily in France. The Indians did not believe him and by his treachery he lost their friendship.

The French built a fort which they called Charlesbourg-Royal and landed the cattle, goats and pigs which they had brought with them. Although it was August, they planted cabbage, turnips and lettuce. They explored the river above Hochelaga and were all tremendously excited by finding what they took to be gold, and some crystals they thought were diamonds.

Then came Canada's White Lady, winter, sweeping across the land. The settlers watched anxiously for Roberval's ships of supplies, but they did not come. The river froze and locked them in. The strange, desperate cold and heaped snow filled the poor criminals with terror. The Indians, in revenge for their lost chiefs, killed 35 of them; the scurvy carried off many more. The survivors shivered and starved through the weary weeks, caring little now that they had reached Asia and found gold and diamonds. As soon as the ice went out in the spring they put off for home. They met Roberval in St. John's harbor and he ordered them to return with him, but Cartier escaped in the night with his ships and bore away for France.

(e) *The Castaways*

Roberval went on up the river to Canada to build his colony. On his way he did a very cruel thing. He had with him as settlers: nobles, adventurers, women and children, as well as convicts. Among them was



The Castaways

his own niece, Marguerite de Roberval. On board also there was a young adventurer with whom Marguerite was secretly in love and who had joined the expedition for love of her. When Roberval found this out he was so angry that he marooned her and her old nurse on the Isle of Demons. He gave her four guns with a little food, set the two women ashore, and sailed away. Seeing this, the young man threw himself into the sea and reached the shore with two more guns and some ammunition.

The three castaways built a hut where the demons of the haunted isle roared round them day and night. The others soon died, but Marguerite lived on. At first she shot at the demons when they tore furiously at the hut, but as they seemed only to shout the louder for that, she took refuge in prayer. Wild beasts stalked her, but these she drove off with her guns, killing three white bears. Two years and five months she lived there before fishermen saw smoke rising from the Demon Isle. They were afraid but curious, sailed nearer cautiously, and saw her waving. Greatly daring, they landed, rescued her, and carried her back to France where she lived to be an old lady.<sup>2</sup>

Meantime Roberval had landed near Charlesbourg-Royal, and built a large house where all his people lived together. There were store-rooms, gristmills and ovens, but little to store, grind or bake. When that little was gone, the starving colonists lived on fish and roots, or died of scurvy. If they quarreled, the iron-hearted Roberval whipped them; if they disobeyed him, he hanged them. In the spring he returned to France. No one knows what happened to his colonists; they were never heard of afterward. It was 60 years before France tried again to establish a colony in Canada.

<sup>2</sup> Her story is told in *Three Centuries of Canadian Story* by J. E. Wetherell.



### III

#### IN THE QUEEN'S NAME

During those 60 years the eastern shores of what is now Canada were again left to the fishermen. And how they fished! Each year the fishing fleet increased. By 1578 it numbered 150 French vessels and 180 of all other nations. They fished for cod, herring, salmon, flounders, dog fish, cat fish, oysters and mussels.

"In which I have found pearls," says Anthony Parkhurst, "above 40 in one muscle and generally all have some, great or small. I have heard of a Portugal that found one worth 300 ducats."<sup>3</sup>

The demand for fish was so great, the price so good, the supply so large, that the fishermen scarcely lifted their eyes to look at the land beyond the fishing grounds. They wished only to fill their boats and race for home before the autumn storms barred the way. None of them learned any more about Canada except the French. After Cartier had explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence for them, the French fishermen fished there and soon knew all its shores well.<sup>4</sup>

Because Cabot had discovered it, England claimed Newfoundland, and in 1583, Queen Elizabeth sent Sir Humphrey Gilbert to take formal possession of it. When Gilbert reached St. John's Harbor he landed and put up a tent "among the roses and the raspberries" which they found blooming and ripening there. Gilbert raised the English flag, and called the captains of the fishing vessels together to hear him read the Queen's letter commanding all to obey him. No one objected, so Sir Humphrey took pos-

<sup>3</sup> A ducat is a gold coin used in Europe in those days and worth \$2.30.

<sup>4</sup> After 400 years of fishing, Canada's eastern fishing grounds are still rich; and the government is now introducing conservation measures to keep them so.





session of the land and cut a turf to carry back to England to show Elizabeth that Newfoundland was really hers.

On his way home in September, Gilbert sailed in the *Squirrel*, a tiny ship hardly larger than a fishing boat. It was tossed about in a great storm, but Sir Humphrey refused to go aboard his larger ship, the *Golden Hind*, saying: "We are as near to heaven by sea as by land". They were indeed near to heaven, for that very night the waves swallowed up the little *Squirrel*, and only the *Golden Hind* remained to carry the sad news and the square of Newfoundland sod home to Queen Elizabeth.

#### IV

##### DRY FISHING

About this time the English began dry fishing. Earlier fishing had all been "green", that is the fish were cleaned,



Sir Humphrey Gilbert at St. John's

salted, and stored on shipboard as soon as they were caught. It was a simple method, but it required a great deal of salt.

Dry fishing required a shore crew and buildings, but only half as much salt as green fishing. The work took skill, time and care, but the profits were large. A ship could load 200,000 dry fish, four times as many as she could carry green; and dry cod kept, and had a better flavor than green cod. Also dry fishing conserved the fish for it prevented much waste by spoiling.

Excitement rose as the dry fishermen neared the fishing ground. When they arrived near the harbor they planned to use, they waited till nightfall and then lowered a boat with their best men at the oars. Every ship in the neighborhood did the same. Silently through the darkness the small boats raced for the shore. No one moved except he who bailed out water; no one thought of eating or drinking. Silently through the darkness and the waves they sped. The first sailor who leaped upon the beach won for his captain the right of being admiral of that harbor for that season. He had the first choice of position for his ship and stages, and might use boards from old stages, for his building.

Once ashore, each man set to work at his special job. The captain anchored his ship in a good place; the boatmaster made the boats ready for fishing; the carpenter built the sleeping rooms; the cook, the kitchens. The beachmaster and his men built a long wharf with tables and a salt bin for cleaning and salting the fish. The stages for the drying cod were built by the boys.

#### (a) *Fishing and Drying*

Early every morning the men went out in small boats to fish. At four o'clock every afternoon they returned and unloaded their fish upon the wharf. Two of the crew tied up



A Fishing Station

the boat and washed it out, while the others took their places upon the stage, and the fish began to pass swiftly from passer to throater, to header, to splitter, to salter and so into neat piles laid head to tail. Not till all the fish were cleaned and salted and the stage washed up did the men take their supper of boiled cod with peas or beans, and butter.

During the day, the beach master superintended the drying of the fish. This was a skilled craft and great care was used. Early in the morning the piles of lightly salted cod upon the wharf were laid out upon the stages; while the partly dry fish already on them were removed to smaller stages called "flakes". Those still dryer upon the flakes were arranged in small round "haycocks" upon the sand. In this first move all the fish were placed skin up. At nine o'clock all were turned skin down till four in the afternoon, when all were once more turned skin up for the night. This was done to keep out dew and rain, for once a fish has started to dry, any wet or damp spoils it.

When the season's work was over, the ship was brought round to the wharf. The cod were carried aboard past the captain who dropped a small stone into his hat for each 132 fish loaded. They allowed 132 fish for each 100 reported, to make up for loss by spoiling. The men's baggage was stowed on top of the fish and, in a red autumn dawn, the fishing fleet cleared for home.

### (b) *First Fishing Stations*

The French had been green fishing; but when people began to demand dried fish they, too, began to dry their catches. The Gulf of St. Lawrence was, and is, a natural fish hatchery. It is warmed by the waters of the river and cooled and salted by those of the Strait of Belle Isle; it is landlocked, and has very little tide, making an ideal home for young and growing fish. The huge, old cod of the Atlantic were difficult to dry completely through, and so were apt to spoil, but the small young fish caught off the sunny beaches of the Gulf dried quickly, had a fine flavor, and kept perfectly. More and more of the Gulf beaches were taken up by French fishermen.



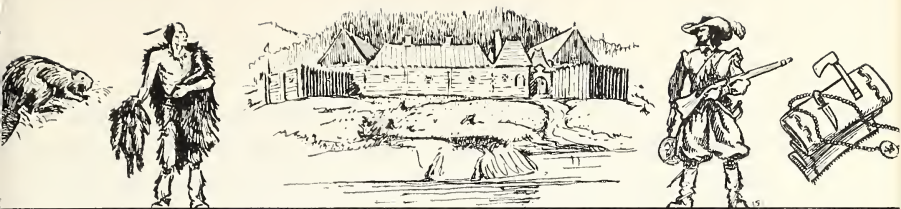
The fish merchants did not want their fishermen to settle in Canada. They were afraid that if they did they would begin fishing on their own account. But timber for staging was used wastefully and presently became scarce, so ship owners began to leave a few men at the beaches to guard the wharf and stages through the winter. These men built houses and planted gardens. In this way all-year fishing stations grew up round the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Of these the most important were Canso, Ile Percée (Per say) and Anticosti.

. . . . .

It is interesting to learn from these stories of the fisheries, that the two great mother peoples from whom the Canadian nation has sprung worked together at her founding. The British discovered Canada and the French carried the exploration of our country inland. The British invented dry fishing and the French developed it into Canada's first industry.

Fishing on the Banks kept the white men on the coast where they saw little of Canada and met very few Indians. When the French fishermen moved into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, they met more Indians, made friends with them, admired the beautiful fur cloaks they wore. In this way our first industry, fishing, led to our second, fur-trading; and fur-trading led the white men inland, on and on, ever west and north, till in the end they reached the Arctic, and Pacific Oceans. It was at those tiny fishing stations on the Gulf of St. Lawrence that Canada's Second Adventure began.





## Chapter Five

### THE FUR TRADERS TAKE POSSESSION

1600—1635

#### I

FURS WERE AS GOOD AS GOLD

CIVILIZED men had stepped inside Canada's doorway. They now moved forward to take possession of the house.

When Jacques Cartier's ship lay in Chaleur Bay, in 1534, canoes filled with Indians landed on the beach near by. They held up furs on sticks and signed to the French to come ashore to trade.

"We likewise made signs to them that we wished them no harm," says Cartier in his book. "We sent two men on shore to offer them knives and other iron goods, and a red cap to give to their chief . . . and the two parties traded together. The savages showed great pleasure in obtaining these iron tools and other goods. They traded all they had so that they all went back naked; and they made signs to us that they would return on the morrow with more furs."



"The red cap for the Chief"



This is the first time that trading in furs was reported in Canada, but it is clear that it was not the first time it was done. Evidently these Indians had already seen or heard of white men. Probably they had already traded with the fishermen at Ile Percée. Round the fishing stations, redmen peeped from among the trees at white men building huts and stages, and saw the flashing knives, the bright colored sashes of the strangers. French fishermen knew the high prices paid by rich people in France for glossy skins such as those the Indians wore. And so the trade began. A fisherman bought a beaver skin in Canada for a knife and sold it in France for perhaps \$50. The profit was enormous. News of it was whispered along the docks of the fishing ports: St. Malo, Dieppe, La Rochelle, and spread across Europe.

"Furs," said the news, "made a cargo far more valuable than fish. Furs were as good or better than gold. Furs were cheap, easy to get, easy to carry, and the demand was great."

## II

### BEAVER HATS WERE FASHIONABLE

Beaver was the most popular fur. Beaver hats became fashionable in Europe about this time and they continued to be worn by both men and women for 100 years or more. The more fashionable beaver hats became, the higher the price of beaver rose. Men who had fished for years heaved their cargoes of fish into the sea and returned to France with their boats loaded to the gunwales with rich skins that brought them a new fortune for each voyage. Dozens of ships



Fishing Ports

coasted the shores of the Atlantic, the Gulf and the River, trading guns, knives, hatchets, pots and pans, cloth, beads, and brandy, for fox, lynx, otter, marten, and beaver skins. The ships of all the sea-going nations met there, fought, rammed each other, killed Indians, made them crazy with brandy so that they killed each other. The long, adventurous, romantic story of the Canadian fur trade had begun.

### III

#### PORT ROYAL: THE FIRST SETTLEMENT

##### (a) *Exploration Needs a Settlement*

News of the rich trade in furs that the fishermen were doing in Canada soon reached the king of France and he granted a monopoly<sup>1</sup> of it to Jacques Noel (Nō el), Cartier's nephew. This meant that the fishermen would no longer be allowed to trade in furs. When they heard of it, their angry shouts roared up and down the docks from Dieppe to Bayonne. They raised such a storm that the king took the monopoly away from Noel and gave it to the Marquis de la Roche (Rosh). The ports might gnash their teeth with rage, but they dare not attack a marquis.

Meantime the race for a short route to China went on. The English had been searching for a passage north of America, but had found none. Beginning such voyages in Europe made the distance and expense so great that the French now thought of a better plan.

<sup>1</sup> A monopoly is the right to be the only person allowed to sell a certain thing.



A Man of Fashion

“Us French,” says Champlain, “mean to build a settlement in New France (Canada) to make exploration easier by beginning our voyages on that side of the ocean.”

With this idea in mind, the king granted a monopoly of the Canadian fur trade to several men one after another. Each man promised, in return for the monopoly, to build a settlement in Canada, but none of them did so. At last the fur monopoly was granted to De Chastes, Governor of Dieppe. De Chastes knew how the fishermen and merchants of the ports hated the fur monopolists, so he formed a company among them to share his monopoly. The company chose Pontgravé (Pont gravā) of St. Malo to select a location for the colony; and De Chastes invited Champlain to join the expedition.

Samuel de Champlain, who was to become “the Father of Canada”, was a young man then. He was a soldier, and he had already visited the West Indies. His report of that trip was so interesting that the king appointed him his geographer and directed him to bring back a true report of the voyage to Canada. Eager to see America, Champlain sailed with Pontgravé and his men for the St. Lawrence. As they moved up the great river, the like of which he had never seen, Champlain’s eyes must have opened wide with amazement, and his heart swelled with pride in the greatness and beauty of this New France. The Iroquois were gone from Stadacona and Hochelaga. They had been driven south by the northern tribes moving down to the St. Lawrence to trade with the fishermen-fur traders. The lovely valley lay still and empty under the summer sun, waiting for our nation which Champlain was to lead into it.

They sailed as far as the rapids of Lachine above Montreal, up which their ships could not pass. Champlain was so curious to see what lay beyond that the Indians drew a map of the

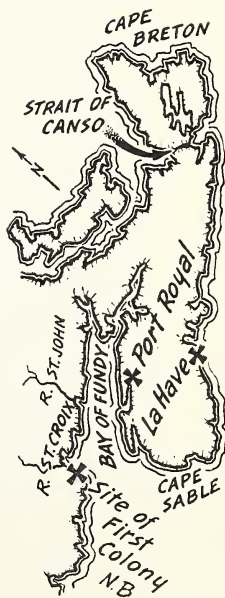
upper river on the deck of his ship. It showed the many rapids, the Great Lakes, and even Niagara Falls, although this was pictured as only a rapid. Perhaps, as Champlain studied the crude map, he vowed to himself that some day he would return and follow the river west. He drew maps of the places he visited for the king and in his report said that the St. Lawrence might lead through America to China. Alas! when they returned to France, they found that De Chastes was dead.

(b) *Welcome to New France*

But another leader soon came forward. De Monts offered to build a colony in Acadia (Nova Scotia) at his own expense if the king would grant him a monopoly of the fur trade in that country. The king accepted this offer. St. Malo and the other ports complained loudly, but De Monts promised that he would share his monopoly with them and peace was restored.

De Monts chose workmen instead of convicts as settlers, and embarked them in two well stocked ships. Pontgravé commanded the second ship, and Champlain sailed as "geographer". Baron de Poutrincourt (Poot rin coor) and several other noblemen joined the party for the trip and to look over the new country. They left France in April, 1604, and made a quick crossing, sighting Cape La Have on May 8. Imagine their excitement at the cry of "Land Ho!"

Their New France welcomed them with bright sunshine and a brisk spring wind. They coasted along low rocky shores broken by dozens of islands, bays, fine harbors. Inland, patches of birch and spruce dotted the green slopes. They sailed south-



west and captured some smugglers. De Monts chose an island at the mouth of the St. Croix River as the site of the colony. The supplies were landed and the colonists set to work building houses. The winter was a bad one and the men suffered great hardships. Wind and ice battered their island which had not enough wood for their fires; their wine froze in the casks. Scurvy attacked them. Frantically they searched for the tree reported by Cartier, but could not discover it. They were nearly all sick, and 35 died.

(c) *Farewell Port Royal*

When spring came, they loaded the frames of their buildings on two boats and carried them to Port Royal, a beautiful bay that Champlain had discovered. They set up their houses round a large square court and hoped for better luck. Pontgravé, who had gone to France for supplies, returned with word that St. Malo and the other fishing ports were trying to persuade the king to take De Monts' monopoly away from him. When he heard what his enemies were doing, De Monts hurried back to France to fight for his monopoly, and presently sent out a ship with supplies and more colonists. Among them came Marc Lescarbot (Les car bow) a writer, and a very friendly, gay, and amusing person. He wrote a history of New France, a most entertaining book. Lescarbot was delighted with Port Royal and at once began to plant a garden. Poutrincourt managed the farm. Champlain explored and mapped the shores of Acadia. The winter was so mild that they wore no overcoats till January, and very few of them were sick. They had plenty of food and fuel. Champlain organized a jolly club, the Order of Good Times. It seemed as if the colony had taken root, as if they had won.

Spring brought a ship from France—and bad news. De

Monts' monopoly had been taken away. The ports had bribed the king's officers and so won their point. The colonists were ordered to return to France. Sadly the settlers loaded the boats; sadly Lescarbot said farewell to his garden. Champlain and Poutrincourt remained for a time; Champlain to finish his maps; Poutrincourt, who was determined to return, to see how his grain turned out. Then they also returned to France. Port Royal was abandoned, but not for long, as you shall hear.

## IV

### ENGLAND STEPS OUT

In those days Spain was the great power in the world with France in second place. England was still a small, poor country, but her people had already begun to live in the democratic way; this gave them confidence in themselves. They had then only a small fleet but, in 1588, helped by a great storm, they actually defeated the Armada, a huge Spanish fleet that came to attack them. After that great victory, England began to step out into the world. Her people began to trade and found colonies in different countries, and she began to build up her fleet to challenge France.

#### (a) *Virginia*

Spain had tried to found a colony in Florida; France in Acadia; then England stepped into the field. Some years before this, the famous Sir Walter Raleigh, half-brother to Sir Humphrey Gilbert, had sailed to America to found a colony which he called Virginia. The party was driven out by the Spaniards, but during his stay Sir Walter learned from the Indians to smoke. On his return he introduced tobacco and the habit of smoking into England whence it spread across Europe.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> The story goes that the first time Sir Walter's English servant saw him puffing out clouds of tobacco smoke, he thought his master was on fire and threw a pail of water over him.



Raleigh was kept busy elsewhere after that, but Virginia was not forgotten. In 1607, the same year in which Port Royal was given up, the London Company sent colonists there, but most of them died of fever and starvation. The colony, which they called Jamestown, was saved by Captain John Smith who forced the colonists to farm, saying that those who did not work should not eat. Luckily, John Rolfe, one of the settlers, fell in love with Pocahontas, an Indian Princess, and married her. This pleased the Indians and they showed Rolfe how to grow tobacco. As smoking was now fashionable, tobacco was profitable, and the colony prospered.

By this time Poutrincourt had returned to his farm at Port Royal. He found his buildings standing and with his son, Biencourt (Bee ah coor), he spent a busy summer planting and tending his crops. But England claimed all North America; so when the Governor of Virginia heard that the French had returned to Port Royal, he sent Captain Argall to drive them away. Argall found Port Royal empty: Poutrincourt had gone to France for supplies, Biencourt was trading with the Indians, and his men were harvesting the crop. The English burned the buildings and grain, and sailed away. When Poutrincourt returned, he found Port Royal in ashes. It was too much. He gave up and went home to France for good. He left Port Royal to Biencourt who became a fur trader. Port Royal, the first Canadian colony, was afterwards attacked many times, but never entirely destroyed. It is today the oldest white settlement north of Florida.



*(b) Newfoundland*

After Sir Humphrey Gilbert's death, England did nothing more about Newfoundland for some years. The English fish merchants, like the French, did not want fishermen to live on the island; but they, too, had to leave men to guard their stagings through the winter. Fishing stations grew up there as they did round the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

At last, in 1610, a company was formed to found a colony in Newfoundland. It was led by John Guy of Bristol. Guy was an excellent leader. He brought out 41 people and settled them at Cupids. They built houses, wharves, a sawmill, and a fort. They cleared land, grew grain, and kept stock. Guy and his successor, John Mason, did their best to keep order on the island. This angered the fish merchants who tried to get rid of Mason. But he stayed on for six years and put Cupids on its feet. Other colonies were founded at Ferryland, Trepassey and Renewes. They were not very successful but each one brought more settlers to Newfoundland.

The summer fishermen oppressed them so, that England sent out Sir Richard Whitbourne to see what he could do. Sir Richard was a naval officer accustomed to being obeyed. He held court and tried and punished criminals. This put some fear into the fishermen, but the pirates raided the settlements as boldly as ever. Peter Easton, the most daring of them, sailed up the harbor one bright morning, seized Sir Richard himself and held him prisoner for eleven days. Imagine how the other pirates roared with



laughter at that joke. Sir Richard was not daunted in the least. He kept the peace in Newfoundland for eight years. Unfortunately when he went home, England sent no one to replace him and violence and crime ruled the island as before.

## V

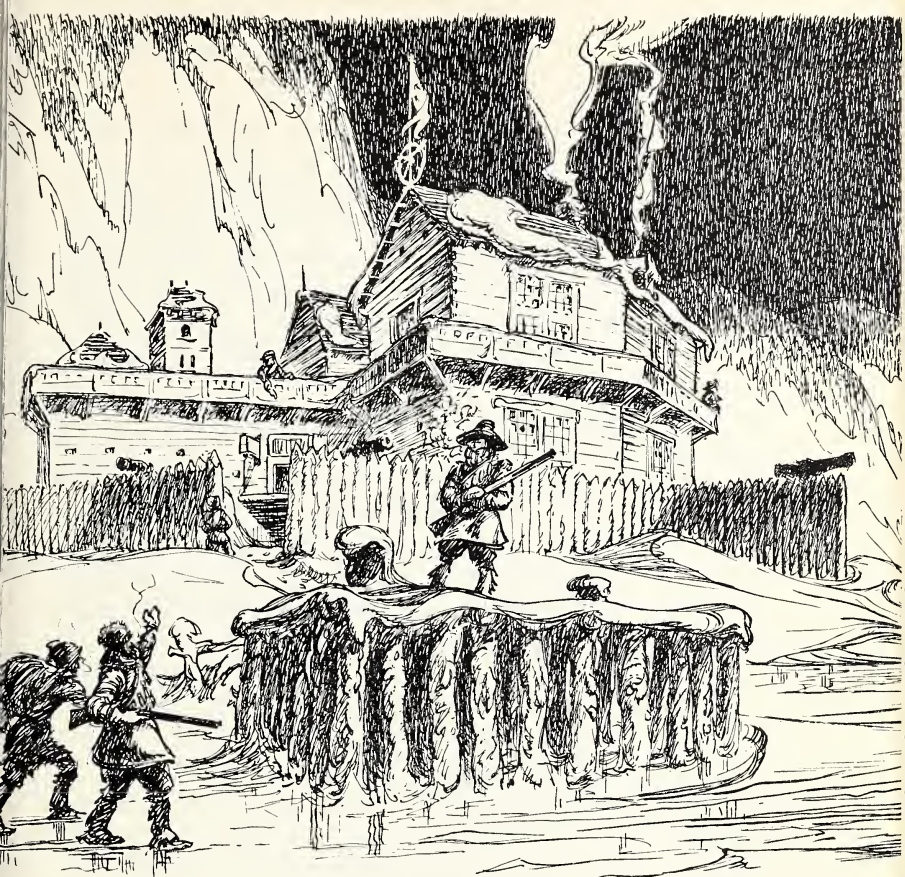
### CHAMPLAIN FOUNDS QUEBEC

Although he had been beaten in Acadia, De Monts still wanted to found a colony in Canada, and Champlain suggested that the St. Lawrence would make a good base for exploring the west, and would be easy to protect against the fur smugglers who were already swarming into the small, secret coves of Acadia.

De Monts agreed, and persuaded the king to give him the monopoly for one more year. In the spring of 1608, Champlain and Pontgravé sailed for Tadoussac (Tad oo sac). Pontgravé remained there to trade while Champlain went on up the river to Quebec to build the colony. He set his men to work on the shore at the foot of Cape Diamond. They built three buildings and Champlain planted a garden. As usual winter brought starvation to the Indians and scurvy to the French; only eight of them lived through it. Champlain was now convinced that the disease was caused by eating too much salt meat and suggested that all future colonists should have fresh meat and vegetables.

#### *(a) He Takes Sides With the Northern Indians*

During the winter a young Indian from the Ottawa River visited Quebec and begged Champlain to help his people in the war they were fighting to keep the Iroquois south of the St. Lawrence. Champlain promised to do this on condition



The Habitation of Quebec

that the northern Indians guide him in exploring the west. When Pontgravé came up to Quebec in June, he took charge there while Champlain went with the Algonkians to explore and to attack the Iroquois. The band paddled south on a fine river that Champlain named the Richelieu (Rish el you), to a beautiful lake that has ever since been called by the name of



its discoverer, Champlain. There they met the Iroquois. Champlain describes the fight:

"I saw the enemy go out of their barricade, nearly two hundred in number. They came slowly towards us with a dignity which greatly pleased me, with three chiefs at their head. When I saw them making a move to fire at us, I rested my musket against my cheek and aimed directly at one of the chiefs. With the same shot two fell to the ground. . . . The Iroquois were greatly astonished that two men had been killed so quickly in spite of their armor which was woven of cotton thread and backed with wood. As I was loading again, one of my companions fired a shot from the woods which astonished them so much that they lost courage and took flight."

Champlain has been criticized for this attack which, many writers say, made the Iroquois enemies of Canada. But they were certain to have been our enemies in any case. The St. Lawrence valley was the former home of the proud and warlike "Six Nations". If the Canadians were to take possession of it, it was to be expected that they would have to fight for it. They did fight for it, long and bravely, as you shall hear.

### (b) *The Ports Defy the Company*

Champlain now took ship for France to report to De Monts. They felt that they had made a good beginning and begged the king to renew their monopoly of the fur trade. He refused, and the traders from the fishing ports raced for the St. Lawrence; in a few weeks Tadoussac was crowded with their ships. De Monts decided to try his luck with the others, and Champlain hur-





ried back to Canada. He thought he might outwit the other traders by sailing right up to the "throat" of the river at Lachine.

Finding no one there, Champlain chose a "little spot" which he named Place Royal and set his men to work levelling it for building. That "little spot" has become the great city of Montreal. There was no time then to begin building for Pontgravé arrived, saying that because of the rival traders he had been unable to get any furs at Tadoussac.

"Where he can go, we can go," shouted the traders who had been watching Pontgravé's every move, and the whole fleet of trading ships raced after him to Lachine. Two hundred Hurons now appeared and trading began. The Indians were quick-witted and soon learned not to trade until a number of traders had arrived and begun to bid against one another. They then sold their furs to the highest bidder. Competition was so keen that the traders had to pay as many as 20 knives for a beaver skin for which they had before paid one or two knives.

Pontgravé did his best, but Champlain saw that if he had to compete for furs with the traders he could not possibly make enough money to pay the expenses of the colony. He returned to France to try to make some arrangement by which the fur trade could be made to do this. It took him three years, but in the end he persuaded the king to grant the monopoly not to one man, but to a company which would promise to use part of its profits to pay for the exploration and settlement of Canada, and for Christianizing the Indians. Champlain was appointed the acting Governor of this company. When this news got out the fishing ports were furious.

"Keep us out of the river we discovered! Cut us off from the trade we began!" shouted the fishermen-fur traders. "Just try it!"



The king then announced that anyone who wished might join the company, but that it had a monopoly and might seize the ships of any trader who was not a member.

## VI

### THE DISCOVERY OF ONTARIO

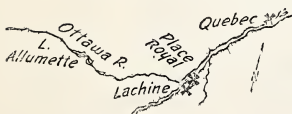
#### (a) *The Vignau Story*

Explorers were still searching for a waterway north of America to China. While Champlain was in France, Henry Hudson, exploring for England, discovered Hudson Bay. When he sailed into it, he and his men were sure that they had discovered the way round the north end of the continent, the "North West Passage", and this news soon reached Europe.

Champlain heard it in Paris. As Hudson Bay was only a little farther west than Montreal, he thought that his river might lead to it, so he was ready to believe Nicholas Vignau (Veen yō), a young man whom he had sent to winter with the Indians. Vignau reported that he had gone up the Ottawa with the Indians and seen this "north sea" and that it was only a 17 days' journey, there and back, from Lachine. Champlain was so excited by this tale that he left the new fur company gathering ships and supplies and hurried back to Canada to ascend the Ottawa River.

At the camp of Chief Tessouat on Lake Allumette (Al you met), Champlain asked for canoes to carry them forward, but the chief refused, saying that the upper river and its people were dangerous.

"I have a young man here who has been in their country and did not find the journey so difficult or the people so bad," said Champlain.



Tessouat looked at Vignau. "Nicholas," said he, "is it true that you said you were among the Indians of the upper river?"

"Yes," said Vignau, "I was there."

"You are a downright liar," said Tessouat. "You know well that you slept at my side every night with my children. How could you be so bold as to lead your chief to believe lies?"

At last Nicholas admitted that he had told untruths. The Indians wished to kill him, but Champlain let him go and patiently made the long voyage back to France to oversee the preparations of the fur company.

He found that in his absence, Rouen and St. Malo had joined the company and that La Rochelle had been kept out. She declared that, in or out, she would trade in furs just the same and let anyone who dared try to seize her ships. In spite of these quarrels everything was ready at last and the company's ships set sail.

They brought with them Louis Hébert (ā bear), his wife and children, Canada's first family. Hébert was a druggist who had been with Champlain at Port Royal and now followed him to Quebec. The fur company promised him land, food, and supplies for two years, if he would give half his time to act as doctor to the colony. Hébert was a great worker. He served as doctor, built a stone house, planted a garden and orchard, and raised grain and cattle. The Hébert house was Canada's first home.

With the ships came also four Recollet (Re

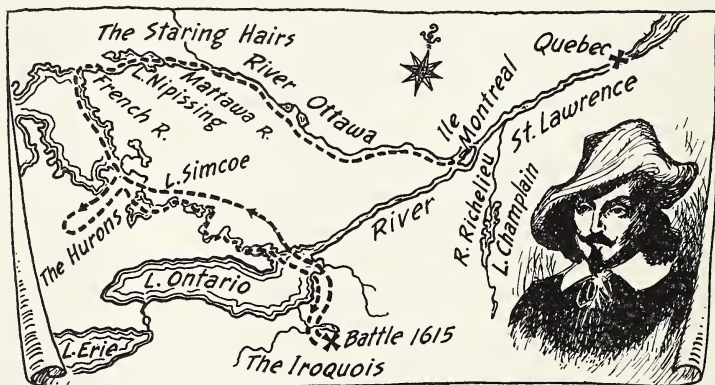


The Héberts

col ā) priests to begin the work of Christianizing the Indians. The good fathers at once set up an altar and held a church service, the first in Canada. The others then built a house, while Father Le Caron went up to Place Royal where he made friends with the Huron fur traders and returned with them to their country.

(b) *Champlain Opens the Ottawa Route*

Champlain remained to put things in order in Quebec and then, in July 1615, followed Le Caron west. With ten Indians and Nicholas Brulé, his interpreter, he pushed up the Ottawa.



They had little food and less sleep, and they had to make 80 portages. By the time they reached French River, the greedy Indians had eaten all the food and they had to paddle on blueberries and raspberries. Suddenly they came upon a terrifying sight: 300 savages, naked, painted in startling colors, their hair tied high in top-knots, and all armed to the teeth—picking blueberries! These Indians, called the Staring Hairs, looked like

demons, but were quite friendly and told Champlain that he was near the Great Lake.

They soon paddled out upon it. "La Mer Douce," (The Freshwater Sea), Champlain called it as he gazed out over its blue waters. They landed near the foot of Georgian Bay. The Hurons welcomed Champlain as an ally, and he marched on from town to town till he met Le Caron waiting beside his altar to lead the party in prayers for the newly-discovered land of Ontario<sup>3</sup> and its people.

At a large town in the modern township of Orillia, they joined the warriors waiting to march against the Iroquois. Paddling along linked waterways to the River Trent, they crossed Lake Ontario and entered Iroquois country. They attacked a town, but this time the Iroquois drove them off. The Hurons retreated, carrying their wounded packed in baskets, each strapped to the back of a strong warrior. Champlain was wounded in the knee and suffered agonies on the return trip.

"The pain of the wound in my knee," he said, "was nothing in comparison with that I endured while I was carried, bound, on the back of one of our savages."

He had hoped to return at once to Quebec, but the Hurons refused to give him canoes and he had to go back with them to their country. He spent a busy winter, hunting, fishing, exploring, and did not reach Quebec until April.

## VII

### THE FATHER OF CANADA

#### (a) *A Very Great Man*

This was Champlain's last exploration. His journeys through the beautiful woods and rich lands of Ontario had shown him

<sup>3</sup> The name may have come from the Huron town, Itonatiria, where Brébeuf and his companions later began their mission.



something of the greatness and value of Canada. He knew that if France wished to keep it, she must colonize it, and he spent the rest of his life trying to do this. Only a very great man could have continued year after year, struggling to do what the country needed and always failing. Champlain worked for months persuading the traders to bring out their wives, erect houses, lay out gardens, and help him build Fort St. Louis to protect Quebec. Then news came that the members of the Company were quarreling and he hurried across to France to smooth matters over. The ports that had been kept out of the Company sent their trading ships to Quebec where they fought with the Company's ships. Champlain rushed back to keep the peace on this side of the Atlantic. This happened again and again. After twelve years of heart-breaking toil Champlain still had only one farmer in the country and 50 people in the town. Quebec was a ruin, Fort St. Louis unfinished, the people starving.

At last Richelieu, a great French statesman, took Canada in hand. He withdrew the monopoly from the old Company and gave it to a new one, called the Company of New France. The new Company promised to bring out 6,000 colonists, and hurried off a fleet with 400 settlers and food enough to save Canada from starvation.

Quebec was reduced to a few pounds of mouldy flour and some beans; her people crept daily to the shore to watch for the supply ships. After weeks of waiting, word came up the river that an English fleet under Admiral Kirke had captured the supply ships at Gaspé, taken the food, and burned the ships. Kirke sent a message to ask Champlain to surrender Quebec. Champlain had neither men nor guns to defend his town, but he put on so bold a face that Kirke sailed away.

The next year he returned, captured Quebec, and carried

Champlain a prisoner to England. When the war ended, Champlain crossed at once to France to urge the king to insist on a treaty that gave Canada back to the French. This was done and Champlain returned to Quebec for the last time. He brought with him 200 settlers among whom were M. Giffard and his family who built up a fine seigneurie (seen ū rē) at Beauport on the St. Charles.

In the two years that remained to him, Champlain did his best to set the colony on its feet. He won the Hurons, who had been trading with the English, to trade again with Canada; repaired Fort St. Louis, built a church for the missionaries, and a fort at Three Rivers where the Fur Fair was held each year. Champlain died on Christmas Day, 1635, at the age of 68, and Canada mourned for him as a son mourns for his father.

### *(b) What Champlain Did For Canada*

That is the story of how Samuel Champlain became the father of Canada. He not only founded our country; he marked out the lines, west and north, of the vast stage upon which she was to play her part. He acted the first scene of the drama and gave the key to the part that Canada has ever since been playing.

His first move was fortunate. He found the St. Lawrence valley almost empty and seized it. This gave Canada the largest and easiest of the five great entrances to North America: the Mackenzie and Hudson Bay were blocked by ice; the Hudson River by the Iroquois; the Mississippi, though easy to descend, is difficult to ascend. While the Spanish and the English fought their way inland through the thick forest for a few hundred miles, Champlain pointed the French 2,000



Champlain Monument

miles up the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes into the great, rich, beautiful heart of the continent.

Champlain's second move also was wise. He chose for his colony what the Indians called Quebec, "the place where the river narrows," its "jaws", and its first good harbor. When he built his "habitation" at the foot of the tall cliff there,



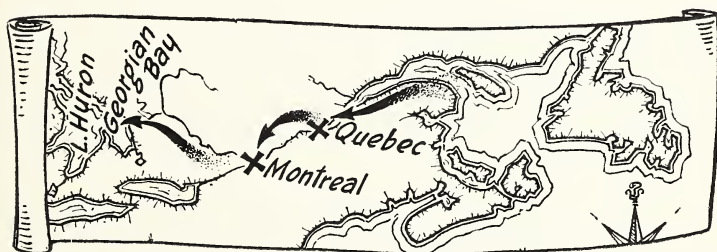
The Five Great Entrances to North America

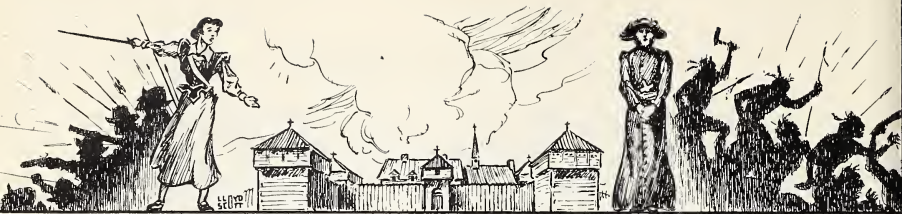
Canada was born. He left her, at his death, a pitifully small and weak infant, but she lived and after a time began to grow.

When he had seized his valley and founded his colony, Champlain naturally placed himself on the side of the northern Indians who were already trying to keep the Iroquois out of it. By joining the Algonkians and Hurons, and by opening the Ottawa route, he set Canada's feet on the trans-continental highway, and her face towards the trans-continental trading system, that she has ever since been trying to build. He won the first battle in the long fight to conquer Canada's great and broken width.

. . . . .

Civilized men were now using two of Canada's resources, fish and furs, and Champlain had set the stage for them to take possession of a third, her land. They were already slashing wastefully into the fish and furs. You will be interested to find out how long they lasted and how the white men treated the forest and the soil.





## Chapter Six

### ENTER NOVA SCOTIA AND ONTARIO

1635—1660

#### I

##### PICTURE OF YOUNG CANADA

CHAMPLAIN, the explorer, had led the fur traders up the St. Lawrence, but they cared only to make money and wished to keep Canada a mere trading post. The missionaries led the way west.

When Champlain died there were still only about 300 white men in Canada. Many of these worked for the Company of New France and lived in Canada only during the summer; perhaps 150 people really made their homes here. Some of those who had come out with Champlain on his last journey had already returned to France. Others had become *coureurs des bois*, "runners of the woods", men who lived and hunted with the Indians. There were a few priests and nuns, a very few workmen, perhaps five families in Quebec, and two farmers with their households: Couillard (Coo ee are), who had married Hébert's daughter and taken over the Hébert farm; and M. Giffard who was clearing his land at Beauport. Ta-



Coureur de Bois



doussac and Place Royal were summer trading posts. Three Rivers had a mission and a small fort. Quebec was only a huddle of warehouses and huts on the narrow strip of land between the river and the cliff. At Champlain's death these few, scattered buildings sheltered all the white people of Canada. They were all he had to show for 27 years of work and sacrifice.

(a) *Canada's First Fair*

Canada stood still, but the fur trade grew; the Company of New France saw to that. They policed the St. Lawrence strictly. Gone were the old wild days when ships from all the fishing ports fought in the river, and any bold sailor with quick wit and good luck could carry off a fortune in furs. Now, even the few citizens of Canada were forbidden to trade in furs and were severely punished if they were caught doing so. If Madame Couillard needed a fur coat, she must buy it from the company, though foxes stole her chickens and beaver drained her duck pond.

Instead of 20 ships at once, only the two company ships now came up the river. They brought in supplies for the white men and trade goods for the Indians; and took back, in a good year, 20,000 skins to France.

The Algonkians traded at Tadoussac and Quebec, but most of the furs were brought down from the west by the Hurons. They grew corn, a food which is easily carried on a long canoe journey, so they became "middle men" in the fur business. That is they bought hatchets, knives, kettles, blankets, from the Canadians on the St. Lawrence, carried them up the Ottawa, and traded them to the Western Indians for furs. These furs, together with those they got by their own hunting, were collected or "pooled" in the Huron country.



Each July, the pooled furs were stored in a great fleet of canoes and carried down the Ottawa and St. Lawrence to Three Rivers where the annual Fur Fair was held. As many as 140 canoes and 600 Indians came to the Fair. The braves swarmed about the Company's traders, while the squaws set up bark huts on the shore. Most of the families had furs to sell, but there were also sightseers, medicine men, gamblers, and thieves in the crowd. The Fair lasted six days and followed the same program each year. On the first day the Indians built their shelters; on the second, they held a great pow-wow with the French; the third and fourth days were given up to trade. The Indians now realized the value of their furs and bargained for a good price as keenly as any modern trader. The Company's agents had to be careful to treat all with the greatest courtesy. On the fifth day the French gave a feast for their guests; and at dawn on the sixth, the canoe fleet put out from shore on its long voyage back to Lake Huron.



The Fur Fair

### (b) *The Canadians Complain*

In return for a monopoly of this rich trade the Company of New France had promised to bring 6,000 settlers to Canada. Instead of bringing them in, it kept them out. The Company could do this because in those days the only way to get to Canada was in the Company's ships.

The Canadians complained so much about this, and about not being allowed to trade in furs, that the king finally took the fur monopoly away from the Company and gave it to the inhabitants, or "habitants" as they were called. They formed a company of their own and every citizen of Canada and Acadia had a right to belong to it.

Unfortunately the new system did not turn out to be much better than the old one. The Company of New France still owned the only store in the colony. The habitants had to sell their furs and buy their supplies there, and the Company paid them a low price for their furs and charged them a high price for the goods they bought. They complained loudly about these things, and quarreled among themselves over their profits.

## II

### ACADIA BECOMES NOVA SCOTIA

Canada had few settlers, but Acadia was even worse off; she had none, that is no real settlers. For years after Argall destroyed Port Royal the only white men in the Provinces were those in charge of the fishing stations and fur trading posts scattered along her beautiful shores. These men fought continually. They fought among themselves for the best trading posts; and they had to fight the English to keep Acadia.



Acadia in the 1600's

In those days Acadia included what is now Nova Scotia, Cape Breton, Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick, and a large part of the State of Maine. She pushed out boldly between Canada and the English Colonies to the south. Both of them wanted her, partly because of her rich fishing grounds, and partly because whichever colony held her could easily attack the other.

(a) *New Neighbors Move In*

Captain Argall had come all the way from Virginia to destroy Port Royal, but Acadia now had English neighbors just down the coast at Plymouth.

The new neighbors were Puritans, people who disapproved of the Anglican church service. They lived very strictly, wore plain clothes, and frowned upon all kinds of amusement. As they were persecuted in England, a group of them decided to go to America where they could live and worship as they pleased. They sailed from Plymouth, England, 101 people and their goods crowded into a small ship, *The Mayflower*. A nine weeks' voyage brought them to the shore of what is now Massachusetts. The men gathered in the ship's cabin and wrote out a plan for governing their colony. On Sunday they rested and on Monday went ashore. While the men chose a place for the settlement, the women set to work at their two months' washing. They called their village Plymouth. The winter was a hard one and many died, but the Indians were friendly. They taught the white men to plant corn, placing a fish as fertilizer in each hill. The next fall the settlers had



A Puritan Family

such good crops that they celebrated the first Thanksgiving Day.

Freedom to worship as they pleased and to govern themselves drew many settlers to America. By 1641, Massachusetts had a population of 20,000. Not all the settlers were Puritans. Three groups which had different ideas about church and government broke away to found new colonies: Rhode Island, Connecticut and New Hampshire. But they all believed firmly in worshiping God, governing themselves, and educating their children. They opened schools and held "town meetings" to make their laws and to see that they were obeyed. They were hard workers and good money-makers. They farmed, fished, ran sawmills, built small ships and soon worked up a good trade with Newfoundland and the West Indies.

Like the Virginians, the Massachusetts settlers claimed that all North America belonged to England and that the French had no right to Acadia. Every now and then, they would seize an Acadian ship or post. In return the Acadians would raid the English Colonies. The English would then gather a fleet of ships and "conquer" Acadia; that is, they would sail along her shores, burn the Acadian trading posts, and sail home again. Acadia then belonged to England. Presently the king of England would give her back to France. The English colonies would then "conquer" her again. This happened again and again. The story of the La Tours gives a picture of the life of those times in Acadia. It is as exciting, as sad, and as funny, as a play.

### (b) *The La Tour Story*

Before the play began, Poutrincourt's son, Biencourt, died and left his fur trading post at Cape Sable to his boyhood friend, Charles de la Tour.



*Act I: Father and Son*

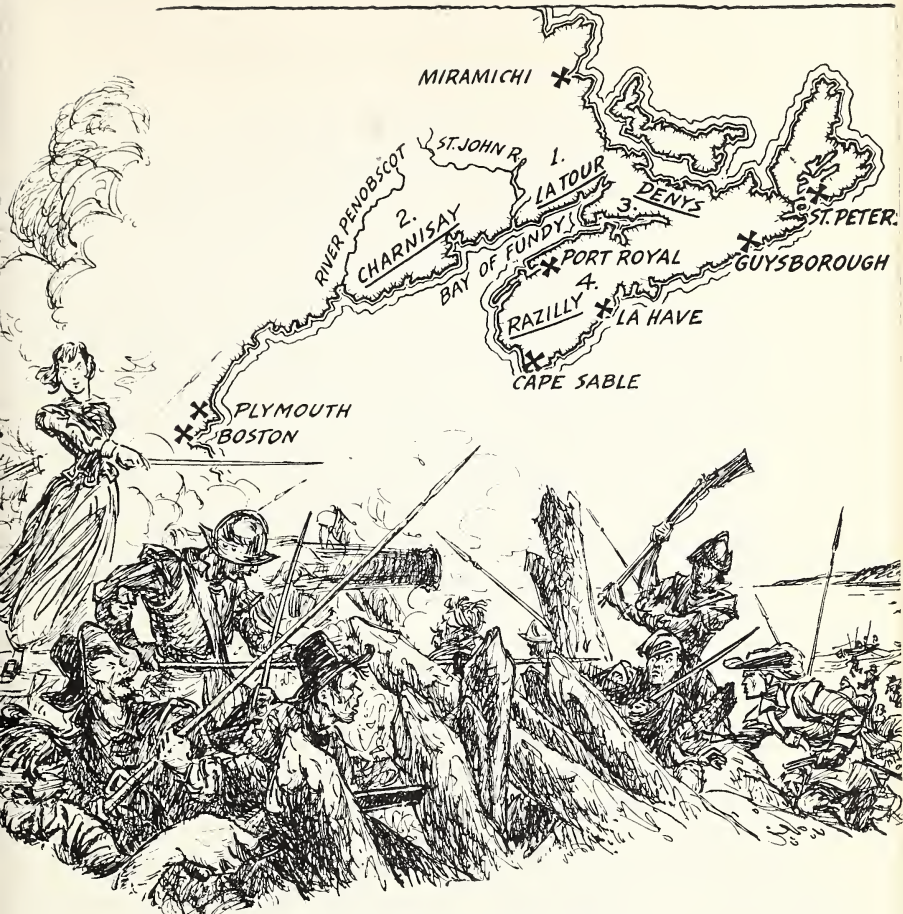
In Act I France gave Acadia to the English who granted it to Sir William Alexander, a Scotsman. As there was already a New England and a New France, Alexander felt that there should also be a New Scotland, so he renamed his new estate: Nova Scotia.<sup>1</sup> Collecting a shipload of colonists, Alexander sent them out to Nova Scotia in charge of Charles' father, Claude de la Tour. Claude, to keep his property in Nova Scotia, had become a British citizen and had promised to persuade Charles to become one. But when father Claude sailed up to Cape Sable, son Charles refused hotly to become British. Claude attacked his post, but Charles fought him off and held Cape Sable for France. Claude then sailed round to Port Royal where he settled his colonists. But within three years England gave the country back to France and most of the Scottish settlers returned home.

*Act II: Enter the Villain*

In Act II Nova Scotia had again become Acadia, and the Company of New France sent out as Governor Isaac de Razilly. To protect Acadia from the New Englanders and to put down the smugglers, De Razilly divided her into four trading areas: Charles de la Tour was given the Saint John region; Charnisay the Penobscot; Nicholas Denys the Gulf shore; while De Razilly himself took charge of what is now Nova Scotia. De Razilly had just completed these arrangements when, unfortunately, he died.

Charnisay, the villain of the play, at once seized De Razilly's district and attacked La Tour's post on the Saint John. Charles was away on a trading trip, but his wife Lady de la Tour, a brave woman and a "bonny fighter", defended their fort until

<sup>1</sup> Nova is the Latin word for new; Scotia the Latin word for Scotland.



Lady de la Tour helps fight against Charnisay

it was secretly opened to the enemy by a traitor. Charnisay hanged nine of Lady de la Tour's men and she herself died of horror and grief. The villain was preparing to move against Denys on the Gulf shore when he was drowned. Charles now came marching home, married Charnisay's widow and, in his turn, ruled both the Penobscot and the Saint John regions.

*Act III: The Best Man Wins*

All this time Denys had managed to keep out of the quarrels of the others. He had built trading posts at Guysborough and St. Peter's, and fished and traded peacefully in his own blue seas. Then fortune deserted him.

When Charnisay died, the Nova Scotia area was seized by Le Borgne, a man from whom he had borrowed money. Le Borgne also wanted the whole of Acadia for himself. He first captured Denys whom he held in irons at Port Royal. Somehow Denys escaped to France where the king restored to him his trading rights on the Gulf. Le Borgne was on his way to attack La Tour at Saint John when he heard that Denys had returned. Not wishing to have an enemy behind him as well as before, he hurried back to Port Royal. He had just reached it when an English fleet appeared and after a stiff fight captured it.

It was now England's turn to hold Acadia for a few years. Le Borgne fled. La Tour sold his trading rights to the English and soon afterward died. No one troubled Denys at St. Peter's where he did a roaring trade. Furs poured in till his warehouses were full to bursting. He was expecting ships to transport them to France when the warehouses caught fire and burned to the ground. It was a heavy blow, but Denys pluckily started again. He moved to Miramichi where he continued to trade in a smaller way. When he grew old, he retired to France and wrote a history of Acadia.<sup>2</sup>

*(c) The School For Sailors*

For years after Sir Richard Whitbourne went home the Newfoundlanders were left without any ruler except the fishing admirals who treated them very cruelly. The English fish

<sup>2</sup> It was from Denys' book that the description of dry fishing in Chapter Four was taken.

merchants kept urging the Government to keep settlers out of Newfoundland, and the king now had a reason of his own for doing so. England was trying to make her fleet stronger than the French fleet. To do this, she needed all the trained sailors she could get, and the Newfoundland fisheries made a fine training school for sailors. England wanted to keep up this useful "school", and when her men were trained she wanted them to live in England where she could lay her hand on them when she needed them for the fleet.

For these reasons the English Government now made very harsh laws to prevent new settlers going to Newfoundland, and to drive out the colonists who were already there. One law said that no ship's captain might carry any man except those of his own crew to Newfoundland, and he was bound to bring back with him every man he took out. Another law said that no person might live within six miles of the coast, cut any wood, or cultivate the land. No police or judges were permitted to live on the island; all those who did wrong had to be carried to England to be tried. All goods used on the island, except salt, had to be bought from England.

Finally, orders went out that all settlers must move to the English colonies or return to England, and a warship was sent to burn down the houses and bring the people back. At this news the Newfoundlanders, driven to desperation, took up their weapons and prepared to resist the soldiers. But when the captain, Sir John Berry, saw these brave people ready to defend their homes, he refused to destroy them. He returned



and reported to the king that they were good citizens and should be left where they were.

In the end the Government gave in and allowed the colonists to remain, though they were still forbidden to clear land or plant crops, even vegetables and flowers.

### III

#### THE CHURCH WINS ONTARIO

##### (a) *The Jesuits' Plan*

When Champlain was no longer here to watch over Canada at home, and hurry across the ocean every year to beg food and protection for her, the king and his advisers soon forgot her. But the Church remembered her; most of the progress made in Canada during the next 30 years was made by the Church.

After the English gave the country back to France, the Recollet Fathers handed over the work of Christianizing the Indians to the Jesuits, a larger and richer Order of priests. The Jesuits planned to convert the Hurons and use them to draw other tribes to God. With a great deal of coaxing and many presents, Fathers Brébeuf (Bray boof), Daniel, and Davost persuaded the leaders of the Huron fur fleet to take them back with them after the Fur Fair in 1634. It was a 900 mile journey. The heat was terrific. They had nothing to eat but a little corn porridge. The priests were not used to canoes, but they paddled all day and every day till even Father Brébeuf, a large and very strong man, was almost worn out.

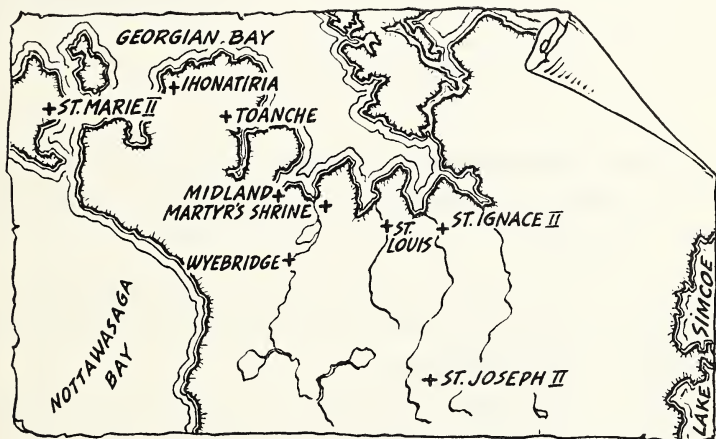
The Fathers carried on. Up the St. Lawrence, the Ottawa, and the Mattawa, across Lake Nipissing, down the French River and along the lake shore to the southern part of Georgian Bay. At last the Indians ran their canoes ashore, tossed Father



Brébeuf's baggage on the ground, and vanished into the forest. The poor man stumbled through the evening woods to Ihonatiria where he waited until Fathers Daniel and Davost arrived, half starved and wholly exhausted.

(b) *Again the Best Man Wins*

At Ihonatiria the priests built themselves a house and began to feed the hungry, heal the sick, teach the children, and explain the Christian religion to the adults. The last was



Map Showing Early Missions

hard to do. The Hurons could not make up their minds whether the priests were gods or devils. They argued about this for years.

"Being a Christian is too much trouble," they said, "there are so many rules that it is tiresome, and we don't want to go to heaven anyway."

The priests built a central mission, Ste. Marie, on the River Wye, near the place where Midland now stands. It



A Priest Teaching the Indians

had a stone wall round it on the landward side, a church, a school, a kitchen and sleeping space for 60 people. From this center the priests travelled, two by two, round western and southern Ontario.

"Here come Famine and Pest," screamed the Tobacco Nation children as they saw the Fathers struggling through the snowdrifts towards their town.

"Go out and leave our country, or we will put you into the kettle and make a feast of you," said the Chief of the Neutral Nation to Fathers Brébeuf and Davost.

In the end the Fathers won their fight. By 1647, other missions had been built and Ste. Marie was flourishing with fields, a garden, chickens, pigs and cows, though how the priests carried the cattle up from Quebec no one knows. Sixty-four white men, priests and workmen, lived there and as many as 6,000 Indians were fed and lodged there in a single year. Nearly all the Hurons became Christians and there were many converts among the other tribes.

## IV

### MAISONNEUVE FOUNDS MONTREAL

The Church grew also upon the St. Lawrence. Soon after he came to Canada, Father le Jeune began to write accounts of his adventures in this strange new world. He persuaded other priests to do the same. These "Relations", as they were called, were sent each year to France where they were printed. They told of the priests' journeys and work, of their struggles and sufferings, their brave lives and heroic deaths. These books are priceless now, for they tell us much of what we know about life in early days in Canada. They make interesting, often exciting reading. In those days, thousands of people in France read and wept over them. They gloried in the courage of the priests and poured out gold to help them in their work.

The most important gift was the foundation of Montreal. Several men united to give the money for this venture. Maisonneuve, a good man and a fine soldier, offered to lead the party. A wealthy lady provided money to send Jeanne Mance to establish a hospital in the new town. There were 57 men and two women in the party which left France in three ships. They reached Quebec in the fall of 1641 and spent the winter there. The Governor felt that these men and their supplies would be a great addition to Quebec. He knew, too, that Montreal lay directly in the path of the Iroquois, so he did his best to persuade Maisonneuve to remain in Quebec.

"Sir," said Maisonneuve, "It is my duty and my honor to found a colony at Montreal, and I would go, if every tree were an Iroquois."

In the spring he and his people went up the river and built their houses at Place Royal, the "little spot" that Champlain had found when he



Maisonneuve

raced the traders west to meet the Indians. The new fort and mission were built with bright hopes and many prayers. Ville Marie, they called it, the City of Mary.

As the Church grew, it helped Canada to grow a little. The priests and nuns brought out people to help them with their work. Quebec increased in size and a few settlers took up land along the St. Lawrence.

## V

### THE IROQUOIS' REVENGE

#### (a) *The Martyrs*

Suddenly upon this young, weak Canada, fell the fury of the Iroquois. Forty years had passed, but the Six Nations still remembered that they had been pushed out of the St. Lawrence valley by the Hurons, Algonkians, and French, and they thirsted for revenge. The furs of the north country were of better quality than those of the south; the Iroquois wanted the better fur country. The Dutch of New York were now supplying them with guns. There were 900 warriors among them, great fighters, fierce, proud, confident, clever, and they set themselves to smash the French and their Indian allies and to retake the St. Lawrence.

The Hurons and Algonkians were many more in number; the Iroquois knew that they would have to defeat them by strategy. They had the Dutch, their source of guns and ammunition, behind them; but the Hurons bought theirs from the Canadians, 900 miles away in Quebec. The Iroquois planned to cut this long line of communication; to prevent furs from going down to Quebec and guns from going up to Ontario. When the Hurons had no guns and the Canadians no furs, they would fall upon each in turn. It was a clever plan.

The Iroquois began by sending small war parties to Ontario to "soften up" the Hurons. Iroquois appeared in every part of the Huron country, cutting off a family here, attacking a band of braves there, burning the crops, stealing furs. War parties lay hidden along the Ottawa River. In July, 1647, the Hurons dared not take the fur fleet down to Quebec; but in 1648, they needed guns, hatchets and knives so badly that they sent down 250 of their bravest warriors with a fleet of loaded canoes. They sold their furs and returned to their own country in triumph. They arrived to find that soon after the fur fleet had left, the enemy had fallen upon St. Joseph, the largest of the Huron towns. The Iroquois struck on Sunday morning while the people were in church. They shot the priest and killed or carried off most of the people. The next spring they destroyed the missions at St. Ignace and St. Louis where Father Brébeuf was tortured for four hours, and gentle Father Lalement for 17 hours, before death put an end to their sufferings.

The Hurons seemed dazed by these blows. The priests could not rally them; they wished only to get away. Within two weeks after the capture of St. Louis, 15 Huron towns were deserted; the Huron nation was no more. With it went the missionaries' years of work and suffering. Sadly the good Fathers gave up Ste. Marie and followed their fleeing people to Christian Island in Georgian Bay. Many of the 8,000 who gathered there in the fall starved, or died, or were killed by the Iroquois before spring. Of those who remained some fled into the west beyond Lake Huron; others followed the priests to Quebec and settled at Lorette where their descendants live to this day.

In our own day, careful scientists have laid bare the foundations of these Huron Missions. A beautiful church and a martyr's



shrine have been built on the site of Ste. Marie, near Midland, Ontario. There, in 1949, and in 1950, the 300th anniversary of the deaths of the martyrs was celebrated with religious services and great historical pageants. Remembering the courage and the suffering of our forefathers in winning Canada for us makes us better Canadians. That is also an important reason for studying the history of our country.

(b) *The Heroes*

As they had succeeded so well with the Hurons, the Iroquois repeated their strategy with the French. The war parties that had raided the Ottawa now moved up to the St. Lawrence and ranged far and wide on both banks. Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal were frequently cut off from one another. Farmers were killed as they ploughed; hunters as they marked their game; anyone who ventured beyond the fort took his life in his hands. The convents were not safe and the nuns had to take refuge in the forts at night. The few soldiers in the country stood on guard day and night.

Only once was a stand made against the Iroquois. Dollard was a young man who had got into trouble in France and come to Canada, hoping by some brave act to regain his honor. He was living at this time in Montreal. In 1660, word reached the town that a war party of Iroquois was on its way down the Ottawa to attack the place. Dollard called together a band of 16 young Frenchmen with 40 Hurons and Algonkians and persuaded Maisonneuve to let them go out to meet the enemy. None of them expected to defeat the Iroquois; they hoped only to delay them and so give Montreal a little more time to prepare for the attack.

The young men paddled up the Ottawa to the Long Sault and built for themselves a rough shelter of logs and branches



Dollard's stand against the Iroquois

where they waited for the coming of the Indians. Soon a fleet of canoes with 200 warriors came down, shooting the rapids. The lads fled to their shelter and made ready to sell their lives dearly. And dearly they sold them. Beaten back at first, the Iroquois called to their aid 500 more men. Eight days they fought and could not make an entrance through Dollard's palisade. On the ninth they managed to make a breach and poured in to find only four Frenchmen alive. Three they burned at once, and taking the fourth for torture, they hurried off to their own country. For once the Iroquois had had fighting enough.

"All agree," says Parkman, "that Dollard and his followers saved Canada from a disastrous invasion."

### (c) *Canada in Despair*

Meantime, the Company of the Habitants was almost bankrupt. They had not had a single canoe load of furs from the west since the destruction of the Hurons. Trade was at a standstill.

As if this was not enough, Canada was now shaken by a great earthquake. It began on February 5, 1663, in the middle of a skating carnival at Quebec. The people were terribly frightened though no one seems to have been killed.

The earthquake left the settlements partly in ruins; the Company had no furs, their men neither work nor food. People began to leave the country. Father le Jeune wrote to the king:

"Sire, a troop of savages has reduced New France to extremity. May it please you, sire, to listen to her broken voice and her last words. 'Save me,' she cries, 'I shall be no longer French. I shall fall into the grasp of the savages when the Iroquois will drink the rest of my blood. I shall be consumed in their fires.' "

. . . . .

The missionaries had explored a new part of Canada, and the fur traders had kept settlers out. The question now was whether they could hold the country against the Indians.



## Chapter Seven

### HOW CANADA WAS SAVED

1660—1682

#### I

##### WHAT BOUCHER TOLD COLBERT

**Y**ET even in those dreadful days there were some people living here who loved Canada and called her home. These brave souls refused to give up hope. They gathered together and chose Pierre Boucher (Boo shay) to go to France and beg the king to save her.

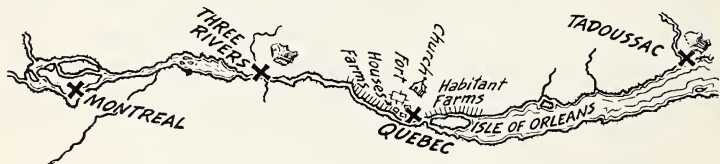


King Louis XIV receives Boucher

No better messenger could have been chosen. Boucher was an honest man who had lived in Canada from boyhood; he

was known and trusted by everyone in the colony. He had been Governor of Three Rivers which was often attacked by the Iroquois, so he knew how determined they were to drive the French out of the country, and how near they were to doing it. A petition to the King was prepared and Boucher carried it to France. King Louis received him kindly. Boucher talked also with Colbert, the King's chief Minister, who asked him to write a report upon the resources and needs of Canada.

Boucher made his report in a letter in which he told Colbert that Canada was an immense country stretching no one knew how far west and north of the St. Lawrence. Many people came to Canada on business, but only about 2,500<sup>1</sup> lived here. The settlers were scattered in four small settlements along 180



miles of the River St. Lawrence. Tadoussac was only a trading post. Quebec now had a population of about 800. It had several fine church buildings and a few good houses on the heights, but most of its people lived in poor houses below the cliff. Habitant farms stretched six miles along the St. Lawrence east, and about 20 miles west of the town. Three Rivers had a few people and Montreal a few more.

The fur trade was the chief business of the country. It had been a rich trade and would be again if the Iroquois could be driven from the Ottawa and upper St. Lawrence. Farming was hardly a business as yet, for the habitants seldom grew more than they needed to feed themselves and so had little

<sup>1</sup> Some writers say the population was only about 2,000 but Boucher was alive at the time and should know.



to sell. They were brave, tough fellows, these early Canadian farmers. They had to be. Each took his life in his hands every time he went into his fields, for the Iroquois were always lurking in the woods, ready to put an arrow into him. The land was covered with great trees, and all clearing and farm work had to be done by hand. The soil was rich and grew good crops of wheat, peas and pumpkins. Fish and game were plentiful. The houses were built close together for protection, and solidly for defence. All transportation was by water, in canoes or ships.

Then, as now, Canada was a good country for ordinary people. Most of the habitants had begun as servants. After working for others for two or three years, the habitant rented a piece of land and set up for himself. He built a house from the timber on his place, married, cleared his land, cropped it, and in four or five years was comfortable, with a family growing up round him. Boys and girls, were, then as now, Canada's best crop. Fine, strong, rosy-cheeked young people they were, good at work and sport but, Boucher thought, not as fond of school as they ought to have been. He advised anyone who came to Canada to be prepared to do everything for himself, and to bring a supply of provisions large enough for two or three years. The country, he said, had only three drawbacks: the mosquitoes, the long winter, and the Iroquois. The Iroquois hindered farming and made hunting and fishing almost impossible.

"But," he added, "it would not be a difficult matter to get rid of them, for there were no more than 900 warriors among them. It required only a large enough army to destroy them."

## II

### CANADA BECOMES A ROYAL PROVINCE OF FRANCE

Colbert was a great man. As he listened to Boucher talk and read his report, he began to understand something of the

greatness, the riches, the future possibilities of Canada. It is too valuable a property to be left in the hands of a company, he thought; it should belong to the King. We will make it a Royal Province of France.

In 1663 this was done. The Company of New France gave up its charter, and King Louis appointed a Council to rule Canada under his royal direction. The Council was made up of a governor who was the head of the Government and responsible for the defence of Canada; a bishop, the head of the church; an intendant to manage the business affairs of the colony; and five councillors.

The first thing to be done was to rescue Canada from the Iroquois who, as Father le Jeune said, "were drinking her blood". Colbert promised to send out 1,200 soldiers and the King chose the Marquis de Tracy to lead them.

De Tracy arrived in Quebec in June, 1665. It was the greatest day the little town had seen. People were elbowing each other for good places long before the two ships came into sight down the river. At last they appeared and the cannon of Quebec roared a welcome. Slowly the ships moved to their anchorage; slowly the boats carried the passengers to the landing-stage. The procession formed, moved along the narrow streets of the Lower Town, and began to climb the hill to the Upper Town and Fort St. Louis. The crowd gave a long sigh of delight and well it might. Never before had the Canadian sun shone on such a pageant. First came the Marquis de Tracy, a huge man, in crimson satin and plumed hat; behind him walked a group of young noblemen



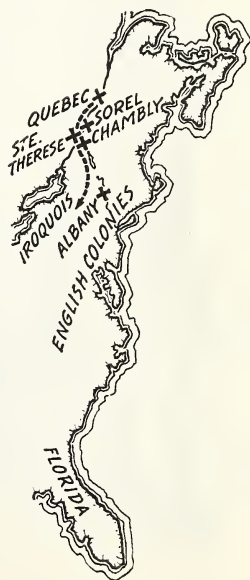
FRENCH SOLDIER  
AT END OF 17th CENTURY

in the silks, laces and ribbons fashionable in those days. They were followed by 24 of the King's guards in bright-colored uniforms. Last of all marched the long-looked-for soldiers, 200 of them, the first of the 1,200 promised. The people had cheered the Marquis and his followers, but at the sight of these tough fighters stepping smartly along in their ranks, they tossed their caps into the air and shouted themselves hoarse. These men brought hope to Canadians, who had almost given up hope.

Two months later there was an even greater show and louder cheering. A whole fleet of ships arrived bringing Governor Courcelles and Intendant Talon with their attendants; 1,000 soldiers trained in the Turkish wars; and 200 settlers with horses, sheep, cattle, and all kinds of supplies. Quebec doubled her population and Canada began to hold up her head.

(a) *De Tracy Subdues the Iroquois*

De Tracy wasted no time. Within three weeks he had his men building forts on the Richelieu River. Three were built that summer. De Tracy and Courcelles knew nothing of the cold and snow of a Canadian winter, so Courcelles set out from Quebec in January to attack the Iroquois. He picked up men at the different forts as he passed until he had 600 soldiers and Canadian volunteers. It was below-zero weather with a blizzard blowing much of the time, and the French soldiers were not warmly clothed. They suffered terribly, took the wrong road, missed the Iroquois, and arrived at a Dutch village. It had just been captured by the English who gave the Canadians food and wine. They returned to Quebec without seeing the Iroquois;



but the Iroquois had seen them and had been alarmed by the size of the army sent against them.

The next year, when de Tracy with 1,300 men went up the Richelieu and marched through the woods to the Mohawk villages, the Iroquois fled before them. The French destroyed their grain and provisions, burned their villages to the ground, and returned home without the loss of a man. It was a terrible punishment for many of the Iroquois starved that winter, but it was successful; it gave Canada 20 years of peace. De Tracy was welcomed back to Quebec with a service of thanksgiving in the church, and Louis de Lotbinière (Lō been yere), a Canadian seigneur, celebrated by giving the first ball ever held in Canada. Everyone went about smiling, happy, full of hope for the future.

### III

#### TALON SETTLES CANADA

It was now the turn of the intendant to show what he could do towards putting Canada's business affairs in order. King Louis had chosen Jean Talon as intendant and in doing so he had made no mistake. Talon was one of the best business managers Canada has ever had. He was here only five years, but in that time he set Canada firmly upon her feet. The first thing this country needs is more people, thought Talon as he looked the situation over, and he began at once to arrange for the coming of settlers.

At that time France lived under the feudal system. Under this system the king owned all the land in the country. He granted it out in large estates to lords who, in return, promised to fight for the king when he called upon them to do so.



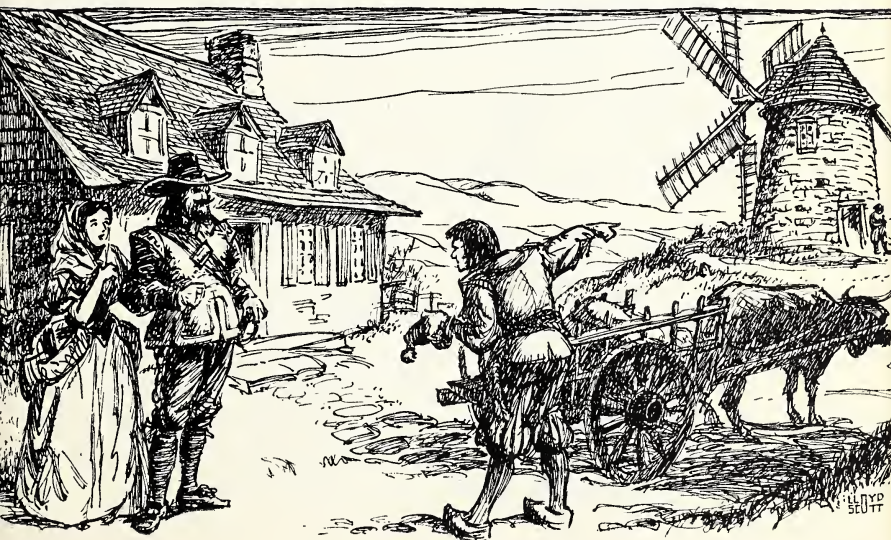
Jean Talon

Each lord divided his estate into farms which he rented to farmers, his tenants. The lord usually kept one farm for himself and the tenants paid their rent by working several days each year on this farm. They had also to give their lord part of their crops and follow him to battle when called upon.

It had long been planned to settle New France in the feudal way. King Louis and Talon now set up this system in Canada and it worked well at that time. The lord, or seigneur, and his tenants, the habitants, made a compact little settlement in the great empty land. Together they fought off the Iroquois, cleared the forest from their fields, and helped each other with the farm work.

(a) *The Seigneurs*

Talon suggested that the soldiers who had put down the Iroquois should be given farms on the Richelieu River. There they would guard Canada as well as settle it. This was done.



Seigneur and Lady



Along the St. Lawrence, Talon granted the largest seigneuries to educated men who seemed likely to become good leaders. Most seigneuries were about 12 miles square with a mile of river frontage. The seigneur paid nothing for his land, but he had to promise to live on it, to get habitants to settle on it, and to build for them a fort, a chapel, and a mill. When he received his seignury he knelt before the Governor, placed his hands between the Governor's hands, and gave his word to be loyal to the king. If he did not keep these promises, his land might be taken from him.

As soon as he had things under way on his seignury, the seigneur went to Quebec to meet the ships arriving with settlers. When the ship docked, the passengers rushed ashore, shouting with joy to be free after the long months in the narrow vessel. The seigneurs hurried from group to group, looking for young, strong men, promising them good land and easy terms. Now and then two seigneurs came to blows over a habitant, while he stood by, grinning at the fun.

#### (b) *The Habitants*

The habitant did not buy his land. He paid the seigneur a very small yearly rent for it: from 4 to 16 livres<sup>1</sup> for an 160 acre farm, part of which was paid in money and the rest in live chickens, wheat and eggs. He had also to work for the seigneur three days a year. Habitants came in rapidly. Talon advertised in France that grants of land and goods would be made to any hard-working man willing to go to Canada, and these advertisements brought out more men each year. Colbert gathered them together at the ports and hired ships to take them across the ocean. He sent over shiploads of stock for their farms and cargoes of flour, meat, clothes, and household goods to carry the settlers till they had a crop. Talon's plan worked

<sup>1</sup> The livre was an old French coin worth about 20c.

so well that in ten years 8,000 settlers came to Canada. So many men wanted to come that Colbert became alarmed.

"You will empty France to fill Canada," he said, and refused to send more. Talon pleaded, and Colbert finally agreed not to prevent people from coming though he would no longer help them to do so.

(c) *The Brides "Were a Handful"*

Not many families came and the country was filling up with bachelors, so Talon sent home for wives for his settlers.



The Marriage Market

Colbert was willing that women should go, and King Louis gave each bride a wedding gift of 50 livres in goods; because of this the girls were called the King's Girls.

Each shipload came over in charge of a matron. Madame Bourdon brought 150 on one ship, and they were a handful to manage, she says. Madame Bourdon then remained in Quebec to receive later groups, while Marguerite Bourgeoys welcomed those who went to Montreal. On arrival, the matrons led the

girls to halls where the "marriage markets" were held. Each young man had to apply first to the matron who questioned him as to how he made his living and whether he had cleared land and a house. He then chose the girl he liked best and tried to persuade her to marry him. If she liked him she took him. None of the girls was forced to marry anyone she did not like. Within a few hours the marriages were all made, and it is said that most of them turned out happily.

Having brought the girls out, Talon saw to it that the young men married them. Bachelors were forbidden to trade with the Indians, and were allowed to hunt only at certain times of the year. On the other hand, a man who married before he was 20 was given a wedding present of 20 livres. To encourage large families, the parents of ten living children were given a pension of 300 livres a year; parents of 12 children got 400 livres.<sup>2</sup> In those days when the land was still to be cleared and there was much heavy work to do, a large family was a great help to parents, who looked with pride on families of 14, 16, even 20 sons and daughters growing up about them.

#### (d) *Life In Early Days*

Talon was not content with bringing settlers to Canada; after they arrived, he organized their settlements. Most of the habitants wanted to live on the river which was the main highway, so they were given farms with a narrow front on the river and running back one, or even two miles. They built their houses facing the river and side by side for company and protection. The banks of the St. Lawrence began to look, as they look today, like one long street of white-washed houses, a pretty sight.

After the first two or three years of hard work in getting his buildings up and some land cleared and in crop, the habitant

<sup>2</sup> Family allowances are not new in Canada; they had them 300 years ago.

was usually pretty comfortable. His log house, white-washed every spring, was warm. His furniture cost him not a penny; he got his wood from his own trees and made the pieces himself. The clothes of the family were spun and woven from wool or hemp, or made from fur by the women folk. Even the family boots were made from cowhide raised on the place, or moosehide taken in the woods.

"I am clothed from head to foot in home-made articles," Talon wrote triumphantly to the king in 1671.

Anyone who was willing to work could grow, in two or three fields, enough wheat for bread; and peas and beans for the soup that French people love. There was not much pasture, but usually enough for a driving horse, oxen for the farm work, and for a few sheep. Pigs were allowed to run and feed in the woods. Fish and game were to be had for the taking. The maple tree supplied the habitant with sugar; he brewed his own beer and grew his own tobacco. At last Canada had people who were able to use her soil and forest resources. These first settlers used them economically. Like the Indians, the habitants took only what they needed. They farmed to make a living not to make a fortune. Their crude methods of farming and lumbering did not exhaust the soil or the forest as modern methods do.

They were gay and sociable, these early Canadians, with plenty of time for fun. The summer was a busy time, but in winter the whole community went on holiday, hunting, fishing, driving in carioles. They were very fond of fast driving, and



Early Canadians Were Fond of Fast Driving

there were frequent races on the ice of the river. Everyone skated, but the snowshoe and the toboggan were used for work, not for sport as we use them. Visiting was the chief delight of young and old. They passed their evenings in one another's homes, talking, laughing, dancing, playing cards, singing the songs of old France, and new ones composed in Canada.

"The boors of these manors live with greater comfort than the gentlemen in France," wrote Baron la Hontan, one of Canada's first tourists.

(e) *The Captain and the Curé*

Besides Talon, the habitant had two other friends to help him: the Captain and the Curé. In early days, when every able-bodied man and boy in each settlement was needed to defend it, the government appointed a captain of militia to lead the little band of defenders. In quiet times the captain represented the people in the community. He carried word of their needs to the government, and brought back notices and instructions which he read out in the churchyard after church on Sunday mornings.

The habitants' third friend was the curé, or priest. He preached to the people on Sunday and guided them during the week. He was an educated man, and as few of the habitants could read or write, the priest was their book, their newspaper, and their letter-writer. He explained things to them and advised them as to what they should do. This made life simple, but was not, perhaps, very good for them as it gave them no training in thinking things out for themselves.

(f) *Laval: Bishop and Saint*

The habitants had Bishop Laval to thank for their curés. François Laval was heir to a title and great estates in France, but he gave them up to his brother and volunteered to go as



a missionary to China. Instead, the king appointed him the first Bishop of Canada.

When Laval came to New France all the priests were missionaries to the Indians. He saw at once that men were needed to preach to the settlers and he built the Seminary in Quebec to train priests for this work. Later the Seminary opened a school for boys. There were no public schools in Canada in those days. The nuns taught girls in their convents



Bishop Laval and Wood Carver

at Quebec and Montreal; but most children of those days had no schooling at all.

Laval lived in Canada for 50 years and spent every day of it working for the Canadian church and the Canadian people. He gave away almost all his salary, ate very little and only the cheapest foods, slept upon boards, and would give the coat off his back to anyone in need. As he grew older, he resigned his bishopric, but he kept on serving in the churches. He was 85

when he had one of his feet frozen while he said Mass in an unheated church. This brought on the illness of which he died in 1708. Laval was so great and good a man that it is little wonder Canadians still think of him as a saint.

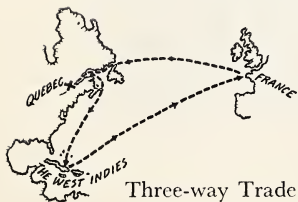
(g) *Canada Begins to Support Herself*

Before Talon came to Canada, Canadians bought everything they needed from the merchants in France; food, clothing, furniture, tools, had to be brought across the ocean which made them very expensive. It was also a dangerous way to live for when the ships were late, or lost, the people starved. Talon did much to change this situation. By his model farm he taught his settlers to grow more wheat and fodder. By his instructions they raised sheep and sowed hemp so that the women were able to spin and weave the cloth needed for clothes and bedding.

Talon also built a brewery and a tannery in Quebec. As Canada had plenty of lumber and fish, he had a ship built and sent it to the West Indies with a cargo of these things. They were sold there and the ship loaded with sugar and tropical goods which were carried to France and sold there. The money made was used to buy things needed in Canada and the ship returned with them to Quebec. The journey was long and expensive, but Talon tried hard to establish this three-way trade.

The King gave money to many Canadians to start them in business, but they were allowed to trade only with France, and being helped made them helpless. Canada's trade limped badly. Yet she did begin to be, in a small way, a trading nation.

In the 300 years since then she has worked up until she is now the third largest trading nation in the world. Imagine how proud Talon would be if he knew that.



Three-way Trade

## IV

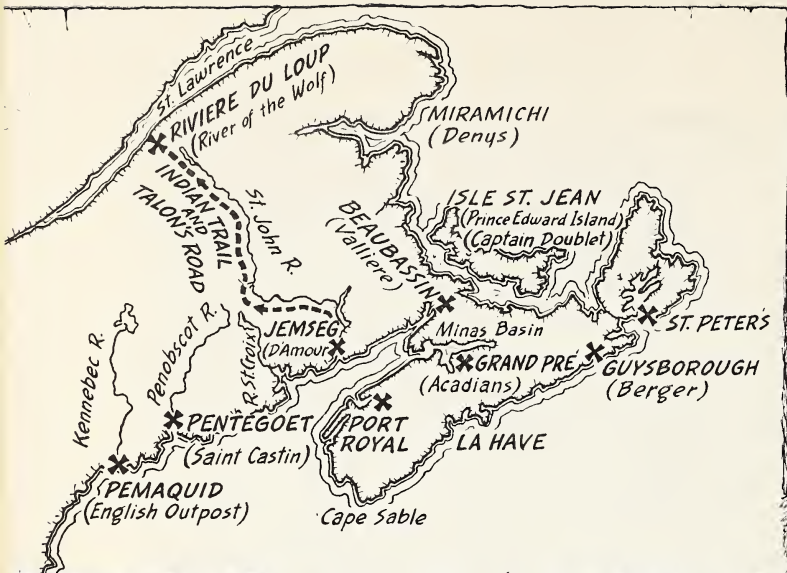
### NOVA SCOTIA AND HER NEIGHBORS

#### (a) *Acadia Gets More Acadians*

After La Tour's death, England kept Nova Scotia 13 years but she had made no settlements in the province and, in 1667, gave it back to France. Nova Scotia again became Acadia. She had no Talon to organize an immigration scheme for her, but Grandfontaine, the acting Governor, was a clever, sensible man. He set up his headquarters at Pentegoet where a small fort stood guard against New England. He then took a census and found that there were only 399 real settlers in the country; of those Port Royal had 359.

Like Talon, Grandfontaine then set to work to bring in more people. As a suitable place for settlement, he chose the beautiful Basin of Minas. In his time 60 families settled there. With the descendants of the La Tours and 40 families who had come out with De Razilly, these people became the first Acadians. They were a quiet people whose story begins happily but has a tragic climax which will be told in its place. All these families came from diked lands in France and knew how to dike the shores of the Basin and grow fine crops of grain and hay. They kept stock, and planted orchards and gardens.

Presently Canada began to hear of these prosperous Acadians. Her merchants would have liked to trade with them, but the Acadians found it easier to trade secretly with their neighbors of New England. Canada was too far away. Talon planned a road to connect the St. Lawrence with the Saint John, but it was never built. In spite of this, when the Canadian coureurs des bois heard of the rich fur trade of the Saint John, they began coming down to try their fortunes in Acadia. Valliere (Val yair) built a post at Beaubassin; Captain Doublet opened trade on Isle St. Jean (Prince Edward Island). The Council



St. Castin

at Quebec granted seigneuries on the River Saint John, four of them to the d'Amour (da more) brothers. Three of these young men remained fur traders, but Louis, the eldest, farmed 65 acres at Jemseg where he built a neat log cabin for his wife and children, grew wheat, and kept stock.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> See story of John Gyles in *Stories of the Land of Evangeline* by Grace Macleod.

The most romantic of these adventurers from Canada was Baron St. Castin who took over Pentegoet. He had been one of De Tracy's men and from the first took to Indian life like a duck to water. At Pentegoet he lived in wild splendor with his Indian Princess and a houseful of her relatives. He was a bold, clever, agreeable young aristocrat who won the favor of the Abenakis and the other tribes in that region and kept them loyal to himself and to France.

St. Castin's influence over his Indian friends became more and more valuable to the French, as the New Englanders pushed nearer and nearer to Acadia. The French claimed that the Kennebec River was the boundary; the English declared that it was the St. Croix. In the border land between the two rivers, the French raided the English settlements and the English attacked the French posts. At last the French king put his foot down and ordered that no English settlement should be allowed east of the Penobscot; that there was to be no further trade with New England; and that English fishermen would no longer be allowed to fish in Acadian waters. It seemed unlikely that the New Englanders would obey these rules, and certain that trouble would come of them.

#### (b) *The English Colonies Were Growing Fast*

By this time the Newfoundland colonies had been united and granted to Sir David Kirke who charged them rent and taxed their fish. In spite of this and the harsh laws against settlement, settlers did manage to reach the island and to stay there. By 1650 it had a population of 2,000. About this time the English people rebelled against King Charles I and executed him. Oliver Cromwell, the leader of the rebellion, became the ruler of the land. He sent a commission under John Treworgie to govern Newfoundland, and for seven years the islanders were protected against the fishing admirals and merchants. They



improved their houses, and planted gardens. The fishing was good, and in the winter the settlers turned to ship-building at which they were skilful. The peaceful-years were few, but they gave the Newfoundlanders time to draw breath and get a real grip on their island.

The mainland colonies were also growing rapidly. They now stretched all the way down the Atlantic coast to Florida. New York had been founded by the Dutch who began fur trading on the Hudson River and built New Amsterdam, now New York City. They bought the site of the great modern city for beads and ribbons worth about \$24. In 1664, while England and Holland were at war, the English captured the colony and renamed it New York. The other colonies were founded by proprietors, rich men to whom the king gave large grants of land. They divided this land into farms which they sold or rented to settlers: Lord Baltimore founded Maryland as a refuge for Roman Catholics. William Penn founded Pennsylvania and secured control of New Jersey and Delaware as a haven for

Quakers. Both these proprietors allowed members of any church to settle on their lands and to elect assemblies to govern themselves. Carolina had eight proprietors, but they sold their land back to the king. Georgia was founded by a company to provide for people imprisoned for debt. This company had difficulty in governing, so Georgia, too, was given back to the king.

Most of the people in these colonies were English but they expected no help from the English government and they got none. Each English colonist knew that when he took up land, or set up a business, he must depend upon himself, sink or swim. This made the settlers self-reliant and



hard working. There was land for all who wished to farm, furs for the hunter and trapper, fish for the fishermen, lumber in plenty for house and ship-building. The southern colonies grew tobacco. Northern farmers produced grain, hay and stock. The fishermen built small schooners and fished round Acadia and on the Newfoundland Banks. They dried their fish and sold them, with the farmers' grain and cattle, to the sugar planters of the West Indies who wanted cheap food for their slaves. They brought back sugar and molasses. In this way the English colonies built up a profitable trade with both the West Indies and Newfoundland. They were increasing rapidly in population and wealth. Altogether by 1682, they had half a million settlers to Acadia's 900 and Canada's 10,000.

. . . . .

The few Canadians had managed to hold Canada against the Iroquois. The next question was: could they hold it against the increasing numbers of English settlers?



## *The Third Adventure: Exploring Canada*

### Chapter Eight

#### CANADA TAKES POSSESSION OF THE GREAT WEST

1663—1684

**T**HOUGH Canada had not many settlers, Talon was making her a busy, growing colony; and he had still greater plans for her. He hoped to shut the English colonies into the strip of land between the Appalachian Mountains and the Atlantic, while Canada spread out west, north and south over the rest of North America. Like Champlain, he knew that to do this Canada must make friends of the western Indians, explore the west, and settle it. There was no time to lose. Canada had a good lead; she had advanced much farther west than the English colonies. But they were growing fast; if they were to be shut in, it must be done at once. Canada was now firmly on her feet; the Iroquois were quiet; it was time to take possession of the Great West.



### I

#### THE SITUATION

Ontario was already well known to Canadians. Champlain, his interpreters, Brulé and

Nicolet, and the priests had explored it. Brulé had been as far north as Sault Ste. Marie, and Nicolet as far west as Green Bay and the Fox River.

In Talon's time Ontario was empty. The Iroquois had not stopped with destroying the Hurons. Ontario was good beaver country and the Six Nations wanted all of it for themselves. Within a few years they fell upon and scattered the Tobacco Nation, the Neutrals, the Staring Hairs (Ottawas) and the Nipissings. Savagely they swept these tribes from their homes, and left the lovely Ontario woodlands solitary. Only Iroquois were now seen



Settlements of Indian Tribes in the West

there. In winter they came to trap the beaver and take home the fine skins which they sold to the English at Albany. They were determined to get the furs of the Western Indians also for Albany, and they kept a sharp watch on the Ottawa River to make sure that no furs went down to Montreal and Three Rivers. The displaced tribes fled north and west like leaves before the wind. Their flight was a terrible thing for them, but it turned out to be a great help to the Canadians in exploring the west.

For a time nothing was heard of the lost tribes. No furs came from the West to the St. Lawrence and Canada's fur trade almost died out. Suddenly a small party of Hurons and Ottawas appeared at Three Rivers. They had not dared to come down the Ottawa, but had stolen along the Nipissing route to the upper Ottawa, portaged to the headwaters of the St. Maurice and paddled down that river to Three Rivers. They had settled in good fur country, they said, and had come to find out whether Canada wished to trade. The Canadians, who had not had a skin from the West in over a year, welcomed them with open arms. The party returned as secretly as it had come; but the next year a fleet of Ottawa and Tobacco Nation canoes loaded with furs paddled boldly down the Ottawa River.

When the Ottawas went home that year, two young Canadians went with them. Their names are not mentioned, but it is believed that they were Pierre Radisson and Chouart Groseilliers.

## II

### RADISSON AND GROSEILLIERS LEAD THE WAY

#### (a) *They Make Friends*

Pierre Radisson was a favorite of fortune and lived a long life of adventure more exciting than any story. When he was 15 he came from France to live with his sisters in Three Rivers. The next year, while out hunting, he was captured by the Iroquois whose friendship he won by his gaiety and good nature. He lived with them two years before he was able to make his escape. He returned to Three Rivers again and found that his sister had married Chouart Groseilliers (Grō-sigh ā). Groseilliers had come to Three Rivers at 16, and then became a fur trader. He knew several Indian languages and the canoe routes as far



west as Green Bay. Radisson was eager to explore and to trade. The two young men became friends and partners.

Radisson and Groseilliers came back from the West with the news that the Ottawas were bringing another cargo of furs down to the Fur Fair, which they did. By that time the two friends were eager to be off again; so one dark night in June, 1658, they slid their canoe into the water at Three Rivers and paddled silently away. They overtook the returning fur fleet on the Ottawa; had a brush with the Iroquois; escaped and, paddling day and night, reached Sault Ste. Marie where the fleet broke up. The two friends went home with the Pottawatamies of Green Bay. They had hardly stepped ashore when news came that the Mohawks were hot upon their trail. The Pottawatamies were terrified, but Radisson rallied their bravest warriors, ambushed the Iroquois, and destroyed the whole party. The grateful Pottawatamies could not do enough for the two Canadians who spent that winter in their friendly wigwams.



Radisson and Groseilliers Ambush the Iroquois

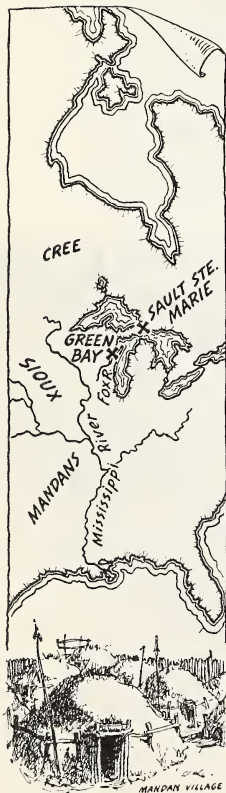
"But our mind was not to stay here," says Radisson, "but to travel and see countries."

So, in the spring, the young men paddled up the Fox River and on from river to river west till they came to "a great river" (the Mississippi). They crossed it to the great plains where they wandered all summer, south to the Mandans and north again to the Sioux.

### (b) *They Organize the Fur Trade*

As they travelled the young explorers learned many useful things about the fur trade: that the beaver-skins of the south were not so fine as those of the north; that Sault Ste. Marie was the cross-roads of the north-west; that the clever Ottawas held it and acted as middlemen between the western tribes and the fur-traders in Canada. Shrewdly they kept all the guns they bought in Canada for themselves. They allowed the Crees to buy knives and hatchets, but they would not sell even these to the fierce Sioux warriors.

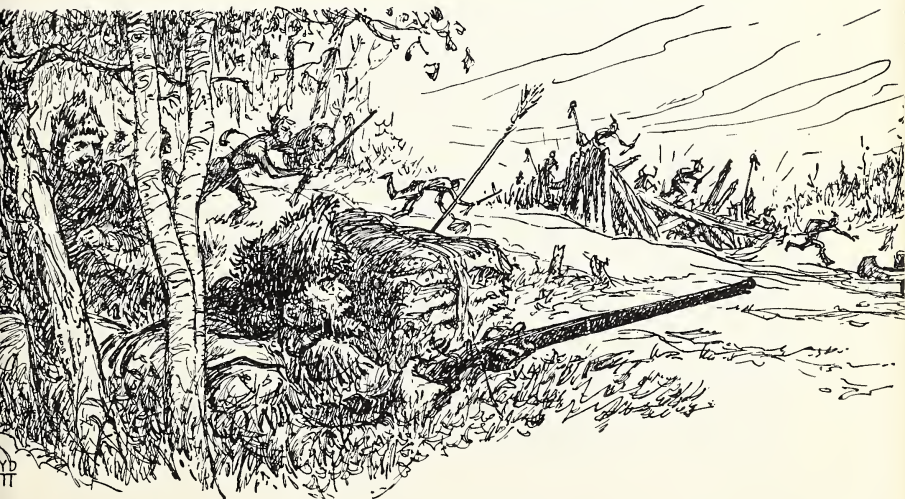
The Sioux and Cree were the largest tribes of that region and bitter enemies. They spent so much time fighting that they had little left for hunting and so did not bring in nearly as many furs as they might have done. The young fur-traders saw at once that the thing to do was to unite all these western tribes in a league against the Iroquois whom they all feared. They would then have more time for hunting and be able to bring in more furs. They spent the winter making peace between the Cree and Sioux. On July 24, 1660, the fur fleet set out, 500 warriors guarding 100 canoe-loads of furs. But the farther they went,



the greater grew their terror of the Iroquois until, presently, 40 canoes turned back. The other 60 advanced cautiously and all went well till they reached the Long Sault rapids on the lower Ottawa. Suddenly 16 Iroquois canoes shot round a bend, saw the fur fleet and fled.

They have a fort at the foot of the rapids, thought Radisson, and instantly made his plan. Leaving half his warriors with the furs, he raced across the portage with the other half. Sure enough the Iroquois had a small half-destroyed fort a little back from the river. Radisson's quick eye took in the scene: the fort, the canoes bobbing in the water. The canoes! Quickly he gave his order to seize the Iroquois canoes, and his Indians, hiding behind bundles of furs which they pushed ahead of them, crept towards them. The Iroquois saw the move too late. They must leave the fort or be trapped in it by the loss of their canoes. With a yell, they leaped for the canoes and, paddling wildly, fled down the river.

When Radisson and his men took possession of the broken



The Attack of Long Sault

fort they saw that it had been the scene of a battle between Canadians and Iroquois. Scalps hung from the palisade and charred bones lay round the torture fires. It was the place where, only eight days before, Dollard and his 16 companions had fought their heroic fight and saved Canada.

Quebec welcomed the explorers like world champions returning from a great sports contest. Canada had had no furs for two years and three ships lay empty in the St. Lawrence, hoping against hope to have a few skins to carry back to France. Imagine the excitement over the arrival of 60 canoe-loads, 200,000 livres' worth. As the skiff carrying the young men swept up to the landing, flags waved, bells pealed, and cannon thundered from Fort St. Louis. The Governor gave them an official welcome and presented them with handsome gifts. The citizens outdid themselves in entertaining the heroes who had led the way into the great West and restored the fur trade to Canada.

(c) *The Great Bay of the North*

Radisson and Groseilliers had won fame and fortune, but they were young and soon longed to be again upon the trail. They had explored the South-West and now wished to explore the North-West. They had heard from the Crees of the Great Bay of the North, guessed it to be Hudson Bay, and planned to go to it overland with the Crees who hunted there in summer. When they applied for their license to trade in furs, the new Governor said he would give them one only if they would give him half the furs they brought back. Traders were fined or imprisoned for trading without a license, but half their furs!—it was monstrous! The two friends decided to risk it without the license and, in the dark of an August night, they slipped out of Three Rivers and paddled away to join a band of Indians waiting for them up the river.



They had to fight their way up the Ottawa against ambush after ambush of Iroquois. They reached the west end of Lake Superior in October and the Indians hurried off to their homes. Radisson and Groseilliers built a little cabin which Radisson surrounded with a string tied with bells to warn them of the approach of the enemy. It was a rough shelter, built by two weary, half-starved men, but it was the first building erected by white men in the North-West.

The news that two Canadians had a trading post on Lake Superior spread quickly. Presently 400 Crees appeared and carried them off to spend the winter in their camp. When spring came the young explorers paddled down the Albany River with the Crees. It is not known whether or not they actually reached the Bay, but they hunted and traded so successfully that the next spring they descended the Ottawa with 360 canoe-loads of furs, the largest fur fleet ever to reach Canada. If the friends expected to be welcomed at Quebec, they were disappointed. The Governor fined them \$50,000 for trading without a license; seized \$70,000 of their furs, and threw Groseilliers into prison. The young men were furious. They escaped to Boston and so to England. This was the beginning of another exciting chapter in their adventures. We shall hear more of them.

Radisson and Groseilliers carried Canada's trans-continental trail and trade into the North-West; they also led the way in a new method of fur trading. Before this, the Indians had brought their furs down to the Canadians at Three Rivers, or to the English at Albany. Radisson and Groseilliers introduced the method of taking the goods *to* the Indians. This new way of trading helped the Canadians to make friends of the Indians, to





explore the west, and to win from the English, who remained on the coast, the race for the western fur trade.

### III

#### CANADA TAKES POSSESSION OF THE WEST

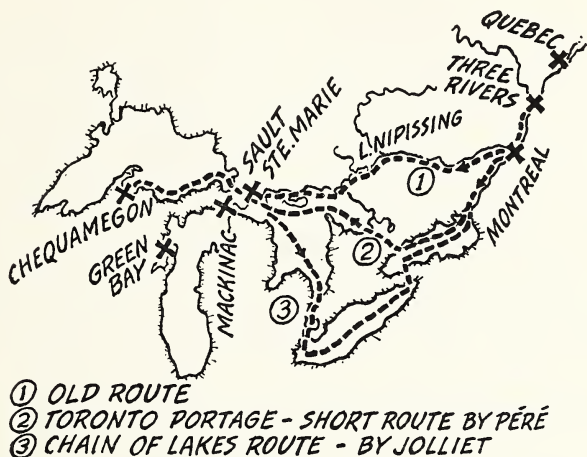
##### (a) *The Fathers Enter the Upper Country*

As soon as the priests knew that the displaced tribes were living round Lake Superior, they hurried off to rebuild their missions among them. More priests went out each year until all the tribes round the Upper Lakes had missions. With so much coming and going, the Fathers came to know Lake Superior and the northern parts of Lakes Huron and Michigan well. They were educated men, trained to study and make reports on what they saw. They published descriptions of the Upper Lake country in their Relations and began to prepare a map of it. Talon asked them to report all their discoveries to him and he became so enthusiastic about the "Upper Country" that he soon had all Canada excited about it.

Up to this time, Lakes Ontario and Erie had not been explored; but now Canadians began to paddle up from Montreal to Lake Ontario. When Talon heard from the priests of a copper-mine on the south shore of Lake Superior, he sent Jolliet and Péré to look for a short route to it.

Jolliet was a young surveyor who had graduated from the Seminary at Quebec. He was the first native-born Canadian explorer. Péré was a coureur. Instead of going up the Ottawa, Péré led the way up the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario, over the Toronto portage about which the Indians had told him, to Lake Huron, and so to Sault Ste. Marie. It was then too late in the year to search for the copper-mine and Jolliet started home. An Iroquois, whom he saved from being tortured by the Ottawas,

brought him back by Lakes Huron, St. Clair, Erie, and Ontario. Jolliet was the first white man to travel along the whole chain of



the Great Lakes. By their trip he and Péré opened two new routes to the West.

#### (b) *Ontario's First Tourists: De Casson and His Party*

By this time Montreal had a whole street of houses, St. Paul Street, along the river. The little settlement was the center of the Jesuits' seigneurie. They had granted farms on the island to men brave and strong enough to defend this western gate of Canada; and opened several missions along the north shore of Lake Ontario.

About this time a young priest came from France to join the Fathers at the Seminary at Montreal. His name was Dollier de Casson. He was tall, handsome, and extremely strong; it is said that he could carry two men seated on his two hands. The

Indians admired him tremendously. Dollier was of noble birth, clever, and had charming manners. He might have become a rich man in France, but he gave that up to become a priest and missionary to the Indians in Canada.

Dollier was chosen to open a mission among the Shawnees, a tribe living near the junction of the Ohio River and the Mississippi. While in Quebec buying supplies for his journey, Dollier met Robert de la Salle, a young man who had a seigneurie and fur trading post at Lachine. La Salle was preparing to explore the Ohio, so the two parties set out together. They coasted along the shore of Lake Ontario to Tinawatawa, an Indian village near the modern city of Hamilton. There whom should they meet but Jolliet on his way back to Canada by the chain of Great Lakes. When Jolliet told them of this new route, Dollier decided to take it and the two parties separated.

Dollier and his party portaged to the Grand River near



Meeting of Dollier, La Salle and Jolliet at Tinawatawa

Glenmorris, below the modern Galt, and paddled down to Lake Erie. At what is now Port Dover, they passed a delightful winter. Galinée, a young surveyor with the party, called this part of Ontario "an earthly paradise". He reported the weather mild, the woods full of game, nuts, and berries, and the water full of fish. They gathered 50 bushels of walnuts and chestnuts, a kind of wealth now lost to us by ruthless tree cutting.

In March, Dollier took possession of the country for the King of France and they left for Green Bay. But they lost a canoe and their baggage and decided to return to Montreal and start over again. They reached Montreal safely, but Dollier made no more journeys. He was appointed Superior of the Seminary at Montreal and spent the rest of his life there. Galinée wrote a report of their journey, and made a map of it for Talon.

(c) *The Gentlemen Adventurers Seize Hudson Bay*

These maps and the stories told by the missionaries and explorers made the Canadians still more keenly interested in the west. They began to see their little colony growing into a great empire. When Talon returned from France with the king's orders to take possession of the Great West for France, he found all Canada talking about Radisson and Groseilliers and the Hudson's Bay Company which they had helped the English to set up.

The talk said that when these two adventurers reached London, Prince Rupert, the king's cousin, had invited a number of rich London merchants to hear their story. Their tale of the 360 canoe loads of furs they had collected on the Bay excited the merchants who at once loaded two ships with trade goods and hurried them off to Hudson Bay. Radisson's ship was caught in a storm and had to turn back, but Groseilliers, whom the English called Mr. Gooseberry, piloted his safely to James Bay



where he built Fort Charles. He returned with the richest cargo of furs the London merchants had ever seen. With Prince Rupert at their head, the merchants organized the Hudson's Bay Company and King Charles II granted a charter to "The Gentlemen Adventurers trading into Hudson Bay". The next year, Radisson and Groseilliers sailed together to the Bay and there they were, trading and carrying off shiploads of Canadian furs to England, so the Quebecers said.

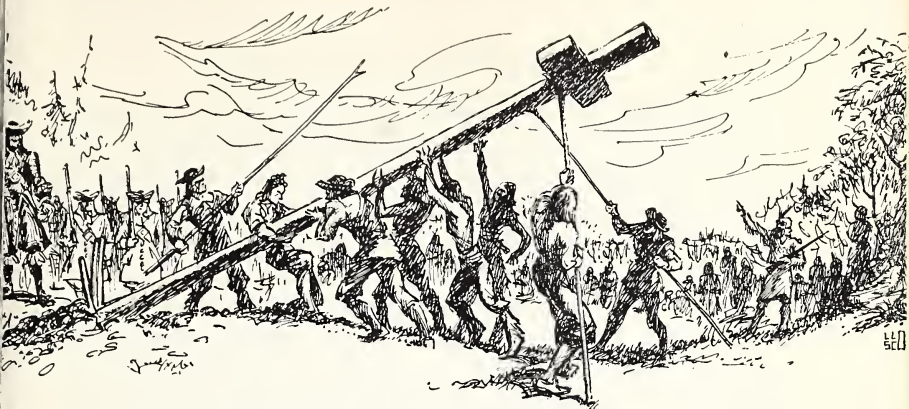
(d) *The "Taking Possession" Parties*

Canada now had the English both north and south of her. Since they had taken New York from the Dutch, they had pushed up the Hudson River to Albany and beyond. They might move south from their posts on Hudson Bay to meet the New Yorkers and cut Canada off from the West. It looked as if Canada might be the one to be shut in, so Talon moved quickly to carry out his plan for shutting in the English.



London Merchants Load Ships for Hudson Bay





The "Taking Possession" Ceremony

He sent St. Lusson to Sault Ste. Marie, Father Albanel to Hudson Bay, Jolliet and Father Marquette of Green Bay down the Mississippi, with orders to take possession of the whole west, north and south of America for the King of France.

At the Sault, Perrot, a coureur who was a favorite with the tribes, gathered the chiefs together for the ceremony. St. Lusson appeared in full military dress, the priests in their rich robes. A large cross was set up. Then St. Lusson said in a loud voice, "In the name of Louis, King of France, I take possession of all countries . . . bounded by the seas of the North and the West and . . . the South." A sod was cut and handed to St. Lusson who accepted it in the name of the King. The Canadians shouted and fired their guns. The Indians sat silent. They understood what was being done and they did not like it.

Father Albanel and his party had a difficult trip by way of the Saguenay, the Mistassini, and Rupert River to Fort Charles. On the Mistassini they ran 400 rapids, and portaged round 200 falls, often sinking to their waists in the muskeg. They found the fort empty. Albanel took possession of the country for France, urged the Indians to bring their furs to Quebec and the Canadians returned home.

Jolliet's party had an easier time. Father Marquette knew from his Indians how to reach the Mississippi and they paddled south on it, smoking the peace pipe with tribes here and there. At the mouth of the Arkansas, they were warned that the Spaniards would kill them if they went farther. Jolliet was sure now that the river flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, not into the Gulf of California as they had hoped, so they returned.

When Jolliet reached Quebec, he found that both Governor Courcelles and Talon had gone home to France. Talon had found this country with a population of only 2,500, with few farms, its fur trade dead, its very life threatened by the Iroquois. He left it a flourishing colony of over 8,000, with farms and seigneuries spreading along the rivers, growing its own food, and making its own clothing. The Iroquois were quiet, the fur fleet again coming down the Ottawa. Champlain is called the "Father of Canada", and it may truly be said of Talon that he played the part of a good and clever "Mother" to our country.

#### IV

##### FRONTENAC: THE GREAT ONONTIO

Canada was not left long without a great man to lead her. In the same year that Talon went home, the king sent out Count Frontenac as Governor. Frontenac had joined the army at 15 and become a famous soldier. He was proud and had a hot temper—when people opposed him, his wrath was terrible—yet he turned out to be a genius at getting on with the Indians. He was extravagant and had long since run through all his money. He said quite openly that he had come to Canada to make a fortune.

Soon after his arrival Frontenac met Robert La Salle who had returned from exploring the Ohio River with a new plan:

Canada had taken possession of the North-West; he, La Salle, would found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi and take possession of the South-West. La Salle needed money to found his colony, Frontenac needed it for himself; but both were Frenchmen with proud dreams of building Canada into a great French Empire. They became friends at once. As Governor, Frontenac was not supposed to trade in furs, but to get money he seems to have agreed to back La Salle and to share his profits.

La Salle suggested to Frontenac that they should build a trading post at the head of the St. Lawrence where Kingston now stands. The Indians slipped across the river there to trade with the English who paid more for furs than the Canadians. A fort there would stop this smuggling, and be a protection



Count Frontenac

against the Iroquois. The Montreal traders objected. They said that the new post would spoil their trade, but Frontenac approved of the plan. He granted La Salle a seigneurie and sent him to build the fort and to invite the Iroquois to a Council there with the new Governor.

(a) *Fort Frontenac and the Frontenac Traders*

Frontenac then gathered all the men he could muster, dressed them in their gayest uniforms, and with as many banners and glittering weapons as they could carry, took them up to the new post in 120 canoes and two boats painted scarlet and gold. With this dazzling force at his back, Frontenac faced the Iroquois chiefs whom La Salle had assembled. The "Great Onontio", as the Indians called Frontenac, welcomed his guests politely and gave them presents: tobacco and guns to the men, prunes and raisins to the women and children. He promised to be a kind father to them as long as they were obedient children to him, but he warned them that if they attacked the western Indians, he would punish them severely. He explained that he was building Fort Frontenac so that they could get their supplies near home. As he talked his men built the fort. The Iroquois listened, admired, promised to be good, went quietly home and *were* good.

Frontenac was middle-aged, but he entered into life in Canada with the spirit and vigour of a young man. While La Salle explored, Frontenac gathered round him a group of the most skilful coureurs in Canada. They ranged the woods, inviting the tribes to bring their furs to Fort Frontenac. The most interesting of Frontenac's traders was Daniel du Luth. He was a coureur of the finest type, a soldier and a gentleman, one who all his life was equally at home in the wigwam of an Indian or the court of a king. With his brother-in-law, his

uncle and his cousin, "Tonti of the Iron Hand", he seems to have formed a small family fur company.

Du Luth built a trading post at Fort William and made peace among the Cree, Assiniboiné and Sioux, promising rewards to all, if they would hunt instead of fight. He was a just and wise man and the Indians soon learned to trust him. He spent much of his life in the Lake Superior country, exploring it and keeping the Indians there loyal to Canada.

"He was one of the bravest officers the king has ever had in this colony," said Charlevoix, a writer of those days.

Meantime, Bishop Laval had returned from France and the king had sent out a new intendant, Duchesneau (Do shes nō). Frontenac was soon quarreling bitterly with both of them. Duchesneau formed a group of fur traders at Montreal and competed with Frontenac and his group at Fort Frontenac. They were both doing wrong, but they both wrote the king long, angry letters, each complaining of the evil deeds of the other. At last King Louis could endure it no longer and recalled them both.

Frontenac had done wrong in Canada, but he had also done much that was good. By building Fort Frontenac and planning Fort Niagara, he brought the two new trade routes, the Toronto portage, and the chain of Great Lakes into use. By supporting Du Luth and La Salle, he moved farther into the west and strengthened Canada's hold on the western fur trade. Above all, Frontenac's great influence over the Iroquois kept Canada at peace.

## V

### LA SALLE MAKES HIS DREAM COME TRUE

#### (a) *Fort Brokenheart*

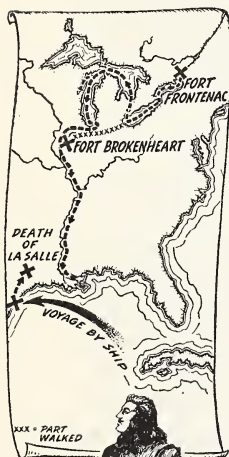
The Montreal traders told the king that La Salle was mad, but King Louis approved of his plan to found a colony



at the mouth of the Mississippi. As a first step on the way La Salle and Tonti, who had become his assistant, built a post at Niagara and a ship, the Griffin, above the falls. They loaded the Griffin with goods and sailed her up to Green Bay where they traded with the Illinois Indians for furs. La Salle then sent the Griffin back to Niagara to exchange the furs for money to build his colony. Meantime he and Tonti started down the Illinois River. Their great adventure had begun.

They were a long weary way from the end of it. Not content with trying to ruin La Salle at home, the Montreal traders kept men on his trail with orders to stop him at any cost. On this trip he was shot at, nearly burned alive, and escaped poisoning only by taking an antidote. Near the modern Peoria six of his men deserted him and he received word that the Griffin had been lost. Small wonder that La Salle called the fort he built there Fort Brokenheart.

Still he never thought of giving in; instead he determined to walk back to Fort Frontenac to get the supplies he needed. He left Tonti in charge of Brokenheart, and with his Indian hunter and five Canadians started back across country to Fort Frontenac. They passed through the country of the Miamis in the spring break-up and had to carry their canoes most of the way to Lake Erie; but they made the journey of about 1,000 miles in 65 days. They had just arrived when two voyageurs appeared with a letter from Tonti saying that his men had destroyed Brokenheart and deserted with all the goods they could carry. La Salle had hardly finished reading the letter when two habitants rushed in to warn him



La Salle

that the deserters were approaching to kill him. La Salle at once called up nine loyal men and dashed out to meet the traitors whom they ambushed, killing some and capturing the others.

(b) *Louisiana*

As soon as he had placed his prisoners in safe keeping, La Salle hurried back to the Illinois to rescue Tonti. He searched the Illinois river up and down and finally found him at Green Bay. By February the two friends were ready again and set off down the Mississippi. They paddled south into warm spring weather and reached the mouth of the great river in April. Setting up a pillar with the Arms of France, they took possession of the country which they named Louisiana in honor of King Louis.

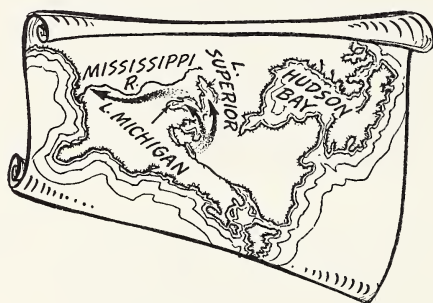
La Salle then returned to France where he was praised for his discovery, and given four ships and 180 settlers for his colony. But when they returned, they missed the mouth of the Mississippi and landed 400 miles farther west. La Salle left his colonists and set out with a small party to find his river. With him went Duhaut (Du ô), an evil man who hated the leader and who, one evening, shot him from ambush.

So died Robert La Salle, one of the greatest of Canadian explorers. He was only 45 when the assassin struck him down; but he had dared adventures and surmounted difficulties beyond the strength of most men. He had dreamed great dreams and by his courage and perseverance had achieved all but the last of them.

. . . . .

So, under Talon and Frontenac, Canadians explored, and Canada took possession of the great middle west of North

America. Unfortunately she had no settlers to send into it and her scattered traders in their posts had only a weak grip upon it. Again the question was whether Canada could hold it.





## Chapter Nine

# THE FIGHT FOR CANADA

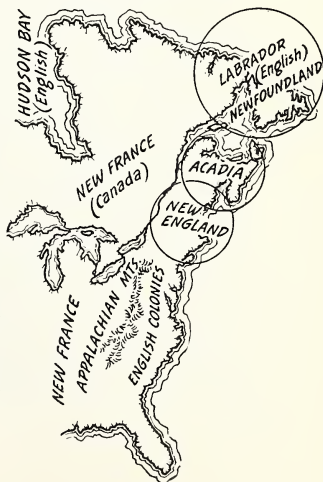
1682—1763

## I

### THE SITUATION

ALL this time the English Colonies had been growing by leaps and bounds. It was clear now that their strip of land would soon be too narrow for them, and that they would burst through the mountains into the empty lands of New France. When that happened there was bound to be a fight for the Great West.

When that fight came it was part of a larger one that the mother countries, France and England, were fighting. The mother countries fought each other, on and off, for over 70 years; they fought in Europe, in India, and in America. In America the daughter countries, New France and New England, interfered with each other wherever they met. In the east, Acadia quarreled with New England over their boundary line. In the west the Canadian fur traders competed with the English



traders from Albany and Hudson Bay. In the center, Canada was building forts to shut the English colonies into the narrow strip between the mountains and the sea. So the daughters fought too. When the mother countries were fighting, the daughters fought real wars; when the mothers were at peace, the daughters made raids on one another.

## II

### THE RAIDERS

1682—1713

#### (a) *The Massacre of Lachine*

La Barre, the Governor who followed Frontenac, was a "greedy old man". He joined the Montreal Traders and seized La Salle's seigneurie and furs at Fort Frontenac. Worse still he made peace with the Iroquois though they declared that they would fight Canada's new allies, the Illinois Indians, to the death. This was a most dishonorable thing to do and all the western tribes turned against Canada. They were on the point of turning the whole western fur trade over to the English when La Barre was recalled to France in disgrace.

Denonville, the new Governor, sent Du Luth to build a fort at Detroit to cut the Iroquois trail to the western tribes. Then he ordered Tonti and Du Luth to bring their Indians to join him in an attack on the Senecas who were destroying the Illinois as they had threatened. The Senecas attacked Denonville's army from ambush and then fled, leaving their town empty. The Canadians destroyed it, but that was not of much use as "it left the wasps to sting". Later the Iroquois sent messengers to make peace with the Canadians.

On the way the messengers met with a wily old Huron chief called "The Rat". He hated the Iroquois with a bitter



hatred and did not want the Canadians to make peace with them. He attacked the Iroquois messengers and then told them that Denonville had ordered him to do so. This enraged the Six Nations. They rose and fell upon Canada like a thunderbolt. They attacked the village of Lachine and massacred many of its people. Then in small bands they raged through the country in all directions.

"Send us Frontenac," cried the habitants. "Send us Frontenac. Only he can save us." So King Louis sent Frontenac back to Canada.

### (b) *The Commandos*

The Great Onontio found Canada in wild alarm. France and England were now at war and the Six Nations joined the English. Luckily Du Luth had lately met a band of Iroquois on the Ottawa and killed or captured them all. This defeat held the savages off while Frontenac organized commando parties in Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec to attack New York, New Hampshire and Maine.

The Montreal party of 310 coureurs and Indians marched against Albany under the Le Moyne brothers.<sup>1</sup> Each man wore a blanket coat with a hood, mittens, buckskin trousers and moccasins, and had a knife, hatchet and bullet pouch hanging from his belt. Each carried a pack of provisions in a blanket on his back, his gun on his shoulder, and his pipe in a leather case hung round his neck. They marched on the short rounded snow-shoes used in the forest. Through the snowy woods and up the frozen Richelieu River they tramped. A squaw told them that the village of Schenectady was unguarded, so they

<sup>1</sup> The ten Le Moyne brothers were the sons of Charles Le Moyne of Dieppe who came to Canada at 15 and was granted the seignury of Longueuil (Long gee) opposite Montreal. He led the Montreal Blue Coats in De Tracy's army and afterwards gained great influence over the Iroquois. We shall hear more of his sons who played brave parts in the life of Canada in those days.

turned aside to it. They found the people asleep, the gates open; a snowman with a pipe in his mouth stood in one of them. Silently they surrounded the houses and then, with a wild warwhoop, attacked the doors with their hatchets. Many of the defenceless people were killed; those who escaped were marched back to Montreal as captives. The other two comandos made equally brutal raids.



(c) *Sir William Phipps of Boston*

These cruel attacks roused the English colonists to fury and they determined to settle with Canada once and for all. A large fleet gathered in Boston harbor to sail against Port Royal and Quebec. Sir William Phipps was chosen to lead it.

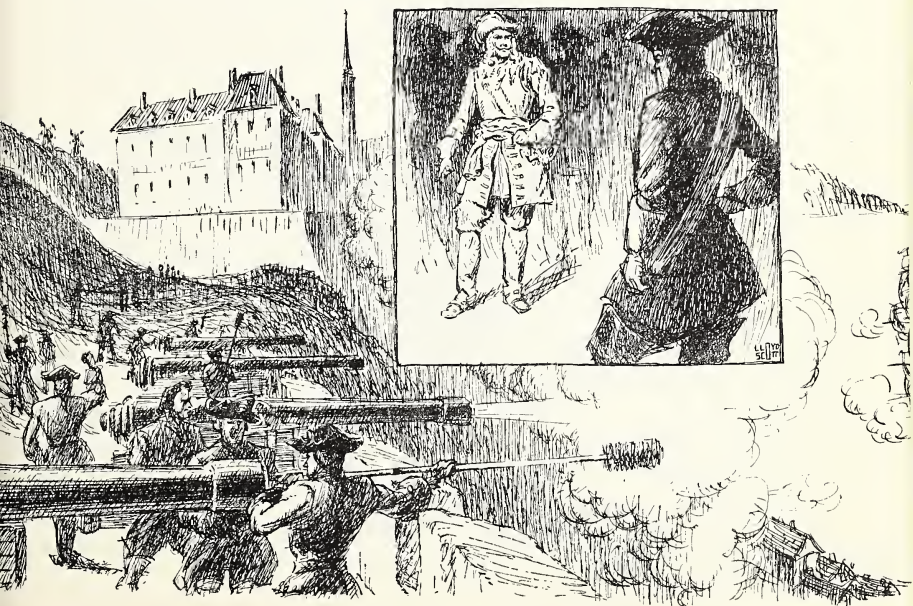
Phipps had had an interesting life. He was one of 26 children in a poor family. While working as a ship's carpenter, he heard of a Spanish treasure ship sunk in West Indian waters with \$1,000,000 in gold on board, and he determined to search for it. He sailed first to England where he told his story to King Charles and Prince Rupert. These two gallants were always ready for any adventure. They gave him a ship and sent him off to the West Indies. Surprisingly enough, Phipps located the wreck and raised the treasure. His share made him a rich man and King Charles made him a knight.

Sir William captured Port Royal, but it was the middle of October before he reached Quebec. He sent a messenger ashore to demand the surrender of the fort. The messenger was led blind-

fold through the town, and when the bandage was removed found himself facing the fiery old Governor. He handed him Phipps' letter and demanded an answer within an hour.

"I shall not keep you waiting so long, sir," said Frontenac, "I will answer your general with the mouths of my cannon. Let him do his best! I shall do mine!"

Phipps sent a landing party to attack the town on the St. Charles River side, but the Le Moyne brothers commanded the sharp shooters there and quickly drove back the invaders. Phipps' guns would not shoot high enough to hit the fort above Cape Diamond, while it was easy for the cannon of Quebec to shoot down upon the English fleet. The fighting continued for a few days, and then one morning Quebec awoke to see the English ships sailing away. Phipps dared wait no longer. Ice was beginning to form in the St. Lawrence, ice that would shut



Frontenac's Answer

him in for the winter. He made good his escape while he could.

(d) *Le Moyne d'Iberville Raids Newfoundland*

Frontenac then sent Le Moyne d'Iberville (dee ber vee), the most famous of the brothers, to raid Newfoundland.

The settlers there had had another blow. Oliver Cromwell had died and Charles II had become King of England. To please his cousin, King Louis of France, Charles gave French fishermen the right to fish on the coast of Newfoundland from Cape Race to Cape Ray. The Newfoundlanders were amazed one day to see a great French ship sail up Placentia Bay. Placentia, "the pleasant place", is one of the finest locations in Newfoundland. It has a safe harbor, waters full of fish and lobsters, and south-facing beaches for drying. The French were given a governor to manage the settlement and soldiers to protect it, and they began promptly to make raids on the English settlers. The islanders fought back; the raiding had been going on for years.



d'Iberville's Raid.



When d'Iberville and his men landed at Placentia, they picked up the Governor and 90 more men, crossed to Ferryland and headed for St. John's. They were nearly defeated by a band of desperate fishermen who fought them furiously, 88 to 400, but d'Iberville reached St. John's, captured it, and swept up the coast with fire and sword. To Portugal Cove, round to Carbonear, across to Heart's Content, by boat to Bay Bulls Arm, and so back to Placentia, they raced. The snow was so deep in places that there were only 12 of them strong enough to break a trail. Their snowshoes caught on roots and threw them headlong. At this they shouted with laughter, hauled each other out, and marched on.

The Newfoundlanders had neither forts nor soldiers, few weapons and fewer leaders. Most of them fled as d'Iberville advanced, plundering and burning all before him. It is a comfort to read that many of the people escaped to the woods or to secret coves and that after the French were gone they returned and doggedly rebuilt their homes.

### (c) *A Polite Conquest*

Meantime the Acadians also had returned from the woods where they had fled to escape Phipps and put Port Royal partly to rights. It was a gay place in those days. Bold privateers swarmed out of the harbor to waylay English ships and return with chests of gold. The widow Freneuse, a beautiful spy, kept the place lively with plots. Lovely Marie Maisonat, the daughter of a privateer, led the young people in a merry round of hunts, hikes, dinners and dances.

In revenge for the raids of the Acadian privateers, Colonel Church stormed up the coast from New York. Church was a famous bush-fighter, so fat that his men had to heave him over the logs when they travelled through the woods. He came



with two ships and 600 men, and first he burnt St. Castin's post. He drove at Port Royal, and then against Grand Pré where he burned the church and cut the dikes to let the sea in upon the crops. In return Subercase, the new governor of Port Royal, a brave man and a fine soldier, urged on the privateers, and St. Castin kept his Abenakis busy raiding the English settlements.

At last the New Englanders had had enough of this. For the last time they gathered an army to take Acadia and this time they meant to keep it. They decided to take Canada also while they were about it, and sent Colonel Nicholson to England to beg Queen Anne to aid them in this enterprise. Nicholson took with him five handsome, dignified Mohawk chiefs who became the sensation of the hour in London. The Queen promised to send a fleet with a large force of soldiers, and Nicholson returned with the good news. By autumn, 1710, fleet and soldiers were ready in Boston harbor. A grand dinner was



Colonel Church's Bush-fighters

given Nicholson in the Dragon tavern and the expedition sailed for Port Royal.

Subercase, who had only 300 soldiers in a fort crowded with women and children, welcomed the enemy with hot fire from his guns. But when Nicholson began to shell the town, Subercase surrendered to save the helpless people. The French troops were allowed to march out with flags flying and drums beating. The English troops marched in, ran up their flag, renamed the place Annapolis Royal in honor of Queen Anne, and entertained the French ladies to breakfast. With the fort, the British took over all Acadia, and this time Britain kept what she had so politely taken; Acadia became Nova Scotia for good.

All this time Quebec had been expecting the British fleet to appear at any moment. Canada had few troops but she prepared to fight to the death. While the men strengthened the defences, the women prayed, vowing if Canada were saved, "to wear neither ribbons nor lace for a year". After the capture of Acadia, Nicholson's fleet did sail up the St. Lawrence, but it was wrecked. The boats sent to watch for it returned to Quebec with the joyful news and loaded to the gunwales with rich clothing, saddles, silver hilted swords, and other treasures. Canada had been saved by a miracle, said Mother Juchereau.

When the mother countries made peace in the Treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, France gave up to England all her claims to Acadia, Newfoundland and Hudson Bay. This left French Canada's entrance to the St. Lawrence with English Nova Scotia on one side and English Newfoundland on the other. So England allowed France to keep Cape Breton and Isle St. Jean to guard Canada's doorway. She made the French fishermen give up Placentia, but she gave them the right to fish and dry from "Cape Bonavista round by the north to Cape Riche". This

gift took the thorn from one side of Newfoundland only to press it into the other.

After the treaty France and England did not fight again for 30 years. New France and New England kept the peace too, but they both knew that sooner or later they would have to fight it out for possession of the Great West, and they used the time to prepare for the final contest.

### III

#### THE COMBATANTS: CANADA

##### (a) *Montreal was Rough and Tough*

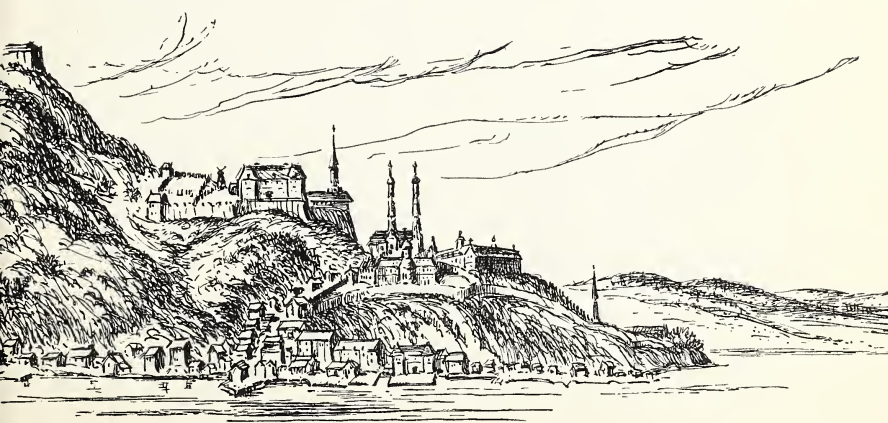
For a time after Talon left, Canada slipped back. Many seigneurs were too proud to work their lands; they starved on their seigneuries, or became coureurs des bois. Young habitants, too, found fur trading more exciting than farming and they also escaped to the woods where they lived like savages. Montreal, now the center of the fur trade, was the frontier town of those days and boldly rough and tough. Many traders traded without a license though if caught, they were now put to death for doing so. De Casson tells of one young outlaw who broke prison a dozen times. Caught again, he watched his six guards play cards. Suddenly he jumped for the stacked guns, held up his guards, falling back step by step until he felt himself. Then, calling a gay "good-bye" he disappeared.

The officials of those early days complained bitterly that Canada was kept poor by the idleness, extravagance, and drunkenness of her people. They did not understand that the many laws and rules to which people in France were used, irritated Canadians who "breathe from their birth the air of liberty". Our vast, free land called to them to escape, to live as they pleased; it is not surprising that those who did escape

went too far at first, just as did many in modern times on the "wild west" frontier.

(b) *Quebec Was Dignified*

Unlike Montreal, Quebec was dignified, as became the capital of the country. By the 1730's Quebec, seen from the river, was a handsome place, with the Governor's castle, and other fine stone buildings on the heights. But the streets were unpaved and obstructed with heaps of garbage. The Lower Town was a fire trap of wooden houses. Owners were required to run with axe, saw and bucket at every fire alarm; but there were many fires and more than once the place was almost burned to the ground. August, September, and October were the busy months. Then the ships arrived from France; the French merchants set out their goods in booths on the shore; and people came to shop. When the nights grew frosty the ships sailed away. Fathers of families filled their cellars with vegetables and frozen meat, fowl, game, fish and eels. Most of the shops closed and the long season of leisure and amusement began. Society was gay and pleasant. The officials entertained one



Quebec in Early 18th Century



another at dinners; science and the fine arts were discussed; and the young folk danced just as they do today.<sup>2</sup>

(c) *The People Were Happy*

But the great majority of our French Canadian forefathers were neither wild young coureurs nor dignified society people. They were not city folk at all, but decent, sober farmers, more often criticized for heavy smoking than for drinking. Each settlement was a compact little social group. The seigneur was usually little better off than the habitant; the curé was the clever boy of the neighborhood, trained at the seminary; the captain of militia was the wisest and most popular of the habitants. The habitants themselves were honest, though, it is said, careless farmers. Then as now they were noted for their gaiety and good manners.

"The habitants bow to one another with as good an air as people of higher rank," writes Lieutenant Marr. "They show no awkwardness but speak and act with great freedom and ease."

The Canadians were a happy people but life in Canada was still not easy. Fur trading was the chief business of the country. It took so many of the men that it was difficult to get labor to clear land or work in other industries. Crops, and markets for them, were both uncertain. In 1734 the wheat was spoiled by smut; in 1737, by rust and caterpillars. In 1736, both wheat and hay crops were so poor that one twelfth of the stock died. In such years the intendant had to give out rations. Slowly things improved. In 1735, the first road was built, between Quebec and Montreal. It opened up good hay meadows so that cattle raising increased. There were iron works at Three Rivers and shipbuilding yards at

<sup>2</sup> "The Shadow of the Rock" by Willa Cather is a good story about a young boy and girl which gives an excellent description of life in Quebec in those days.



Quebec. In good years wheat, flour, and timber were exported to Cape Breton and the French West Indies.

(d) *Canada's Advantages and Disadvantages*

Very slowly the population of Canada climbed to 62,000. The king allowed few new settlers to come in. Canadians had large families, but tuberculosis was common, and as there was no vaccination, a good many died of smallpox. On the whole, though, Canadians were a strong, healthy people. When the war came, Canada was small in population and still poor, but she had three advantages: her men were fine woodsmen and keen fighters with few equals in forest war; they were trained to obey their leaders; and they were united, one people under one government.

(e) *The English Colonies were Independent*

The English Colonies were still growing rapidly. The companies and ship-owners advertised in Britain<sup>3</sup> and in Europe, telling of the riches of America and the fine chances of making a fortune there. There were many eager to go. Thousands who could not pay the fare across the Atlantic sold themselves as "bound servants" to work for people already in the colonies. They were bound to work for their masters for from three to ten years, after which they were free to take up land and make homes for themselves. The tobacco and cotton planters of the South brought in also many negro slaves, but they remained slaves for life. Altogether, by the end of the 30 years of raiding, the English colonies had a population of over 1,000,000.

Most of the colonists were farmers; but there were also many little towns. The British colonists had no government ships bringing them supplies from England. The townspeople had to buy their food from the farmers who then had money

<sup>3</sup> In 1707 England and Scotland united under the name Great Britain.



A Colonial Port

to buy tools, tea and sugar from the townspeople. They set up small factories to make things for the farmers and built ships to bring in goods from foreign lands. The farmer's land was his own. As he saw that he could sell more produce he cleared more land and grew more. If he cropped out one piece of land, he could always move to a new piece. Soon the northern colonies were exporting grain, pork, lumber and fish; the southern colonies tobacco and rice, to Europe and the West Indies. The ships brought back manufactured goods from Europe, and sugar and molasses from the West Indies. The towns grew; Boston and

New York became busy ports. Trade flourished and the people prospered.

These British colonists were the first poor people in the world to own their own land. In other countries in those days, the poor worked for the lords or the rich. Owning their own land made the colonists feel independent and ambitious. By this time British people were living in the democratic way, so each settlement had its council meeting to make rules for the community, and each colony had a legislature to make its laws. Britain sent a governor to be the head of the colony, but the settlers often disagreed with him.

It was with these busy, prosperous, independent people that Canada was to fight for the Great West she had explored. The British colonists had great advantages. They were many and well-to-do. They lived near the sea where the British fleet could protect them and bring them help. But they had disadvantages too. They were brave and fought when they had to, but they did not like fighting. They preferred to stay at home, work hard, and make money. Also they were just learning how to live in a democratic way. They had learned to discuss their affairs, but they had not yet learned to decide to do something and then co-operate in doing it. They argued and quarreled a great deal in their meetings. The different colonies quarreled with one another. They were not used to working together and to obeying one leader. A small united nation is stronger than a large dis-united one; it looked as though Canada had a chance to win.

## IV

### PREPARATIONS FOR THE FIGHT

#### (a) *Canada Prepares*

During the years of raiding, Canada had worked away at building a chain of forts from Quebec to the mouth of the Miss-

issippi to shut the English in. Le Moyne d'Iberville had finished La Salle's work and founded the colony of Louisiana. His brother, Bienville, started New Orleans. From there, Canadian traders built post after post north to meet their brothers building



south. It is interesting to note that all this central part of the United States was opened up by Canadians.

At the same time La Vérendrye and his sons were building trading posts in the North-West to shut in the British on Hudson



Bay. Pierre La Vérendrye, the grandson of Governor Boucher of Three Rivers, spent his boyhood listening to the fur traders' tales of the Great West. He made up his mind then to become an explorer, but he was a man with four grown-up sons before he was able to begin. Then, at his post on Lake Nipigon, he heard from an old Indian Chief of a river that flowed across the prairies to the sea and he and his sons set out to find it. They reached the Saskatchewan and La Vérendrye was preparing to make a dash up the river to the mountains when he died. His sons explored the Missouri to within sight of the Rockies. The Vérendryes built forts behind the Hudson's Bay Company, cutting them off from the Western tribes. For years the Canadians got the best of the North-West furs and Canada's fur trade boomed.

As war drew near, Canada built also a new outer line of forts: Duquesne (Du cane), Crown Point, and Beauséjour (Bow za jour), to defend the Ohio country, and seal off Nova Scotia. The key fort of both lines of defence was Louisburg in Cape Breton. France began to build it in 1714 and worked at it for 25 years. It was built of stone, cost 30 million livres, and was the strongest fort in America. Canada's defences were carefully planned and well placed; their fatal disadvantage was that very few of them had any settlements to back them.

### (b) *The Curtain Raiser*

By this time the 30 years of peace were over and the last round of the long fight for North America was near. Britain and France began fighting a little war in 1744, and their daughters went raiding again. The only big fight was for Louisburg.

The New Englanders sent an army to take the great French fort. It seemed a foolish adventure for most of their men were farmers and their leader, Sir William Pepperell, was a merchant.



But the British fleet kept guard outside the harbor, and the New Englanders boldly besieged the fort. Sinking to their waists in mud and water, they dragged guns from the ships to shell the town. They set fire to the stores of tar and thick black smoke choked the French gunners. The British seized a French battery and turned it against the fort. For seven weeks they pounded it; then Louisburg surrendered. When peace was made, Britain gave Louisburg back to France. Imagine how angry that made the New Englanders.

(c) *Britain Builds Halifax*

To quiet them Britain promised to build a fort in Nova Scotia to protect them. The British Government offered free land to soldiers and soon had 2,000 settlers ready to sail. They reached Chebucto Harbor in July, 1749. It was a good location. A steep, round hill easy to fortify stood back from the water, while in front lay one of the largest and best protected harbors in the world.



The Founding of Halifax

Governor Cornwallis had everything planned. The men were divided into small parties, each with a leader, to attack the trees. The women cooked, cleaned and mended. The boys and girls herded the stock and ran errands. Storehouses, a wharf, and a sawmill were built first. When the engineer had laid out the town in streets, families drew lots for their land and began work on their homes. By the middle of October the palisades, blockhouses, and 350 houses had been completed. The remaining families lived on the ships through the first winter. Governor Cornwallis chose six men to form a Council for Nova Scotia; they had power to make laws and try criminals. Policemen were appointed, and by the second summer St. Paul's Church was ready for use. They named the town Halifax. In four years it had a strong fort and 4,000 people, while over 1500 German colonists had been settled down the coast at Lunenburg.

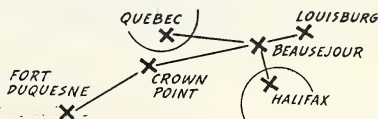
## V

### THE LAST ROUND OF THE LONG WAR (The Seven Years' War, 1756-1763)

#### (a) *The Expulsion of The Acadians*

The last round of the long war began at Fort Duquesne, now Pittsburg, on the Ohio River. The merchants of Virginia formed a company to sell land to the settlers west of the mountains, and George Washington was sent to warn the Canadians to leave that country. They refused. Britain then sent General Braddock with a large force of trained soldiers to drive the Canadians out. The British troops were not used to fighting in the bush; the Canadians ambushed them and defeated them with heavy loss. General Braddock himself was killed.

At the other end of the battle line Governor Lawrence and his



Council in Halifax held Nova Scotia against the French in Louisburg and Beauséjour; and the story of the Acadians was rising to its tragic climax. Through the years of peace these quiet farmers had become the "neutral French", wishing only to be friends with both sides. They had prospered greatly, increasing their numbers to some 9,000. Earlier governors had tried to persuade them to take the oath of allegiance to the king and become British subjects. They had not done so, probably because they were Roman Catholics and feared that, if they became British, they would not be allowed to practise their religion.

Now that war had begun Governor Lawrence felt sure the Acadians were helping the Canadians, so he wrote to the Board of Trade in London saying that he thought the neutrals must either take the oath or leave their lands. The Board disapproved of expelling the farmers, and Lawrence promised not to do so without permission. Then Colonel Monckton captured Beausé-



Expulsion of the Acadians

jour and found 300 Acadians in the fort. The French commander admitted that he had forced them to work for him, but Lawrence and the Council decided that they would act first and ask permission afterwards. They told the Acadians that they must either take the oath or leave their lands. The Acadians, hoping still "to get away with it" as they had done before, refused to take the oath, and Lawrence expelled them.

At Annapolis, Grand Pré, Windsor and Beaubassin, some 6,000 were rounded up and hurried upon ships. In the confusion husbands and wives were separated, children lost; some of them never did find each other again. They were carried away and scattered far and wide among the British colonies. So that they should not return, their cattle were seized, their buildings and crops burned, their happy homes left desolate.

It was the same kind of cruel deed as the Nazi expulsions of millions of people in World War II. It seems clear that the British Government did not intend to expel the Acadians but that Governor Lawrence felt it necessary to do so for the safety of the Province. At the time it was just one small incident in a great war; not even the French seemed shocked by it. Lawrence was not reproved for his broken promise, but he has since been much criticized for his cruelty. It is pleasant to know that as soon as the war was over, the Acadians began to come home. They were given new farms and today their descendants make up 20 per cent of the population of the three Maritime Provinces.

(b) *Canada Wins the Battle But—*

The war went on four years longer. France was not able to send a large army to help Canada, but she did send her a great leader, the Marquis de Montcalm. Montcalm had been a soldier from boyhood, had won honor in two wars, and had married Talon's grand-niece. He was devoted to his wife and children to whom he wrote many affectionate letters from



Canada. He was made Commander-in-Chief in 1756 and brought with him his friend, de Levis, as second-in-command, and a small army of French regular soldiers. Montcalm was hindered at every turn by a jealous Governor and a dishonest intendant, but he was a brilliant general and for the first three years Canada won most of the battles. But even Montcalm could not do the impossible.

In spite of her long preparations and many victories, Canada was now in growing danger from within and without. The British fleet kept France from sending her supplies and her own were running low. Men had to leave farm and forest to fight. Year after year the crops failed; the fur trade grew less. Worse still, Intendant Bigot (Bee go), an outright rascal, filled his pockets and allowed his friends to fill theirs, by charging enormous prices for the wheat which he had monopolized. He and his friends grew rich and rioted at gay parties, while most Canadians had scarcely enough to eat.

Then Britain, too, found a great leader. When the famous William Pitt became Prime Minister of England, he determined to end the war in America quickly and sent a large fleet and army to do it. In 1758, General Amherst took Louisburg and the British made plans to finish the job in 1759. One army marched against Niagara; General Amherst led another against Montreal; while young James Wolfe led the fleet and army from Louisburg to take Quebec.

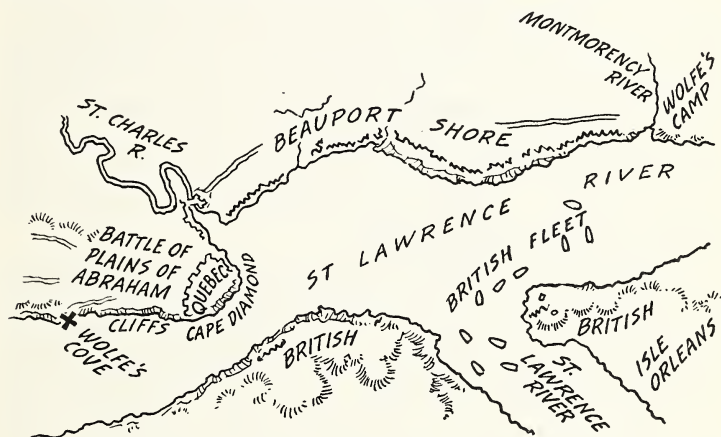
### (c) *On the Plains of Abraham*

As the net drew ever tighter round Canada, Montcalm made his plans. He left strong forces at Niagara and Montreal, and prepared to make the last stand at Quebec. Every able-bodied man was called, and every Canadian answered the call to defend his country.

It seemed unlikely that the British would attack Quebec



itself for Cape Diamond, towering above the river, bristled with guns, and the walls above it were defended by 2,000 men. High cliffs stood along the north shore westward for miles without a break, except for a ravine which cut through them at Cap Rouge. This was guarded by heavy guns. The danger point was the low-lying Beauport shore. This part Montcalm protected with earthworks, and there he placed his army.



The British fleet with 9,000 soldiers reached Quebec at the end of June and landed on the Island of Orleans. As soon as he saw Quebec, Wolfe knew that his only chance of taking it was first to defeat the Canadian army, and that to do this he must land on the north shore. He attacked the French and Canadians on the Montmorency, but the attack failed. For 11 weeks the defenders guarded the shore from the Montmorency to Cap Rouge so well that not a Britisher could get a foothold upon it. Autumn and ice threatened. Wolfe fell ill from worry.

At last he called his officers and together they made a desperate plan. Someone had discovered that a narrow path led

up the face of the cliff from a little bay which has ever since been called Wolfe's Cove. A single sentry guarded the top of this path. Part of the fleet was already up-stream from Quebec. The British plan was to have the lower fleet pretend to attack the Beauport shore, while Wolfe and the soldiers from the upper fleet made an attempt to land at the cove.

The night of September 12, 1759, was moonless. As the darkness deepened, a group of small boats drifted quietly down to Wolfe's Cove. Twice they were challenged by Canadian sentries on shore and twice a Scottish officer answered in perfect French. The Canadians were expecting supply boats from Montreal and thought no more of it. Silently the boats drew into the cove, silently the men landed, silently they climbed the path and overcame the sentry. At dawn 4,500 British soldiers formed their ranks on the Plains of Abraham.

Montcalm saw their red coats in the early morning light as he rode towards the St. Charles to prepare his army for the expected attack on Beauport. Hurrying back, he poured his men out of the city. They marched towards the British, firing as they went. The British held their fire till the French and Canadians were near; then they sent a crashing volley into their ranks and charged with the bayonet. The defenders broke and fled back into the city. It was over; the battle was lost—and won.

Both Generals were killed. Wolfe fell as he led the advance; Montcalm was carried wounded into the city and died the next morning. These two brave men and good soldiers, if they had lived and met, must have admired each other. So it may be that they were content to die together, each knowing that he had done his duty. Their monument stands today above Cape Diamond and the two names, Montcalm and Wolfe, united upon it, symbolize the united nation that has grown out of the two peoples they brought together.

(d) *Britain Won the War*

Governor Vaudreuil who now took command was no soldier. The Canadian army at Beauport was still larger than the British, but he withdrew it to a point west of Quebec where he met de Levis hurrying down from Montreal. De Levis sent a messenger to the city to order it to hold out at all costs, but he was too late. Quebec had already surrendered.

Armies did not fight in winter in those days; they went into winter quarters. In the spring, de Levis fought a battle with the British and drove them back into the city. But he was again too late. The ice had gone out of the St. Lawrence; a British fleet came up to Quebec and forced him to retreat to Montreal. One by one, General Amherst took the smaller places and in September, 1760, Montreal surrendered.

The long war was over and Canada was beaten. She had fought well. Of the ten big battles of the war, Canada had won six, but the numbers against her were too great. The war was really won by the British fleet. It was so much stronger than the French fleet, that it was able to carry soldiers and supplies to the English colonies while at the same time it kept the French ships from taking help to Canada.

Parkman, a famous American writer, says: "there is nothing more noteworthy than the skill with which the French and Canadian leaders used their advantages; the spirit with which they grappled with their difficulties; and the courage with which their soldiers fought. The defence of Canada deserves our admiration."

. . . . .

No doubt you guessed that the larger, richer population would win over the smaller, poorer one. The Canadians had been fighting the English Colonists and the British for 150 years. They were now to be taken over by Britain. What would happen? You will be surprised.



## Chapter Ten

### BRITAIN TAKES OVER CANADA

1760—1783

#### I

##### AFTER THE WAR

THE amazing thing was that the two peoples, almost at once, settled down together and were friends. In Quebec, the long fight over, the tired fighters on both sides laid down their weapons and looked round them. The city was badly damaged. There were no dive bombers or jets in those days, but the big guns of the British fleet had pounded the city hard. A third of the houses had been destroyed and the streets were piled high with broken stone and timber.

The first winter was a hard one for both Canadians and British. The people of Quebec were short of food. The British soldiers shared their rations with them and went, without pay, to help the farmers harvest their crops. General Murray, who had taken Wolfe's place, collected money among his officers to buy food for the poor. He hired Canadians to haul wood to the barracks and paid them well for it. He paid, and made his men pay, for everything they used; and ordered all to treat their new fellow citizens with respect.

The British themselves suffered severely from sickness and the cold. Many of the troops were wounded and many others

took scurvy. The nuns nursed them tirelessly and saved the lives of hundreds. The whole army spent the winter half frozen for lack of warm clothing. The Highlanders, in kilts, had their legs badly frost-bitten until the nuns heard of their plight and knit them long woollen stockings. Helping each other in this way made the two mother peoples of Canada begin their life together as warm friends.

All Canada was poor and hungry that winter. The crops had been small for several years. In 1759, the men had been fighting through seeding and harvest so that there was very little food in the country. Bigot and his friends had stripped Canada of both goods and money. They now returned to France where they were arrested and tried for their crimes. Bigot's ill-gotten gains were taken from him and he was banished for life. Many of the seigneurs and merchants also returned to France, carrying with them most of the little money left in Canada. The habitants and truly Canadian seigneurs remained. In spite of poverty and hardship, they were thankful that the war was over, and families everywhere rejoiced as they welcomed their menfolk home.



The Nuns Help the Highlanders



Britain acted kindly towards her new colony of Canada. She left General Murray in charge of it for seven years. James Murray was the son of a Scots lord. He was 42, well educated, proud, hot-tempered, just, and generous. He had French blood in his veins, spoke French well, and sympathized with the Canadians. His officers, Burton and Haldimand at Three Rivers, and Gage at Montreal all spoke French. Gage was as much beloved as Murray. The people of Montreal said that they would transmit their gratitude for his kindness "from age to age to their latest descendants". These officers managed Canada so well that by the end of their time, most Canadians were willing to live under British rule.

Word was passed to the merchants of New England and New York to send Canada salt, tea, sugar, molasses and other supplies as quickly as possible. General Murray wrote to the captain of militia and the curé in each community. Each captain was placed in charge of his own district. Every Canadian was directed to turn over his gun to his captain. The captain was allowed to return their guns to the two best hunters in the community so that they could hunt and bring in fresh meat for the people. As no one rebelled, their guns were soon returned to all the men. The curés were directed to hold Roman Catholic church services; and the notaries, the men who wrote out legal papers, were instructed to carry on as usual. The British Government did these things to win the friendship of the Canadians. The British army in Canada was small, and the British knew that if the Canadians rebelled against it they could make a great deal of trouble.

## II

### THE CONSPIRACY OF PONTIAC

The Western Indians did make trouble. They had always liked the Canadians because they treated them as equals. They

had always disliked the English because they treated them as inferiors, and took their lands without paying for them. When Major Rogers and his Rangers were sent west to take over the Canadian forts for the British, Pontiac, the head chief of the Ottawas, met him near Detroit. Pontiac told Rogers that the Indians would allow the British to enter the West if they would promise to treat them respectfully. Rogers promised, but his men did not keep his promise. After they had taken possession of the Canadian forts, the British soldiers treated the Indians very rudely, and settlers began taking their lands.

The Indians are a proud race and Pontiac was a proud, clever, and powerful chief. As the anger of the tribes



Major Rogers



Pontiac

grew, he formed a conspiracy to seize the western forts and give them back to the Canadians. On a certain day in May, all the tribes were to rise; each was to destroy the nearest British garrison, and then all were to unite in a general war against the English Colonies.

At Detroit, as the story goes, a beautiful Indian maiden brought Major Gladwyn, the British commander of the fort, a pair of moccasins he had ordered. She seemed so sad that he questioned her. After much persuasion she told him that, at the next day's council meeting, Pontiac and his Indians would have their guns hidden under their blankets. They would take the unarmed officers captive and seize the fort. Sure enough, early next morning Pontiac and his warriors arrived each wrapped to the throat in his blanket. Inside the gate they must have received a shock, for they found themselves walking between ranks of soldiers and traders all armed to the teeth. The Chief gave no sign but marched to the Council House where they found Gladwyn and his officers, each with his sword by his side and two pistols in his belt. As his plot had failed, Pontiac was forced



to besiege Detroit; but the other forts fell to the Indians at the first attack, and fire and slaughter raged along the whole frontier.

The warring tribes had a hard time that winter. The fur trade had stopped, and as the Indians had neither guns nor ammunition for hunting, famine filled the wigwams with suffering. France sent word that she was now at peace with Britain and that they must bury the hatchet. By spring, most of the chiefs were ready to stop fighting. Sir William Johnson was sent to invite them to a pow-wow at Niagara. Sir William, who had married Molly, the sister of Joseph Brant, Chief of the Mohawks, was much admired by the Indians. At Niagara, he used his influence to persuade them to make peace. Pontiac smoked the peace pipe, but the surrender broke his heart. A few years later he was assassinated.

### III

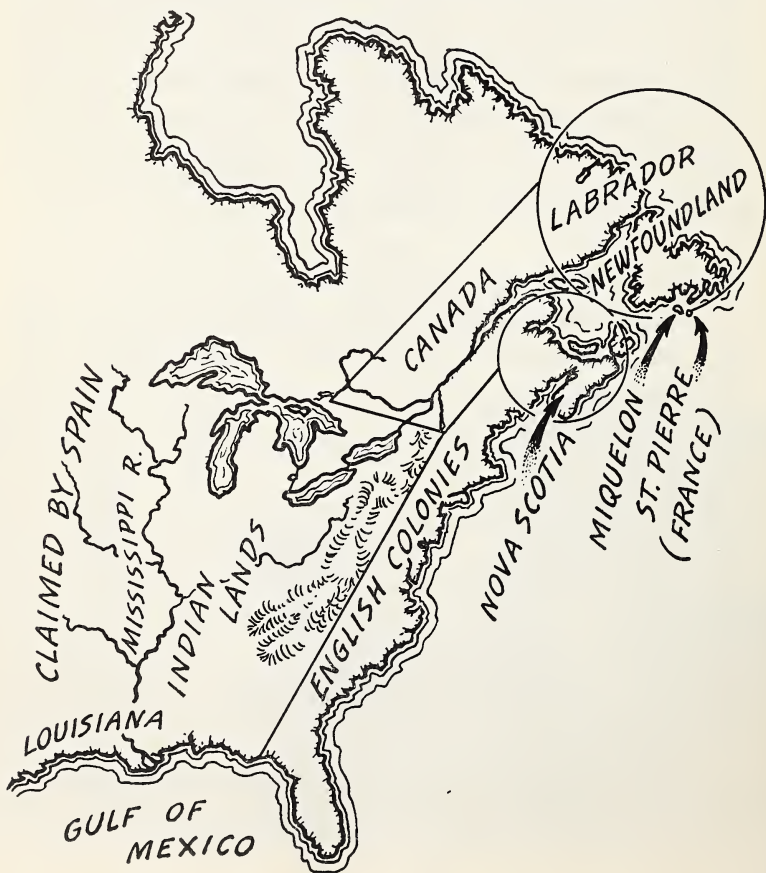
#### HOW AMERICA WAS DIVIDED

In the Treaty of Paris, which was signed in 1763, France gave up to Britain all Canada except the tiny islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon which France kept as a shelter for her fishermen. Britain now owned all North America east of the Mississippi, and she put out a Proclamation to say how it should be divided and governed. Cape Breton and Ile St. Jean were added to Nova Scotia, and Labrador to Newfoundland. Canada and the English Colonies were both cut off from the fur-trading lands for which they had been fighting. This was a bitter blow to the fur traders of Montreal and they fought hard against it. But Britain hoped that reserving their hunting-grounds for the Indians would keep them from fighting with the white men. In future, she said, colonies that wanted lands for settlers must buy them from the Indians.

Nova Scotia and the English Colonies already had Govern-



ments. The Proclamation said that Canada was to be governed by a Governor, a Council, and a legislature which the people must elect to make their laws. Britain had begun to be a democracy, and she wished Canada to be one. A democracy is a country in which the people choose the men and women they want to make their laws by voting for them in an election. General Murray was now appointed Governor of Canada and he chose a Council, but he did not hold an election for a





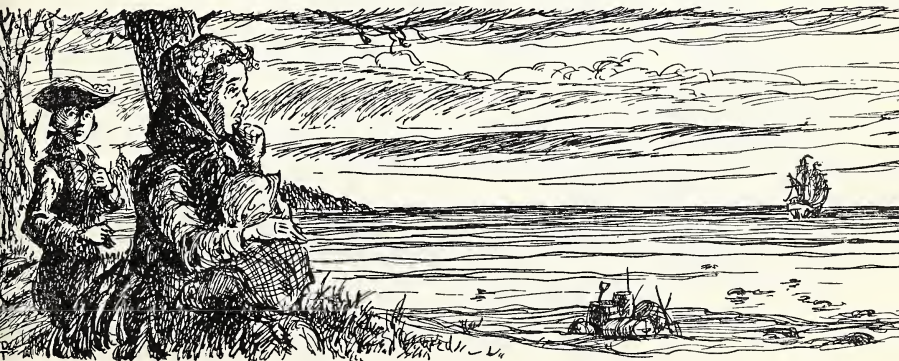
legislature. He explained to Britain that the Canadians were used to being ruled by a Governor and Council. Murray thought it would be better to give them time to learn more about elections and other British ways of doing things before asking them to vote.

## IV

### NOVA SCOTIA SURGES FORWARD

#### (a) *The First Legislature*

The first election in Canada was held in Nova Scotia. She had now been British for 50 years, but she had not grown much. There were a few Acadians and Germans in the province but very few British people outside Halifax and the other forts. At last, in 1758, the British Government said that it was time Nova Scotia had a legislature and the people elected one. It met in Halifax. One of the first things the new government did was to sign a treaty of peace with the Micmacs. The legislature and the Indian treaty made the New Englanders feel that Nova Scotia would now be a safe place in which to live. Governor Lawrence advertised in the Boston newspapers, offering them farms. Forerunners, sent to look over the land, returned



New Settlers to Nova Scotia

to tell of the rich diked hay meadows and blossoming orchards of the expelled Acadians, and New Englanders began to move into the province. Settlements grew up at Newport, Sackville, Horton, Truro and many other points. In six years over 6,000 came.

Dr. Harris brought six families from pleasant homes in Maryland to Pictou county. They had come with bright pictures of the country in their minds, but they found only the dark forest and the lonely shore. One woman leaned her head against a tree and wept.

"Oh, Robert," she cried, "take me back! take me back!" But the ship had gone.

Settlers now began to come to Nova Scotia from Britain also. Alexander McNutt brought a party from Ireland; and in 1773, 30 families of Scots arrived in the ship Hector. The Hector was small; the people were crowded below decks without proper air or food. Many were ill and 18 died. The others were so glad to see the green land that as they drew near it many jumped overboard and, led by their piper, they waded ashore. Indians had gathered on the beach to keep the Scots from land-



Led by Their Piper, the Settlers Waded Ashore

ing, but when they heard the strange music of the bagpipes, they fled in terror to the woods.

The Scots were disappointed to find that all the shore farms had already been taken up by New Englanders. They refused land in the woods and in any case it was too late in the year to plant a crop. They had neither food nor money to buy it. The New Englanders shared their supplies with them at first, but Squire Patterson soon saw that he had not enough groceries for all in his store, and refused to give any more to the Scots. They bore it for a few days and then, driven by the cries of their children, they broke into the store and took what they needed. They behaved quietly, left a list of all they had taken, and afterward paid for every mouthful.

(b) *Maugerville*

Maugerville was one of the first of the new settlements in what is now New Brunswick. Captain Peabody sent a party from Boston to examine the Saint John River country. They reported that the land was fertile, with fine woods and without any settlers. Peabody had a township at the mouth of the Oromocto River surveyed into farms. They named it Maugerville.

The next spring 200 settlers came from New England to take up the new farms. Among them were the Burpees and with them their son, David, 11 years old. David Burpee was a thoughtful lad, and after a time he began to keep a diary. For 59 years he wrote in it anything interesting that happened in Maugerville. David's diary has been kept to this day; from it we learn what the people did in New Brunswick 200 years ago.

The first thing they did was to cut timber and build houses and fireplaces for heating and cooking. Though most families had ten or more children, they had very little furniture. David's grandfather, one of the richest men in Maugerville, had only four beds, two tables, twelve chairs, two chests and a looking glass.

Farm machinery was even scarcer than furniture. Two to four neighbors had a plough among them. Mr. Burpee owned a share in a cart, but most people had no wagon of any kind. Wheat was their main crop. There was very little money in the settlement, so most people paid their debts with wheat. David paid half a bushel a week for his board when he boarded with his uncle. Later David's sister worked for him for a time and he paid her \$30 a year. With her money she bought two dresses, a quilted coat, silk mitts, two handkerchiefs and eight yards of striped cloth.

Even before they had finished building their houses the Maugerville people formed a church. They gathered each Sunday in one of the houses and the leading men took turns in preaching. Now and then a travelling minister came to visit them. Then all the people gathered gladly and the minister preached a real sermon for them, baptized the children, and married any young couples who had become engaged.

Maugerville's nearest store was 60 miles away at the mouth of the Saint John. James Simonds and James White opened one there. They brought the frames of their houses with them on their ship and set them up on the ruins of la Tour's old fort. The wives laid braided rugs on the rough floors and made up their big feather beds on the built-in-bunks. Mrs. Simonds had a clock which sat on a little shelf with a bit of knitted lace tacked across it. Mrs. White had a three-cornered cupboard for her dishes. As the fireplaces were still unfinished, they cooked out-of-doors. The delicious smell from their soup kettles, and their women's voices calling to one another, made homes in that solitary place. Business began on the deck of the ship before the young men had unloaded their stock. They stored it in Simonds' house and hurried the ship off to bring back another load.



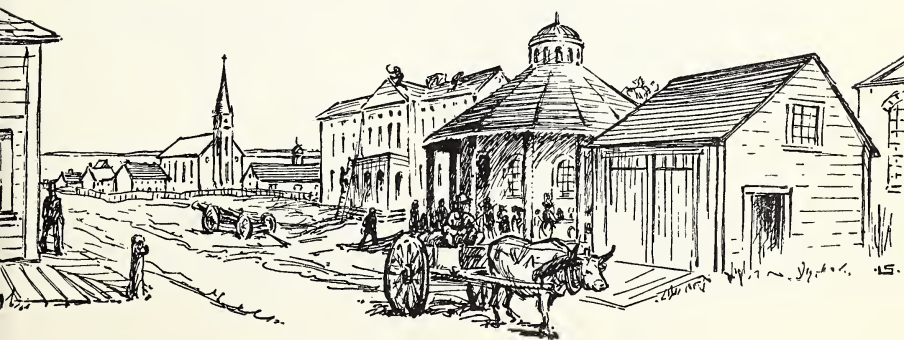
*(c) The Port of Joy*

When France gave Acadia to Britain in 1713, she kept Cape Breton and Ile St. Jean. Captain Doublet's fishing station was gone, but a new owner, St. Pierre, with Denys' son as guide, led 300 French settlers to the island. As they sailed along its green shores, they came to a harbor so safe and beautiful that they called it The Port of Joy, and there they built their settlement.

Fifty years later, when Britain took possession of Canada, she found about 4,000 French settlers living round the Port of Joy. Most of them moved either to Quebec or to France. The Port of Joy was renamed Charlottetown and Britain began granting lands there by lot: each of those who asked for a grant drew a number from a hat and was given the block of land with the same number. These proprietors, as they were called, promised to pay a small rent and to bring settlers to their lands. Most of them did neither. They kept their lands empty, hindering the settlement of the fertile little island.

Walter Patterson was appointed Governor of Isle St. John.<sup>1</sup> He was a clever, lively man, who worked hard to develop the

<sup>1</sup> The English settlers called it St. John instead of St. Jean. It was renamed Prince Edward Island after Edward, Duke of Kent, who had lived in Halifax.



Charlottetown in the Early Days



island. The soil was fertile, wood was plentiful, oyster and lobster fishing were good, and there were swarms of wild geese and ducks in the marshes. It was rich and lovely. The settlers were delighted with its beauty and resources. Charlottetown had two houses and a wharf. The next spring 220 British families arrived and others followed. Governor Patterson first laid out Charlottetown with wide streets, church and market place; and then had roads opened to the other settlements. By 1771, corn, oats, and barley were being grown. Wheat did not do well, but potatoes flourished amazingly. "As for our garden stuff," said the proud Governor, "no country produces better".

. . . . .

Most of the new settlers in the Maritime Provinces were either fishermen or farmers. The fishermen took over the French dry-fishing grounds from Cape Breton to Gaspé and shipped their fish to Italy, Spain and Portugal. The farmers traded their produce at the village stores and the storekeepers sold it to Britain, southern Europe and North Africa. The little settlements in the coves and bays round the shores could not reach each other by land, so they all traded direct with Boston. There was only one road in the province; it ran from Halifax to Windsor and was very rough. The settlers prospered, but the lack of roads made it hard to collect taxes, and the new legislature at Halifax found it difficult to get enough money to pay its expenses.

## V

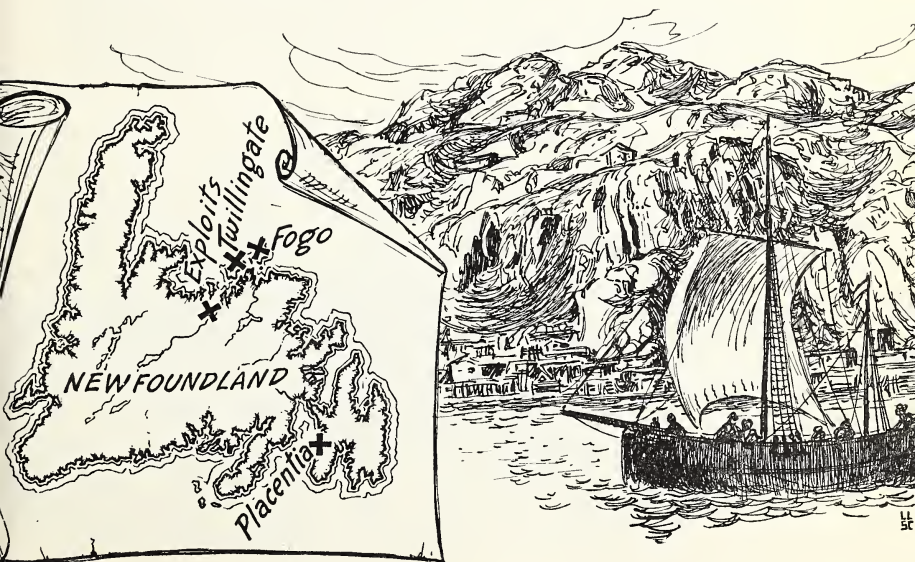
### NEWFOUNDLAND SEIZES HER CHANCE

During the 30 years of peace the Newfoundlanders had had plenty of trouble with the French fishermen on the "French shore", as their part of the coast came to be called. They were supposed only to fish and dry their fish there, but they boldly

claimed that the shore was theirs and that the Newfoundlanders had no right on it. If an islander built there, the French complained to the English officers who made the Newfoundlanders move away. Naturally there was a great deal of quarreling.

Yet in other ways Newfoundland now began to progress. During the wars England could not spare men to fish off Newfoundland. The Newfoundlanders seized their chance and took control of their own fisheries. After d'Iberville's raid many of them moved north and built new villages at Fogo, Exploits, and Twillingate. When the French left Placentia, they settled there also. In most years the fishing was good; in 1765 they took over 500,000 quintals<sup>2</sup> of fish, besides seal fur and oils. The old laws against settlers still stood, but they were no longer obeyed and every ship brought "passengers" from Ireland

<sup>2</sup> A quintal is 112 pounds.



Newfoundland Settlements

or England who remained. Newfoundland's population rose to 12,000.

Not until 1729 did Britain give Newfoundland a governor and then he was only a part time one, for he was the commander of the fishing convoy and in summer was off sailing with his ships. In summer the Fishing Admirals ruled with a high hand as of old. The first Governor was Captain Osborne. He appointed justices of the peace in each district and had a court house and a jail built. But the people had been so long without laws, and the punishments of those days were so cruel—whipping, branding, and hanging even for small thefts—that when a man committed a crime his friends were apt to take his part. Gradually the people began to understand that this did not make for law and order. They rallied round their governors and supported them in their long struggle with the fishing admirals. By the 1760's these gentlemen had lost so much of their power that they gave in; the governors and law and order won the day.

## VI

### CANADA ALSO BEGINS TO PROSPER

As soon as she became British, Canada also began to forge ahead. About 300 merchants had come with the British to Quebec and Montreal. After the war others came and together they quickly put new life into Canada's trade. The farmers took more pains with their farming now that there were markets for their products and money to be made. Governor Murray taught them to grow large crops of potatoes. John Wright, a seedsman, settled near Montreal and grew and sold better vegetables and grain seed. The Quebec Gazette, the first newspaper in Canada, printed articles, telling the farmers how to plough deep, manure the land, and rotate the crops. These means of conservation

produced better harvests. They also helped to restore soil worn out by continued cropping. In six years Canada was growing so much wheat that the farmers had trouble finding granaries to store it, and ships to carry it away.

"I have a large quantity of grain still in the habitants' houses," says one merchant. "I am distressed for want of vessels to carry it down and they crack my head by telling me that my wheat breaks down their lofts."

New industries flourished. New saw mills were built to make staves for which there was a good market in Britain. At first the Canadians cut the staves  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick, insisting that that was the best thickness. But the British would not take them in that size and the Canadians lost money. After that they cut staves to suit their customers.

The manufacture of potash and pearl ash was another new industry brought to Canada by the British. Potash and pearl ash (a finer product), are made from wood ashes and were used for bleaching cloth. Britain was then building up her great cotton industry and so needed potash. She had been getting



Making Potash



it from Russia. Then a British settler in Canada sent over 50 tons of potash made from Canadian maple and beech ashes. This was found to be purer than Russian potash and there was soon a big demand for it in the English cotton factories. Pot and pearl ash could be made at home and they made a handy cash crop for Canadian farmers. This was welcome at the time; but the reckless cutting and burning of logs to make ash played its part in the swift destruction of our beautiful primeval forests. With them Canada lost also the pot and pearl ash industry of which she was once so proud.

Canadian forges made hardware for the Indian trade. New distilleries were built. Tailors, dressmakers, hatmakers, printers, watch and clock makers came from London and opened up new businesses in Canada. There was so much work and so few workers that no one need be without a job in those days. Boy and girl apprentices were in great demand.

"Wanted, an apprentice for seven years," says one advertisement, "a youth of 13 or 14 years of age, good tempered, honest and active. Such a one, with his parents' consent, applying to Peter Mills, will be given bed, board, clothing, washing, lodging, and be instructed in the business of a wholesale and retail store."



Canadian trade boomed. Where formerly five or six ships a year had crept up the St. Lawrence, now dozens of vessels came and went to Britain, the English colonies, the West Indies, Europe and North Africa. Furs were still Canada's most valuable product, but the ships carried away also: wheat, iron, staves, pot and pearl ash, hides, fish, and fish oil.

A Young Apprentice



They brought back sugar, molasses, rum, and manufactured goods. A road was built from Montreal to Albany and goods began to be shipped by wagon overland to Albany and New York. There were no hotels along the road, but every settler kept open house and the tired drivers, the truckers of those days, ate and slept wherever meal time and bed time found them.

The famous Benjamin Franklin opened post offices in Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal. Couriers on horseback carried mail once a week between Quebec and Montreal, and once a month from Montreal to New York from which ships made monthly trips to England and the West Indies.

## VII

### CANADA'S THREE PROBLEMS

Business was good, Canada was growing, but her people were not satisfied with the way things were being managed. Three problems worried them:

How to trade with Britain was the first problem. The British merchants wished to sell the Canadians everything they needed; they wanted them to buy their clothes, tools and furniture from Britain instead of making them for themselves. On the other hand the British bought only a few things from Canada. "If you sell us £160,000 worth of goods every year and only buy from us £75,000 worth, where are we to get the money to pay you the difference?" the Canadians asked the British. This first problem was not solved for a long time.<sup>3</sup>

What kind of law to use in Canada was the second problem. When the peace treaty was signed, it was decided to use English laws. The Canadians did not understand the English language, much less English laws; they wanted French laws and kept on using them. The English Canadians did not understand French

<sup>3</sup> Since World War II this problem works the other way. Now Canada sells Britain more than she buys from her. Britain has now to solve the problem of how to pay the difference.

laws; they wanted English laws and went by them. This was very confusing.

How to get an elected legislature was the third problem. The 62,000 French Canadians had never had one and didn't really want one, but the 300 British Canadians did. The difficulty was this:

In those days nearly everyone believed that all the people of a country ought to belong to the same church. Those who did not belong to the national church were fined, or imprisoned; they were never allowed to be elected to the legislature. The French Canadians were Roman Catholics and the British Canadians were Protestants. Roman Catholics could not be elected to any British legislature, so if Canada had one, all its members would be elected by the few British Protestants in the country. This would give the 300 all power over the 62,000.

General Murray thought this unfair, so he refused to hold an election. This angered the British merchants in Canada. The old French laws hindered their business and they wanted a legislature to change them. They complained of Murray to the Government in London and he was called home. Sir Guy Carleton was sent out to take his place and the British party thought that they had won. But when Carleton understood the situation, he, too, refused to hold an election.

The dispute over this problem went on until 1774 when the British parliament made a new law stating how Canada was to be governed. It was called the Quebec Act. The British leaders were anxious to please the Canadians so the Quebec Act said that: Canada's southern boundary should be the Ohio River, that is her fur-trading lands were given back to Canada; and that all Canadians should use French law in all except criminal cases. As the French Canadians were still not ready for an election, Canada was not required to have one. The

Quebec Act said she was to be governed by a Governor and Council as she had always been. The Council was given power to pass laws and Roman Catholic as well as Protestant members were appointed to it. Britain hoped that this would please the French Canadians and win them over to be loyal to Britain. It did satisfy them for a time.

## VIII

### THE ENGLISH COLONIES BECOME THE UNITED STATES

#### (a) *The Quarrel*

The British Government had a good reason for trying to please the Canadians. At that time the English Colonies were at daggers drawn with their mother country and Britain wanted to keep Canada on her side. The mother country felt that she had the right to make laws for her daughter colonies and that her daughters should obey her. The daughters were making their own living. They felt that they were grown up, and that the mother country should not require them to obey laws with



The Boston Tea Party

which they disagreed. Canada also came presently to this stage, as we shall see.

The long quarrel flared up when the British parliament passed the Stamp Act, a law which said that the colonists must buy stamps to stick on business papers. This was a tax. The colonists said that they did not elect members to the British parliament and so had not voted for the Stamp Act. They said that no free man should have to pay taxes for which he had not voted. That is not democratic.

Britain repealed the Stamp Act, but to show that she had the right to tax her colonies, she put a tax on tea. The colonists refused to buy tea and held the famous "Boston Tea-party". Fifty men dressed as Indians went on board a tea ship in Boston Harbor and threw the chests of tea into the sea. To punish them Britain closed the port of Boston; no ships were allowed to enter or leave it. This made all the Colonies angry and they united to support Massachusetts. They held a congress and made out a list of "rights", that is privileges which, they felt, every citizen of a democratic country had a right to enjoy. They already had the right to elect a legislature, the right to trial by jury, and others. To these they now added the right not to be taxed except by their own elected legislature, and other new rights. They asked the British parliament to grant these



IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776

The unanimous Declaration of the thirteen united States of America,

*When in the course of human events it becomes necessary for the people to alter the form of their government, the first principle of wisdom is that they should begin with a declaration of the reasons which impel them to the change.*

Washington and the Declaration of Independence

rights. Pitt, the great English leader, wanted to grant them, but the majority voted against them. After that the colonists felt that there was nothing left to do but fight for their rights. On July 4, 1776, they signed the Declaration of Independence.

The Declaration of Independence is very famous because the ideas in it are good and many people and nations have used them since that time. It says that God made all men equal and that everyone has a right to "life, liberty, and the



pursuit of happiness". It repeats the "rights" from the first declaration, and says that, since Britain had refused the colonies these rights, they would no longer belong to her, but would unite to form an independent nation. Then they raised their flag with its 13 stripes for the 13 colonies and set forth to battle for their freedom.

(b) *The Fight*

They chose George Washington to lead them. Washington was a great man; he is called the "Father of the United States".



He was born in Virginia and grew up on a plantation there. When we met him asking the Canadians to leave the Ohio country, he was a tall, handsome young man, "with the gracious manners of an English gentleman". Washington made a brave name for himself in the Seven Years' War and so was chosen to lead the colonial army against the British.

The Congress had already invited Canada to join them as the 14th colony, but the Canadians were pleased with the Quebec Act and did not accept the invitation. Congress then sent General Montgomery to lead an army down the Richelieu to capture Montreal, and General Arnold from New England to take Quebec. Montgomery took Montreal and joined Arnold before Quebec. They attacked in a snowstorm. Montgomery was killed, Arnold wounded, and the attackers repulsed.

The Congress hoped that Nova Scotia would come in with them. There were some 13,000 New Englanders there and many of them took the side of the colonists against Britain, but they were helpless. Halifax was a strong fort completely controlled by officials on Britain's side. They increased the garrisons in the other forts and raised companies of militia to guard the settlements. The British fleet cut the New Englanders off from their old homes by sea, and the Congress had no navy to "conquer Acadia" in the old way. There were little outbreaks within the province, but only one small band invaded Nova Scotia. They attacked Fort Cumberland, but were driven off and fled back to Maine.



Meantime General Washington had great difficulties to face for the Congress had no power to make men join the army, and no power to make the people pay taxes to pay its expenses. Yet somehow he managed to keep

an army together. He spent his own money to buy food and clothes for his men, and starved and shivered with them through the seven weary years of the war. But he had advantages too. Many people in England and Europe admired the colonists' brave fight for freedom. General Howe, the leader of the British army, and his brother, the leader of the British fleet disapproved of the war. General Howe more than once held back his attack, hoping for peace. France joined the colonies. The fighting went on until 1781 when Britain at last admitted that they had won, and the United States of America stepped out upon the stage, a new nation among the nations of the world.

In the Treaty of Paris, 1783, Britain divided North America with the United States. She was anxious to make friends with the new country, so she agreed to let the boundary run up the St. Croix, the St. Lawrence, and the Great Lakes. In this way Canada lost the vast lands south of the Lakes which her explorers and fur traders had opened up.

The United States won her nationhood by revolution, that is by fighting. That she won it was good, but the war left her with a very bitter feeling against Britain. Bitter feelings do harm, especially to the one who feels them. Canada has won her nationhood in a slower, but happier way. You will be interested to find out, as you read her story, how she did it.

. . . . .

On the whole Canada's first 20 years under Britain had gone off quite well. Quebec had drawn away from France because she resented being given up to Britain. She had turned towards Britain because she was grateful for her kindness. The American Revolution had brought both Quebec and Nova Scotia little fighting and a great boom in their



Settlers Arguing

trade. On the other hand it had given them a new neighbor, large, strong, and at that time unfriendly. The loss of the fur trading lands was a cruel blow to the Canadian fur traders, but to balance this loss a great gain came to Canada about which you will hear presently. Also the loss of territory was less important because Canadian fur traders were already moving into the Great North West. That is an exciting story, so we shall have it first.



## Chapter Eleven

### THE PEDLARS AND THE GENTLEMEN<sup>1</sup>

1763—1793

#### I

##### THE RIVALS

**M**ORE amazing still: the French Canadians and the British in Canada not only were friends, they became partners. The French, so bold and gay, the British so wise and steady; they made excellent business partners.

##### (a) *The Gentlemen Make Hay*

It was now more than 100 years since Radisson and Groseil-liers had led the Gentlemen Adventurers to Hudson Bay, and all this time the Hudson's Bay Company had been trading in their posts on the Bay. They did not allow their men to go inland to trade as the Canadians did. They trained the Indians near the Bay to act as middlemen. The Bay Indians brought down the furs of the inland tribes and took back goods to them. They charged the prairie Indians ten times what the goods cost on the Bay. This gave the middlemen a big profit, while the inland people were saved the long journey to the Bay.

<sup>1</sup> The "Gentlemen", the Hudson's Bay Company, called the Canadian fur traders "Pedlars" because they did not belong to a company but traded each man for himself.



Hudson's Bay Co.  
Coat of Arms

When Le Moyne d'Iberville seized their forts on James Bay, the Company traded at Fort Nelson and sent Henry Kelsey to invite the prairie tribes to bring their furs there. In the summer of 1691, Kelsey went up to the Saskatchewan with the Assiniboines. He kept a diary of his adventures; his spelling is bad, but his story is an exciting one. He hunted buffalo; was nearly burned to death in a prairie fire; and was attacked by two huge grizzly bears, both of which he shot. He spent the winter in what is now the Province of Saskatchewan, urging all the Indians he met to take their furs to the Bay. Some promised, but Kelsey soon discovered that they could not do this. Their middlemen, the Crees and Assiniboines, had guns and would not let the prairie tribes pass through their country. The Bay Indians did not want to lose their profit.

Again after Vérendrye and his sons had built their ring of posts and cut off the inland tribes from Hudson Bay, the Company sent Anthony Henday with an invitation to the prairie people to bring their furs to the Bay. Henday spent a winter with the Blackfeet in what is now Southern Alberta, but he had no greater success than Kelsey. The Blackfoot Chief said that the Bay was too far away; that his young men used horses, not canoes; and that his people never lacked buffalo meat,

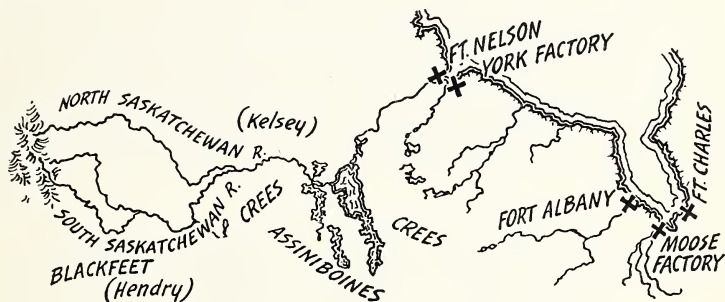


Blackfoot and Buffalo



while the Indians who went to the Bay sometimes starved on the long journey.

By this time the Seven Years' War had begun and the Canadian traders were called east to fight. When they left their western posts, the Indians returned to trading with the Hudson's Bay Company. By the time the Pedlars came back from the war, the Gentlemen had seven posts on the Bay and were taking in up to 97,000 beaver skins a year besides other furs.



(b) *The Pedlars Return to the Camps*

When the war was over the Proclamation forbade the Canadian traders to return to the Indian camps; they were required to remain in the forts and wait for the Indians to bring their furs to them. This order raised a great storm. The Canadians complained that it favored the Albany and Hudson Bay traders who had always traded in this way, but that it would ruin the Canadian fur trade. Ever since Radisson's day, Canadian fur traders had carried their goods up the rivers and lakes right into the Indian camps. The coureurs spent the winter there, making friends with the Indians and encouraging them to hunt. "If we do not do this", said the Canadians, "they will hunt very little and will sell what skins they do get to the French and

Spanish traders who come up the Mississippi from New Orleans. We shall lose their trade altogether. If that happens, the manufacturers who make Indian trade goods in England need not send any more to Canada, for we shall not be able to sell them." This alarmed the manufacturers, the order was withdrawn, and the Pedlars raced away to the West to peddle their goods in the Indian villages.

Then began the long struggle between the Pedlars and the Gentlemen for control of the western fur trade. That struggle caused a great waste of Canada's fur resources. The ordinary traders thought only of furs; but as they pushed forward, the greater men among them became fascinated with the seemingly endless trails of Canada. Eagerly they followed them and did not stop until they had reached the Arctic and the Pacific.

## II

### BRITISH AND FRENCH CANADIANS BECOME PARTNERS

#### (a) *Alexander Henry Led the Way*

Alexander Henry was the first British Canadian "pedlar". He was 21 when he set out from Albany with three canoe-loads of goods to sell to the British soldiers besieging Montreal. His canoes were wrecked; he was attacked by Indians and lost



Alexander Henry Arrives at Mackinac

in a snowstorm; but he stumbled at last into the seignury of M. Leduc. Leduc was an old fur trader. After he had thawed Henry out, he told him such tales of the rich profits of the Lake Superior fur trade that Henry, that very night, hired a Canadian guide to take him to Michilimackinac.

It was June, 1761, before Henry and Campion, his Canadian guide, were ready to start. Their birch-bark canoes were 33 feet long and each carried 60 100-pound packages and eight voyageurs. They followed the old route up the Ottawa. As they approached Mackinac, they were warned that the Indians would kill any Britisher they caught, so Henry and Campion changed places. Campion acted as trader and Henry as a voyageur. Henry disguised himself as a Canadian in loose shirt, blanket coat, and red cap and they paddled boldly up to the dock.

As soon as they landed, Henry slipped away to a small house, but he was betrayed. The Indians pushed into Henry's room where they sat smoking and making long speeches for hours while Henry shivered with terror, expecting every moment to be his last. In the end they made him smoke the peace pipe and asked him for "English milk", their name for rum. The next day British troops arrived to take possession of the fort, so Henry was able to trade safely all that winter.

(b) *The Partners: French and British*

In the spring he moved on to Sault Ste. Marie where he went into partnership with Cadotte, a Canadian trader. They agreed that Henry should return to Montreal to look after the financial end of the business, while Cadotte, in the West, brought in the furs and shipped them down to Montreal. The two men became great friends. Cadotte taught Henry many things about the fur trade, and Madame Cadotte taught him to speak Chip-

ewyan. He was adopted as a brother by Wawatam, a Chipewyan Indian.

Henry was in Mackinac on his way to Montreal when, as part of Pontiac's conspiracy, the Indians seized the fort and massacred the British soldiers. Henry saw the beginning of the massacre and hid. He was soon discovered and put into a wigwam with 14 soldiers each tied by a rope round his neck to the center pole. The savages were preparing "to make broth" of their prisoners when Wawatam arrived, bought off his adopted brother, and hurried him away to his camp. Henry spent the winter there disguised as an Indian. The next summer, the Indians accepted Sir William Johnson's invitation to the peace-making feast at Niagara. Henry went down with them and on to Montreal where he set up his end of the partnership.

Cadotte, the French Canadian, knew how to make friends with the Indians, trade with them, handle and transport the furs. Henry, the British Canadian, knew how to buy goods and sell furs in Britain. The two together made a good team. They made so much money that other French and British Canadians began to form partnerships to carry on the fur trade. A number



Alexander Henry and Soldiers Imprisoned at Mackinac



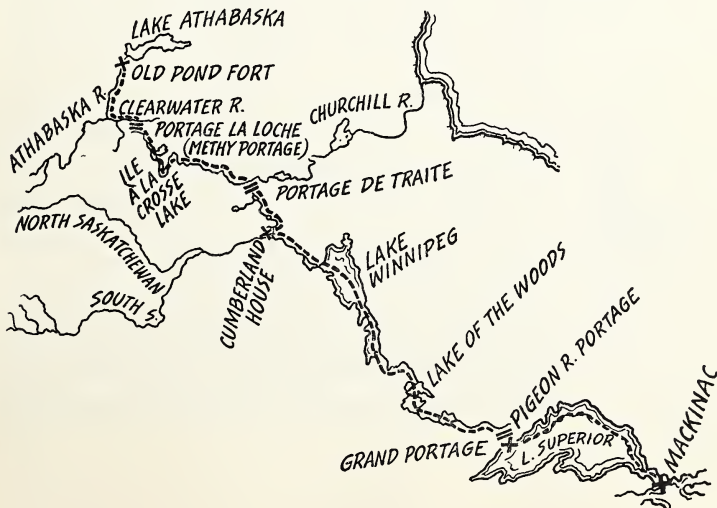
of these teams were soon carrying the trade into the Northwest. Cadotte, Blondeau, Campion, Francois the Pedlar, and others were traders who wintered and traded in the Indian camps. Henry, Todd, McGill, the Frobishers were their partners and backers. They provided the traders with goods to trade, and sold the furs they sent down to Montreal.

### III

#### THE PEDLARS CUT THE GENTLEMEN'S LINE

##### (a) *Grand Portage To Athabasca*

Even before peace was made in 1763, Henry had sent clerks to trade for him at Grand Portage, though it was a dangerous adventure while Pontiac and his Indians were still fighting. After they had buried the hatchet and their camps were again open to the traders, more and more trading teams made Grand Portage their starting point. It was a good location for it lay at the beginning of the long canoe trail that had led Vérendrye and his sons away to the Saskatchewan and the Rocky Mountains.





Following in their footsteps, the Pedlars now made their way across the continent and down to the Arctic and Pacific Oceans.

James Finlay, the first Pedlar to reach the Saskatchewan, seems to have got in by a lucky accident. He was trading on Rainy Lake, and as the Indians there did not need all his goods, they let him go on to Lake Winnipeg. The next year he went straight on through and set up a trading post on the Saskatchewan where he bought the furs the Indians were taking down to the "Gentlemen" on Hudson Bay. He made so much money out of this venture that he became a "backer" and provided goods for traders.

Since La Salle's time, most Canadian fur traders had been trading south and west from Detroit and Mackinac. They had killed without conserving, or replacing their resources and the southern beaver fields were now almost trapped out. Besides, the American Revolution was interfering with their trade. So when the Pedlars heard of Finlay's success, there was a great "fur rush" to the Saskatchewan. When Henry went up he found four teams competing there. This was bad for business, so the teams pooled their goods, and when the season was over divided the furs they had taken in.

In the spring Thomas Frobisher with six men crossed to Churchill River, hoping to meet the Indians on their way down that river to Hudson Bay. They built a small post and, when the partners arrived, the whole party paddled upstream. Sure enough, at Isle à la Crosse Lake, they met the Indian fleet from Athabasca with their canoes piled high with furs. The Canadians traded in 12,000 beaver skins besides large numbers of otter and marten. These Indians had bought goods from the Hudson's Bay Company the year before and were taking down the furs to pay their debts, but they sold them cheerfully to

the Pedlars, and turned homeward without a thought of the loss to their friends on the Bay.

This new scheme had turned out so successfully that the Partners built several trading posts west and north to keep the Indians from carrying their furs to the Hudson's Bay Company. In 1778, they sent Peter Pond with four canoe-loads to set up a post in the Athabasca country.

Pond paddled away to Isle à la Crosse Lake where he entered a land in which no white man had ever been before. Portaging from lake to river he came at last to the Height of Land, a high rocky ridge which separates the rivers that flow into Hudson Bay from those that drain into the Arctic Ocean. Pond and his men shouldered their canoes 13 miles over this ridge, Portage la Loche, and first of white men, looked down into the lovely valley of the Clearwater. Before them lay a land of wood and lawn and crystal stream, the pasture of the buffalo and the elk, the gateway to the great parklands of the Athabasca, the Mackenzie and the Peace. The Clearwater carried them swiftly down to the broad Athabasca above the mouth of which they built a post, Old Pond Fort, the first white settlement in what is now the Province of Alberta.

(b) *The North West Company*

King Charles II gave the Hudson's Bay Company all the land drained by rivers flowing into Hudson Bay. But the Athabasca River drains into the Arctic Ocean; the Canadians were now



A Portage

beyond Hudson's Bay Company territory. In Athabasca Peter Pond had discovered a new fur kingdom, the richest in America.

It was a vast kingdom. The Pedlars did not yet know how great it was, but they did know that it was a very long way from Montreal. A trading-trip from Montreal to Grand Portage and back took one year. One from Montreal to Athabasca took two years, cost twice as much, and lay across the Hudson's Bay Company's territory. Hudson Bay was comparatively near and the Athabasca Indians had been trading there for years. It was not likely that the Gentlemen would let the Pedlars cut across their land and buy in their furs without a struggle. To hold and develop the new kingdom was bound to take courage, hard work, and a great deal of money. Clearly if the Canadians were to do it, they must give up being "Pedlars": competing among themselves, wasting their resources, cutting prices, bribing the Indians with liquor, cheating them, fighting with one another. They must unite.

The wiser traders saw this. The Frobisher brothers and Simon McTavish took the lead in uniting the warring groups of traders into the North West Company. It was arranged that some of the partners were to attend to the business in Montreal, while others, the "winterers", remained in the West to trade with the Indians. When a partner retired, he was required to turn his share back to the Company which sold it to a promising young clerk. This kept all the clerks working hard and loyally, hoping to become partners which many of them did. Besides loyal clerks, the North West Company had clever business men and powerful leaders. Together they formed an organization strong enough to build the first trans-Canada. The Hudson's Bay Company now had a foe worthy of its steel.

## IV

### THE RIVALS GET SET

#### (a) *The Nor' Westers Organize Their Business*

The Nor' Westers, as the Canadian traders now began to be called, set briskly to work to improve their transport, base, and supplies, and to organize their trade. Canoes are quick, but small, and so make freight expensive. The Company now put freight boats on the Great Lakes to carry up the heavy goods while canoes took up the light goods and brought down the furs.

Grand Portage became the western headquarters of the new Company. They still had a longer haul to Athabasca than the Hudson's Bay Company, but they were 300 miles nearer than they had been at Mackinac. At Grand Portage the Company built a wharf where the lake boats could unload; storehouses where the goods could be made up into packages to fit the small canoes used on the inland rivers; and a road for carrying the goods over the Pigeon River portage to the canoe landing.

Another improvement was the organization of food supplies. Corn and pork fat were brought from Detroit and Mackinac and stored at Grand Portage; a stock of wild rice was kept at the depot on Rainy River. Later the Company had a farm there where grain was grown and horses and cows were kept. Pemmican<sup>2</sup> was made by the Indians west of Athabasca and on the Prairies, and cached at different places down the long trail to Grand Portage.

The new Company quickly built up a smooth trading system. In October, the Montreal partners ordered from England the goods the Indians wanted: cloth, blankets, guns and ammunition, tobacco, hardware, shoes. These things reached Canada the next summer and during the following winter were packed in 90-pound parcels. In May, clerks and voyageurs left Lachine in canoes to carry the light goods up to Grand Portage

<sup>2</sup> Pemmican is dried buffalo meat mixed with dried berries and melted fat.

and bring back the furs. These were the Pork-eaters, men who lived in Canada on cured rations, a tame life. The round trip took five months. Meantime the wintering partners in the posts and Indian camps had been buying furs, grading, packing and carrying them down to meet the Pork-eaters at Grand Portage.

There, at the meeting in July, they had a great celebration. The long dining-hall rang with talk and laughter. The winterers got their mail and the news from home. They were paid and perhaps appointed to a new post. The annual meeting of the Company was held; the profits were counted, and new plans made. After two weeks of holiday the winterers made ready to return to their lonely posts. The voyageurs tramped back and forth over the Pigeon River portage, carrying up to 150 pounds of goods on their backs. The canoes on the Pigeon were loaded, the voyageurs tested their new paddles, tightened their new sashes. Then, scarlet shirts glowing, paddles flashing, shouting and singing, the Northwest brigade dashed away for Lake Winnipeg, the Saskatchewan, and far-off Athabasca.

The Montreal partners now repacked the furs into 100-pound bundles and shipped them with the Pork-eaters to Montreal. The partners then took their places in light canoes manned by picked voyageurs who raced them home in half the time taken by the fur brigades. This was the end of the year's business.

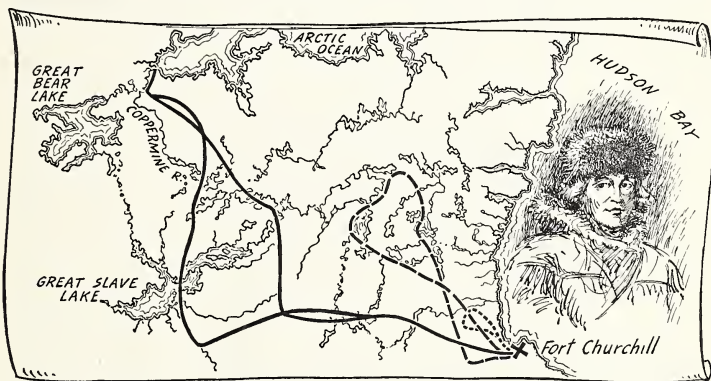
### (b) *The Gentlemen Explore the North*

As the Nor' Westers cut more and more heavily into trade at the southern posts on Hudson Bay, the Gentlemen turned to the North. They hoped there to kill three birds with one stone: explore for a North West Passage through Canada or round her north shore; find a copper mountain of which their Indians had told them; and make up the loss of trade at the



southern posts by increasing it at Forts York and Churchill. Their middlemen there were Chipewyans, who brought them down the furs of the Dog-rib and Copper Indians. In 1769, the Hudson's Bay Company sent Samuel Hearne to visit these tribes and invite them to bring their own furs to the Bay.

Hearne was English. He was a clever boy, but he disliked his school so much that he left early and joined the navy. There he learned to use the compass and other scientific instruments



Samuel Hearne's Travels

useful to explorers. Perhaps he was already thinking of exploring, for he now took service with the Hudson's Bay Company. Boylike, he carved his name on a rock near Churchill. You can see it yet, they say. He was little more than a boy when he carved it large across northern Canada. Seeing him hungry for fame and great deeds, the Company chose him to visit the Dog-ribs and to find the copper mountain and the North West Passage.

Hearne must have been a very patient and determined person for he had to turn back twice, once when his Indians deserted

him and again, after terrible hardships living on "leather and burnt bones", when his quadrant<sup>3</sup> was broken. Within two weeks, he left Churchill again, this time with Matonabee, a famous chief, as his guide.

At first they marched west, sometimes almost starving. In April they turned north, and after stopping to hunt and cure a supply of moose and deer meat, they set out across the Land of Little Sticks for the Coppermine River. They reached it in July and paddled down to the Arctic Ocean. Hearne was disappointed. They found only one lump of copper of any size; and the river mouth was blocked by the ice-pack. On the way back Hearne discovered Great Slave Lake and Slave River and there turned east again to Fort Churchill where he was received with honor. He had earned it. By his long, hard journey he had explored a new part of Canada and proved two things: that there was no passage through the land from the east, and that Canada was much wider than people had thought.

Hearne had made a name for himself as an explorer, but he had not done much to increase trade. He reported that it was no use inviting the Dog-ribs and Copper Indians to the Bay for their middlemen, the Chipewyans, would not let them come.

Suddenly everything seemed to go wrong for the Gentle-

<sup>3</sup> A quadrant is the instrument engineers use to find the latitude of a place.



Samuel Hearne and Matonabee Crossing "Land of Little Sticks"

men. Matonabee, who had long been a loyal friend of the Hudson's Bay Company, threatened to join the North West Company. Smallpox attacked the northern Indians and many died, leaving few to bring furs to Churchill. Mathew Cocking, who had been visiting the Blackfeet, reported that the Pedlar, Mr. Currie, was trading at Cedar Lake and had carried off most of the York Factory furs. The Pedlars were sweeping triumphantly into the North West. The Hudson's Bay Company decided that they, too, must move inland. In 1774, they sent Samuel Hearne to build Cumberland House on the Saskatchewan.

## V

THE NOR' WESTERS WIN—AND LOSE<sup>4</sup>(a) *Peter Pond Did The Spade Work*

With their new organization behind them the Nor' Westers swept across the continent like a strong breeze. The Hudson's Bay Company now followed briskly. Beginning with Cumberland House, they built several inland posts: Brandon House near the modern city of Brandon; Hudson House near the modern Prince Albert. They matched Peter Pond in Athabasca by sending Peter Fidler to build posts on Lake Athabasca and the Peace River. The Gentlemen had a shorter haul and cheaper goods; but they also had disadvantages. Their business was managed in London by men who had never seen Canada and did not really understand the situation here. Their clerks and traders were all brought from Britain and so were not used to Canada's climate, Indians, and canoes. They had no shares in the Company and their salaries were small.

The North West Company, on the other hand, was managed in Montreal by men who had been fur traders themselves and

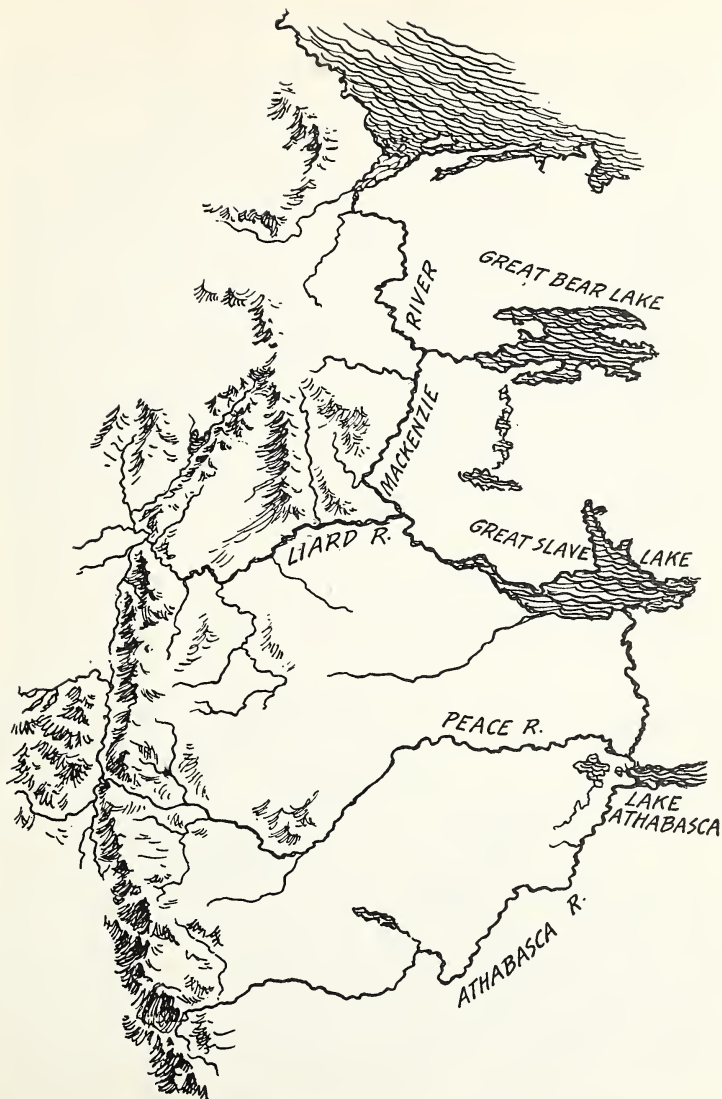
<sup>4</sup> The North West Company won Athabasca and later British Columbia, but in the end the long haul to the Pacific lost them their business. See Chapter Fourteen.

knew every trick of the trade. The office work was done by vigorous young clerks everyone of whom expected soon to be a partner. Goods and furs were carried by Canadian voyageurs, next to the Indians the finest canoemen in the world. It is not surprising that the Nor' Westers took the lead in the race across Canada.

All this time Peter Pond had been the chief trader in Athabasca. Pond was an American, born in Connecticut. He was a clever, highly-strung, hot-tempered man, and the competition between the early trading groups was bitter. There were quarrels and fights aplenty. Even murder was whispered, for one night Pond and his clerk were seen leaving a house where a man had been killed. Nothing was ever proved, but the talk darkens Pond's name to this day. That is a pity for he was more than a trader. His eager mind leapt forward down the long Canadian trails. He questioned his Indians about the country north and west and drew maps of its rivers, lakes and mountains. He studied Captain Cook's exploration of Cook's inlet, and thought the Athabasca River might connect with it to form the North West Passage. He warned the Company that the Russians were seizing the North Pacific Coast, and that the Americans were planning to trade there. He urged them to move quickly to save Canada's share. But when the Nor' Westers did move, Pond was ordered down to Montreal to persuade the government to pay part of the expense of the journey. The great exploration was left to another. That must have been a sore blow to Peter Pond who had done the spade work.

### (b) *The River of Disappointment*

Alexander Mackenzie was a Scotsman, bold and ambitious, but wise, steady, well educated. He came to Canada when he was 15 and went to work as a clerk in Montreal. At 24 he



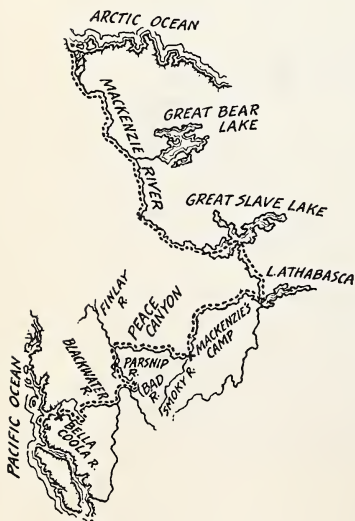
Mackenzie's Exploration to the Arctic Ocean



was a partner in the North West Company and went up to take over the Athabasca district from Peter Pond.

In Athabasca, Mackenzie listened to Pond talk and studied his maps. He began to see that Athabasca was on the edge of still another immense fur country. Great rivers ran through the woods and prairies north, west, and south of it. Beyond the mountains other rivers hurried down through the forests to the sea. In all these lands there were fur-bearing animals. But Athabasca itself was almost 2,500 miles from Montreal. Bringing in supplies and taking out furs over that long, long trail cost so much that the North West Company made very little profit. Carrying supplies and furs to and from the Rocky Mountains, or over them, would not pay. The Nor' Westers had an immense new fur country but they could not use it; it was too far from the market.

But, thought Mackenzie, Hudson Bay is only about 600 miles away. If we could bring in our goods through the Bay, send our furs to the Pacific coast, and sell them in China, we could make it pay. When he had made up his mind that this plan would succeed, Mackenzie spent the rest of his life trying to work it out.



The first step was to find a way to the Pacific coast. When Pond left, Alexander's cousin, Roderick Mackenzie, came up to assist him. Roderick built a new post, Fort Chipewyan, at the mouth of the Athabasca and took charge of the fur trade while Alexander prepared for his exploration. In the spring, when Roderick had gone down with the furs to Grand Portage, Alexander with

a crew of expert voyageurs set off on his dash for the Pacific. They left Chipewyan on June 3, 1789, crossed Lake Athabasca, missed the Peace, and entered the Slave River. It was high summer and there was no night in the north. They rose at two, paddled steadily, and made a quick trip. By July 10, Mackenzie knew from his reckoning that he was approaching not the Pacific, but the Arctic Ocean. On the 11th he climbed a hill and saw the frozen ocean stretching away to the horizon. On the 14th they chased a school of whales, and the next day saw the tide rise. There was no doubt about it; it was the Arctic and plainly no use for shipping. Mackenzie had made an important discovery, but he was bitterly disappointed. After putting up a post to mark their visit, they set out for home. Mackenzie called the great river he had discovered "Disappointment" but it has ever since been called the Mackenzie.

(c) *The End of the Long Trail*

Though Alexander was disappointed, he did not give up. He went to England, studied for six months, and returned with



Mackenzie's Struggle to the Pacific

new reckoning instruments. Roderick was waiting for him with encouragement and advice, and this time they planned to try the Peace River. Alexander and his voyageurs went up the Peace to the mouth of the Smoky where they spent the winter preparing to make an early start in the spring.

They left their camp on May 9, 1793, and paddled up the Peace through what Mackenzie says was "the most beautiful scenery I ever beheld". The journey upstream through the mountains was terribly difficult. They had to fight the strong current, cut their way round falls through thick bush, chop steps in the rock walls of the river and haul each other and their canoe up by a line. At the forks of the Peace an old Indian advised them to take the south branch which led them into the terrible Bad River. Up it they fought every step of the way, most of the time wading and dragging their canoe. On the Bad, the voyageurs were ready to give up, but Mackenzie persuaded them to go on. In the end they reached what Mackenzie calls the "great river" (the Fraser).

Carried down by the swift current they met Carrier Indians who threatened them with spears. Mackenzie left his frightened men, went forward alone, and with gifts made friends of the Indians. He learned that though his "great river" was long and difficult, there was an easy path by the Blackwater, which he called the Westward River, to the ocean. On July 4, they started down this trail which led them to the Bella Coola River. At the "Friendly Village", the Indians feasted them upon salmon and gave them canoes to carry them down to the sea. On July 20, they reached the Pacific not very far from the modern town of Ocean Falls.



Mackenzie Offers Gifts  
to Carrier Indians

The Nor' Westers had won the race. A way across North America had been found. Cartier, Champlain, Brulé and Nicollet; Radisson and Groseilliers; Kelsey, Henday, La Vérendrye; Pond, Hearne, Mackenzie; each had measured out his share of that long, long trail. Mackenzie mixed red paint with grease and wrote on a tall rock:

Alexander Mackenzie  
From Canada by Land

July 22, One Thousand Seven Hundred and Ninety-three.

By his voyages Mackenzie claimed for Canada the north and north-west of North America. The king knighted him for his explorations.

## VI

### ENTER BRITISH COLUMBIA

In the very year in which Alexander Mackenzie reached the Pacific coast by land, Captain George Vancouver explored it by sea, and what is now the great, rich and beautiful province of British Columbia appeared upon the Canadian scene. Sir Francis Drake may have been the first white man to see her, for on his voyage round the world he sailed up the west coast. But in those days the Spanish claimed Western America and sent Bruno Hecate to take possession of the northern part of it. Somewhere on the shore of British Columbia he raised the cross and flag of Spain—and sailed away.

#### (a) *Captain Cook*

The merchants of England were still hoping that a short trade route north of Canada to China



Captain Cook at the  
Pacific Coast



might be found. As Hearne had found no way in on the east, the British Government sent Captain Cook, the famous discoverer of Australia, to look for one on the west. Cook reached Vancouver Island in the spring of 1778, and stayed there a month, enjoying the delightful weather and beautiful scenery, and trading with the friendly Indians. He discovered and explored Cook's Inlet, and then sailed on till he had rounded Alaska and was stopped by the ice, but he found no passage through the land from the west.

Cook reported that he had seen large herds of seal and sea otter off the north-west coast of America, and the British merchants in China and India at once began sending ships to trade for these furs which are finer and richer than beaver. They took such quantities of sea-otter that these animals were soon almost extinct. One of these traders, Captain Meares, bought land from the Indians and built a trading post at Friendly Cove on Nootka Sound. Presently a Spanish warship appeared in the Sound and seized his post. Meares complained, and the British and Spanish Governments had a hot argument over the matter. Finally Spain agreed to give back the property she had seized; and Britain sent Captain Vancouver to search the coast again for a "North West Passage", and to receive the property.

(b) *A Play in Three Acts*

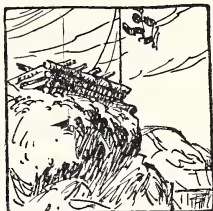
*Captain Vancouver . . . Don Quadra*

Vancouver reached the Gulf of Georgia on an April morning in 1792. He and his men spent the summer charting the coast which delighted them with its beauty. When the weather turned wet, they sailed round to Friendly Cove where Don Quadra, the Spanish Commander, entertained them most politely. He offered to return Captain Meares' property, but Vancouver explained that he had been sent to take possession of



the whole country. Don Quadra regretted that he had not been told to give him this. So with many polite words and bows, they separated to write their governments for further instructions. Vancouver passed the winter in the Hawaiian Islands.

When he returned to Nootka in May, Don Quadra again welcomed him with salutes and feasts, but no instructions had been received by either party. Again the two commanders parted most politely, and Vancouver went on with his charting, map-



Act I



Act II

ping the coast carefully and giving inlets the names we use today. He was at Bella Coola only a month before Mackenzie reached it overland.

Vancouver finished his charting and returned to Nootka for Act Three of the little play. Still no instructions had come. The Englishman gave it up and sailed for home. Don Quadra smiled and sat tight, but not

for long. Britain and Spain had made the "Nootka Agreement" that the coast should be free to all traders. Don Quadra, too, had to sail away.

. . . . .

In this way the French and British partners laid out the widest bounds for Canada. She now had plenty of land, if she could hold it. What she needed was people. As luck would have it, they were already "knocking down the doors". That, too, is an exciting story.



Act III



## *The Fourth Adventure: Settling Canada*

### Chapter Twelve

#### THE LOYALISTS

1783—1791

THE fourth adventure brought us just what we needed: more people. It is even more interesting than the third adventure. It tells not of war, nor of dangers and escapes on the frontiers; but of the adventures of ordinary men and women trying to chop homes for their children out of the thick forest which, in those days, covered eastern and central Canada. For now British people began to settle there and hard work it was.

#### I

##### THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS

While the fur-traders were exploring the West, farmers streamed into eastern and central Canada. When Britain made peace with the new United States in 1783, Canada lost part of old Nova Scotia, and all her lands south of the Great Lakes, but she gained enough settlers to start three new provinces. It happened in this way:

All the time the English Colonists were fighting the American Revolution, there were two parties among them. One party thought that the only way to escape from Britain's trade laws and

taxes was to fight her, separate from her, and set up a country of their own. The other party thought that they should not fight but should *persuade* Britain to take away the troublesome laws and taxes. These people wished to remain within the British Empire and so were called United Empire Loyalists. Many of them joined the British army and fought as valiantly for the Mother Country as their descendants fought for Canada in World War I and II. The anti-British party was in the majority and they treated the Loyalists very harshly. They seized their property, drove them from their homes, sometimes even killed them.

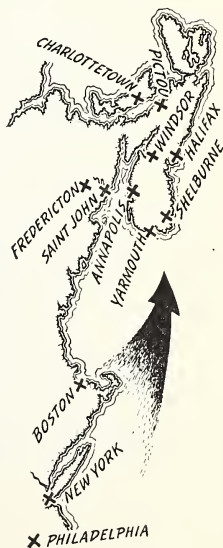
When the anti-British party had won the war, they made it plain that they did not want the Loyalists in their new country and many of them emigrated. Some moved to Britain; some went to the West Indies; thousands came to Canada. Nova Scotia was the nearest British Province to the eastern Loyalists and many of them had friends and relatives already living there. Britain offered them transport, land, and provisions to make a start; and the great immigration began.

## II

### THEN CAME THE LOYALISTS

#### (a) *Old Friends and New Homes in Nova Scotia*

The immigrants found their old friends doing well. Maugerville had a minister now and David Burpee, grown-up was farming and teaching school at 75¢ per pupil per month. Simonds, White and Hazen had enlarged their store. A village had grown up round it and another had started on the other side of Saint John Harbor. William Davidson, a Scotsman, had set up a lumber busi-



ness at Miramichi and then gone "masting", that is cutting masts for the British Navy, on the Saint John. The New Englanders and Scots at Pictou were getting on well together. After their first hard winter, the Scots had taken jobs in Truro and Halifax, and when they had saved enough money most of them returned to farm at Pictou. They now had a school and were building a church. Halifax also had a school, and the Germans at Lunenburg had built homes and made furniture for themselves. One of them had invented a lamp made of clay in which they burned cod liver oil. The homes of these early settlers were still bare, without rugs, or sofas, or stoves, but their food and fuel were cheap. Clothing was dear, so most families made their own. Hardly anyone had money; trade was by barter.

When the United Empire Loyalists gathered in New York, they found a kind friend in Sir Guy Carleton whom Britain had sent to help them leave the United States. As most of them wanted to go to Canada, Carleton was a good man to advise them. He had come to Quebec with Wolfe and been wounded on the Plains of Abraham. When Murray was recalled, Carleton took his place as Governor and treated the French Canadians as kindly as Murray had done. There is an interesting little story about Carleton's marriage. While visiting a friend in England, Sir Guy proposed to his daughter, Lady Anne Howard. She refused him, being already in love with his nephew. When she returned to her room her sister asked her why her eyes were red.

"Your eyes would be red, if you had just refused the best man on earth," said Lady Anne.

"The more fool you," said Lady Maria, "I wish he had given me the chance."

This remark was later repeated to Carleton. He gave Lady Maria the chance and she accepted him. They were married

and lived "happy ever after", though at the time of the wedding Carleton was twice his wife's age.

When placed in charge of the Loyalists, Carleton at once wrote to Governor Parr in Nova Scotia asking him to make ready to receive them, and chose the famous Brook Watson<sup>1</sup> to arrange transport for them. While Carleton talked with the Loyalists Watson collected ships and food for their passage. Early in 1783 a stream of ships began passing back and forth between New York and Nova Scotia.

"Every harbor upon the coast, from Canso to Cape Sable is settling with fishermen and disbanded soldiers," says one writer.

Villages grew into towns overnight. Annapolis (old Port Royal), a village of 100, welcomed the first 500, and the number of newcomers rose quickly to 6,000. The barracks, the church, and every house, barn and shed was crowded. Tents were set up in the fields, but it was already October and something had to be done. It was done. Neighboring villages, the farm-houses up and down the valley, all took their share and somehow the Loyalists were housed for the winter. Halifax multiplied its population by four. Every building in the town was filled. They even took the deck-houses off the ships in the harbor and set them up on vacant lots to make homes for Loyalists who, all through the winter, lined up in front of the Government stores to get their rations.

New towns sprang up like mushrooms. The busy ships brought 5,000 Loyalists to Shelburne. Many of these Loyalists were wealthy people who had brought money, furniture and servants with them. Engineers laid out wide streets and handsome houses were built. By autumn 5,000 more people had arrived. They had come without extra provisions, but the first

<sup>1</sup> You should read the story of Brook Watson, the boy whose leg was bitten off by a shark. Yet he became a merchant prince and at last Lord Mayor of London.



comers shared with those who came later and the rations were made to go round.

(b) *On the Saint John*

On May 18, 1783, the "Great Spring Fleet" of 20 ships sailed into Saint John harbor with 3,000 Loyalists, and the city of Saint John was born. It was a chilly spring and the rocky shore backed by cedar swamps and thick forest looked sadly unfriendly to the newcomers. But Major Studholme welcomed them and gave each family 500 feet of lumber with bricks and shingles to build a house. At once everyone went to work clearing brush and putting up shelters of boughs and bark. In a few days all were housed on land and choosing their lots so as to begin building log houses. By September 10,000 Loyalists had arrived.

Some of the late comers went on up the river to St. Ann's, now Fredericton. Among the children of one party was Eliza Fisher who, many years later, told their story to her granddaughter. It was October when they arrived, she says, too late in the year to build log cabins. They pitched tents in the

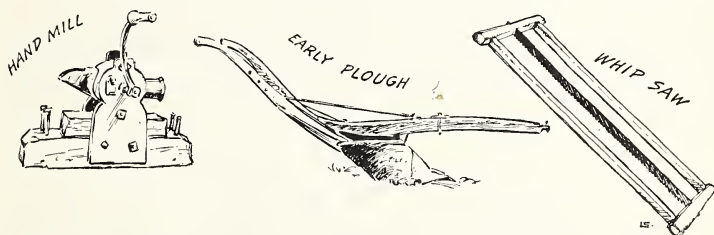


The Loyalists Build New Homes for Themselves

woods and covered them with spruce boughs. Their tent had no floor and the snow drifted in past the rug they had hung over the door. Their fireplace was made of stones. Some mothers held their children in their arms to keep them warm; others kept heating boards to lay beside them; part of each family had to sit up all night to keep the fire going so that the others would not freeze. It is little wonder that a good many of the women and children died that winter.

(c) *Good Citizens*

In all, over 30,000 Loyalists settled in Nova Scotia, doubling its population. Most of the newcomers were poor, but they



were people with strong characters, brave enough to give up their homes for what they believed to be right. There were also among them many educated men: lawyers, engineers, teachers, writers, doctors and, it is said, nine judges. Altogether they set up in the Maritime Provinces a high standard of education and culture. Their descendants have given to our country many of its leaders and learned men.

Only a few of the Loyalists had been able to bring any money or property with them. The British Government had to provide for most of them until they were able to support themselves. Two hundred acres of land were granted to each man with additional grants to each son and daughter as they grew up. Flour, pork, beef, butter and salt for three years

were supplied to all. Seed and implements were also provided. A plough and a cow were allotted to every two families; a whip-saw and a cross-cut saw to every four families; and a portable mill to each settlement. Each family was given a hammer, a handsaw, some nails and four small panes of glass for the house; while every five families had among them a full set of tools, a gun and ammunition.

With these supplies the Loyalists were set down in the bush to make a living as best they could. Cutting down trees, ploughing, planting, and harvesting among the stumps is hard work for anyone. It was especially hard for those who had never before worked with their hands, or worked only in towns. A few gave up and returned to the United States; but the great majority fought their way through the hardships of pioneer days and handed down a fine tradition to the provinces in which they settled.

### III

#### NEW PROVINCES

There were soon four of these provinces. So many new settlers had come to Nova Scotia that it was now divided into three provinces: Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Cape Breton. Prince Edward Island was already a separate province.

#### (a) *New Brunswick and Cape Breton*

Long before this Britain had granted much rich land in the Saint John River valley to speculators. As these men had done nothing to improve their grants, she now took them back and gave them to the Loyalists. Taking them back and granting them out again had to be done by lawyers in Halifax, the capital. The Saint John Loyalists wasted so much time going back and forth that Edward Winslow, a leader among them, suggested that they should ask Britain to make the country west of the Bay of Fundy into a separate province with a capital of its

own. This was done in 1784. The new province was named New Brunswick; Saint John was made its capital; and Thomas Carleton, Sir Guy's brother, was appointed its first Governor.

Thomas Carleton was a short, stout, energetic man who tramped about the province visiting the people to find out what they needed. When Sir Guy was ill, he snowshoed all the way to Quebec to see him. He was a generous man, too; he lived upon his salary and refused all fees from the province which was still poor. As soon as possible Carleton held an election. The legislature met in 1786 and at once passed a law which made the speculators' grants illegal. This law made it possible for the Loyalists to take possession of their farms without delay.

Cape Breton also was made a separate province in 1784. She was given a council to govern her but no elected legislature. There are great coal mines in Cape Breton and Britain did not want them worked for fear factories might be built to compete with those in England. Up to this time she had not allowed settlers to locate on the island; but she opened it to the Loyalists. About 3,000 settled there. As they could only rent, not buy their land, some moved to other provinces while others turned to fishing. Cape Breton was given back to Nova Scotia in 1820.

#### (b) *Prince Edward Island*

Prince Edward Island had been made a separate province some years earlier to please the proprietors and Governor Patterson had a legislature elected. When the Loyalists needed land, the proprietors made a great show of offering them farms and about 600 settled on the island. They built their houses and then found that they did not own their land, which made them very angry. They declared that they would appeal to the king, but they had a long fight before they got the proprietors to give them deeds to their farms.

Thomas Hooper was one of the Loyalists who settled in

Prince Edward Island. He had had a farm, a large house and barn, a wife and happy family in New Jersey. When the Revolution began, Hooper felt that he could not fight against Britain and he refused to join the American army. His neighbors were angry at this and seized all his stock. As soon as the war was over, Hooper set out to find a new home in Nova Scotia. He was made welcome, travelled round looking for a good location, and returned to New Jersey to fetch his family.

In his absence his neighbors pretended to believe that he had a British spy hidden on his farm, and wrecked his home. Mrs. Hooper, who had been ill, took cold and died. After his return Hooper was watched, but he managed to escape with his two sons, ten and nineteen years old. Ann, the eldest of his four daughters, bravely remained in charge of the farm, her three sisters and a baby brother.

Hooper and his sons reached Shelburne which was then being built. They worked and saved for two years and by that time had enough money to take up a farm at Bedeque, Prince Edward Island. The land was rich, fish and wild fowl were plentiful. They began to build a log cabin and Thomas wrote to Ann that they had a home again. Ann at once held a sale, and the family packed up. Sarah, the second daughter, married and remained in New Jersey. The others reached Bedeque safely. The rough little cabin in the bush was a poor place compared to their fine home in New Jersey, but they cared nothing for that in the joy of being all together again.

#### IV

##### THE LOYALISTS IN CANADA

##### (a) *Farmer Settlers*

In Loyalists days the name Canada meant the Province of Quebec which then included Ontario. As there were few settlers



west of Montreal, Canada had plenty of room for Loyalists and they began coming even before the Revolution was over.

The first party came in 1780. They had been driven out of the English Colonies and crossed to Fort Niagara. As there were no farms in Ontario then, food for the soldiers in the fort had to be brought from Montreal. This made it very expensive. Governor Haldimand saw at once how useful these Loyalist farmers would be and he settled them on the land round the fort. The Loyalists did not own the land, but they were to own and sell to the fort all that they grew upon it. With fertile soil and a sure market, the Niagara settlement did well. From the first the farmers accepted only half rations from the Government; the second year they accepted nothing. In the third, they grew more than the fort could use and begged to be allowed to buy their land and sell their extra produce to anyone. By 1784, there were 46 families in the Niagara settlement.

Another group to come to Ontario was the Iroquois; they, too, were Loyalists. They had been friends of the British for years and now followed them to Canada. Britain bought land for them in the Grand River Valley, and they settled there under their chief, Joseph Brant.

When the Revolution ended, thousands of Loyalists slipped



Food for Fort Niagara

across the boundary from Vermont into Quebec and more thousands escaped by the old trail down the Richelieu River. All through the bitterly cold winter of 1783-84, they streamed in, ragged and starving. By spring Quebec had 7,000 of them and Governor Haldimand was working tirelessly to find shelter, food and clothing for them. He settled most of them on the upper St. Lawrence; others made homes along the Richelieu. The majority of these people were farmers from Vermont, New York and Pennsylvania where the land is much the same as in Ontario. They suffered many hardships, but they were used to farm work and knew better than the eastern Loyalists how to make new homes in the bush.

By this time the Maritime Provinces were filling up, and Sir Guy Carleton turned to Ontario to find homes for the rest of the Loyalists. Someone told him that Michael Grass had been there, so Carleton sent for him to ask him what kind of country it was and if he thought that people could live there. Grass told him that he had been a prisoner of war among the French, and thought Ontario a fine country where people could live well. Carleton was delighted to hear this and asked Grass to lead a party of Loyalists to Fort Frontenac (Kingston). Grass agreed and left New York with seven ship loads of people. They camped at Sorel that winter. In the spring the men built boats and rowed and hauled them up the rapids to Kingston. They spent that summer surveying their lands, and



the next summer brought their wives, children and goods up from Sorel.

Then a Scottish regiment was disbanded and settled on the north shore of the St. Lawrence. They called their township "Glengarry". They soon had their lands cleared and were writing home advising their friends to come out to Canada where all men were free and each might be a laird with land of his own. In 1786, 500 friends and relatives, led by their minister, Alexander Macdonell, arrived. What a welcome they had: what tears, what handshakings, what news of home, what wise advice about Canada! Presently, a second party of over 1,000 arrived, with their priest, another Alexander Macdonell. The first party were Presbyterians, the second Roman Catholics, but they settled down together and in Glengarry their descendants live to this day.

Disbanded soldiers also took up farms on the Niagara and Detroit Rivers. In these ways Ontario came to have a thin line of farms stretching along its southern shores. By 1800, over a million acres of farm land had been granted.

### (b) *The Hungry Year*

The Government had promised the Loyalists rations of food for three years. In 1787 the three years were up for the first settlers and no rations were given them. As luck would have it, the crops in Ontario failed that summer. Game was scarce; even the fish seemed to have left the streams. The settlers faced starvation. The mothers made bread of bran. Beef bones were lent round the neighborhood and boiled again and again; roots and bark were cooked and eaten. As spring came on, buds from the trees, Indian cabbage, wild potatoes, butternuts, and pigweed were used. One family lived for two weeks on boiled beech leaves. The members of another family were almost too weak to walk when a deer wandered into their yard and the father managed to kill it.

At last, upon sunny slopes the early wheat headed out. Hope spread through the settlements. Many a family lived for weeks on boiled wheat or oat heads. That summer the crops were good; the bushes bent over with wild fruit; pigeons and ducks arrived in flocks; fish and game were plentiful again. It seemed as if nature was sorry for her harshness and was trying to make up to the Loyalists for their sufferings during the "Hungry Year".

## V

## THE LOYALISTS MAKE HOMES

(a) *Fashions in Houses*

The lives and work of the Loyalists were much the same wherever they settled. Getting a farm, finding it in the bush, hauling the family and household goods to it, were difficult tasks. The weary settlers usually arrived late after a long day's travel. When they had lighted a fire and had their supper, they went thankfully to sleep in the wagon or on spruce boughs cut for a bed. It was when they woke the next morning and faced the forest that the real fight began.

The first thing needed was shelter. First comers usually built a small log shanty, but as soon as possible this was replaced



First Shelters and Log Cabin

by a log house about 20 by 15 feet. The logs were notched at the ends and fitted into one another. The cracks between were then stuffed with moss, or the walls were plastered with clay inside and out. The first roof was often made of strips of bark tied to the roof poles; better ones were of hand-made shingles. Floors were made of earth, or of logs squared with the axe. Doors and windows were often just holes with a blanket in the doorway and oiled paper in the windows. Fireplaces were used for cooking and heating; they were large with hearths of flat stone. Chimneys were hollow towers of three-inch sticks plastered inside and out. A ladder was placed on the roof so that when the chimney caught fire, it could be put out quickly.

As soon as the shanty was up, the settler began to clear his land. Some "ringed" their trees and let them stand till they died. This was slow. Most men felled the trees, let them lie till they were dry and then burned them. A good chopper could clear an acre in a week. When an acre or two of trees had been felled, the family gave a "logging bee". The neighbors came with their ox-teams and piled the logs to be burned. They left the stumps for the farmer to burn and dig and haul out as best he could. It took years to get them all out.

(b) *Fashions in Food and Clothing*

A plough was promised to every two Loyalist families, but all freight was slow to reach Ontario. Many early settlers prepared the land between the stumps with a hoe. Others made ploughs for themselves out of forked oak branches. The blacksmith shod them with iron and the ox dragged them up and down the stumpy field. Harrows, too, were made of wood and at first had wooden teeth. The farmer sowed his seed from a box strapped in front of him. The ripened grain was cut with a sickle or reaping hook; raked, bound and stooked by hand; and threshed with a flail.



The next problem was to get it ground into flour. The Government asked settlers who had a stream on their land to build saw and grist mills, but not many of those who had streams could afford to build mills. Most early settlers ground their grain in a hardwood block, or with a hand-mill. Many a pioneer carried his first sack of wheat, ten, twenty, even forty miles on his back to have it ground in a grist mill.

For the first three years the Loyalists had government rations and, after the "Hungry Year" was over, nearly everyone had plenty to eat. By that time most men had a few acres cleared and in crop. The wheat, ground by hand, made whole wheat flour that was baked into bread in an iron kettle set in the fireplace and covered with hot coals. Cornmeal was much used because it was easier to grind than wheat. It was made into bread, porridge, puddings, and johnny cake, delicious with maple syrup or wild honey. Beef and mutton were scarce for there was little feed for stock, but pork was plentiful because pigs fed in the woods. Pork and potatoes were eaten at every meal. Milk and butter were scarce; most people spread their bread with pork drippings. Tea was very expensive and most Loyalists used hemlock or sassafras leaves, or drank whiskey which was cheap. By 1800, many settlers had orchards. Governor and Mrs. Simcoe had cherries and peaches in the orchard at Government House.

Most Loyalist women could spin, weave, knit and sew, but at first it was difficult to get materials. When their clothes wore out they made new ones by piecing old ones together, or from deerskin or fur. After they began to grow flax and keep sheep, they made their own materials.



Sowing by Hand

(c) *Fashions in Fun: Bees*

A bee was a gathering of the neighbors that began with work and ended with a meal and a dance. Bees were the means by which the settlers helped each other to do work that a single family could hardly do for itself. There were many kinds: logging, ploughing, house-raising, corn husking, quilting, apple paring bees. Among rough people a good deal of whiskey was drunk and sometimes not much work was done; but among decent people a bee was a pleasant neighborhood party and the commonest form of entertainment for young and old.

The paring bee was held after the apples were harvested. The guests found benches and stools drawn up round the kitchen table and they seated themselves girls and boys alternately. The young men peeled the apples and handed them to their partners who quartered and cored them. The sons and daughters of the house were kept busy bringing up baskets of apples from the cellar and passing the quarters to the children. They sat by the fire-place with darning needles threaded with long strong threads upon which they strung the quarters. When



A Quilting Bee

a thread was full it was handed to the mistress who hung it to dry across racks placed near the ceiling. Fifteen or twenty bushels of apples were sometimes pared at a bee, enough to supply the family with sweet, dark brown, dried-apple sauce and dried-apple pies for the winter.

When the apples were finished, the girls washed their hands in the juicy mass of cores and skins, which they thought would make them white. Lunch was then served: bread and meat or cheese, pumpkin pies, cakes, apple cider. The party then divided into two groups, one for dancing and the other, those who did not approve of dancing, for games. Bees usually broke up before midnight, for in those days, farmers rose at four in the morning.

## VI

### BRITISH NORTH AMERICA

Britain had lost the United States, but she had now five provinces on the River and Gulf of St. Lawrence. The Americans had been so bitter against the Loyalists that the British Government thought it might be safer to unite the five provinces for defence. This was done in 1786. Sir Guy Carleton, who was now Lord Dorchester, was appointed Governor-General over this new "British North America".<sup>2</sup> The Governors of the different provinces then became Lieutenant-Governors, as they are today. The union was only a name, for Canada could not work closely with the Maritime Provinces; they were too far apart. Almost 700 miles of wilderness separated Quebec and Halifax, and there was still no road between them. The easiest way to go from one to the other was by boat and that took two or three weeks. Still, the union called British North America is important because it was a first step towards our modern Canada.

<sup>2</sup> Our country, Canada, was called British North America for 81 years.

As the Ontario Loyalist cleared his land, planted his crops and put up better buildings on his farm, he began to feel that it was his home and he wanted to own it by law. British people like to own their land, but in Canada in those days they could not, because the Quebec Act said that the people of Canada must use French laws about property. Now French property law, as you remember, made the farmer hold his land as a renter, or tenant, from a seigneur. There were no seigneurs in Ontario, so the settlers held their farms as tenants under the king. The Loyalists did not like this; they wanted to own their farms.

Also, they disliked being governed by a Governor and Council. They were used to electing a legislature to make their own laws. Each of the Maritime Provinces had one; it was only fair that Ontario should have one. The people began to ask to have Ontario separated from Quebec and made a new province with a Lieutenant-Governor and an elected legislature of its own. The people of Quebec objected to this.

Between the two, the British Government hardly knew what to do. In the end the matter was settled by Canada's need of money. After the American Revolution, Britain agreed that no one should be taxed except by a legislature that he had voted to elect. She had tried to tax the English Colonies and lost them. She did not want to lose Canada, so she did not tax her, but all these years had been paying part of Canada's expenses out of her own pocket. It was thought that Canada should now begin to pay her own bills, and the only way to get the money was to have her elect a legislature to make her own tax laws.

So, in 1791, the British Government made a new law for Canada. It was called the "Constitutional Act". It divided Canada into two provinces, Upper and Lower Canada (Ontario and Quebec) and gave each of them a Lieutenant-Governor,



an Executive Council, and a Legislative Council, appointed by the king; and a legislature elected by the people. Ontario was very pleased with this. Colonel John Simcoe was appointed her Lieutenant-Governor. He opened the Government offices at Niagara, but soon moved them to Toronto, which the Loyalists called York. An election was held and the new legislature of 16 members met in September, 1792.

Mrs. Simcoe, who was a clever, lively lady, says that this very small legislature was opened with as much ceremony as if it had had 600 members. The Governor appeared in his scarlet and gold uniform. Mrs. Simcoe wore a beautiful gown of white satin embroidered with wreaths of flowers. The members were in formal black; the ladies and gentlemen who came to look on, all in their best. It was a very grand affair. When the legislature met, the 16 members at once passed a law bringing in English property law so that the people of Ontario could own their land. They knew that when they owned their land, the farmers would take better care of it. They made seven other laws and finished the first session in four weeks.

## VII

### NEWFOUNDLAND'S DIFFICULTIES

Newfoundland was not given an elected legislature like Ontario and the Maritime Provinces, but about this time she



Opening of Early Parliament, Niagara



began to work towards one. She advanced slowly for she had many difficulties to overcome.

Before the American Revolution Newfoundland and the English Colonies had always been good friends; they traded freely and Newfoundland depended upon the Colonies for her food supplies. But when the Colonies rebelled, Newfoundland took Britain's side. Then the American Government forbade its people to trade with Britain or any of her colonies. This cut off Newfoundland's food and brought her to the verge of starvation. Ships were hurried off to Britain and Ireland for supplies, but the people suffered terribly before they returned, and it was some years before they could get food regularly from these countries.

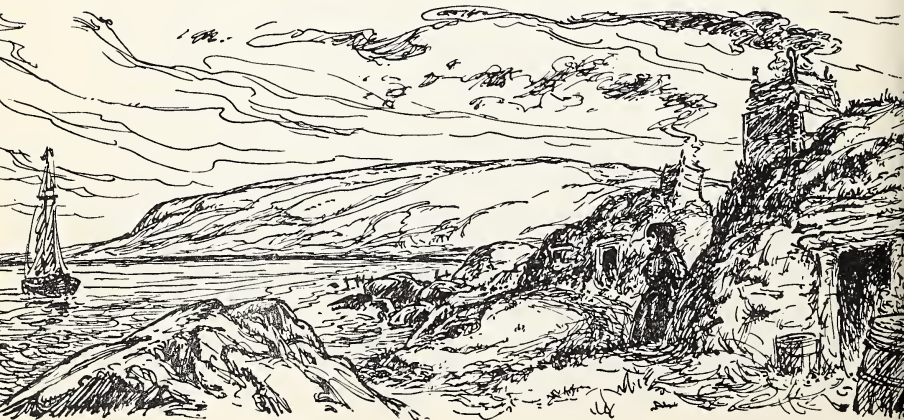
After the war, the Treaty of Paris gave the Americans the right to fish in Newfoundland waters and to dry their catches on Labrador. They did this, and competed in the West Indian market until the Newfoundlanders were almost ruined. At last Britain put a duty on American fish entering the British West Indies and the Newfoundlanders got their trade back again.

Another difficulty with which the Newfoundlanders had to struggle was the credit system under which they sold their fish. It was the same system as the fur-traders used with the Indians. The merchants gave each fisherman the supplies he needed for himself and family during the fishing season on credit. When the season was over, the fisherman took his fish to the merchant to pay his debt. When he added up the bill, the merchant charged the fisherman a high price for his supplies and gave him a low price for his fish. Because of this the fisherman was usually in debt to the merchants and so had to live on whatever poor food, clothing and fishing equipment they would give him.

Housing was another serious problem. The population of the island was growing, and the old laws forbidding the people

to build houses without permission still stood. Some put up rough shacks close to other buildings, or in a hidden spot, and trusted that the Governor would not notice their poor homes. Others built while he was absent in the winter, hoping against hope that when he returned he would not be so cruel as to order their buildings destroyed.

As most Newfoundlanders were forced to live without fields, gardens, or proper homes, and as they had little to do in the winter, it is not surprising that there was a good deal of drunkenness and crime among them. The Governors did their best to keep order, but they had a constant struggle with the fishing admirals, the merchants, and even with their own magistrates. The magistrates had no salaries, but were paid out of the fines which they made the criminals pay. Naturally they made the fines as large as possible. Rich men who had committed a crime, but who could pay a big fine, were set free; while poor men who could not pay much were thrown into prison. This went on until 1791, when Chief Justice Reeves came to Newfoundland and opened a Supreme Court. Judge Reeves treated rich and poor alike and saw that justice was done to all. This was a great



Rough Shacks Were Built in Hidden Spots

step forward; from that date Newfoundland began to work towards a government of her own.

. . . . .

British North America also had great difficulties to face. She was getting the people she needed; for eight years the Loyalists had been pouring into the provinces. Yet things did not look very hopeful for them. On one side stood Britain. Since she had defeated France in the Seven Years' War, she was the strongest nation in the world; but she was busy building up her navy and her trade in many countries. She was kind to the French Canadians and the Loyalists, but she did not think that Canada would be of much use to her. Indeed she thought that the Americans would probably take her in the end. On the other side stood the United States. They were already strong and rich, but they still disagreed about several important things. One of them was whether or not they should take Canada. The inland states wanted to take her.

Between the two stood the British Provinces, young, small, and poor, not yet steady on their feet. Their people were scattered in a thin line from Halifax to Detroit; their Governments were too far apart to work together. The French Canadians were living comfortably enough in Quebec; but the Loyalists, the "Displaced Persons" of those days, were working desperately to make a living in the bush and along the shores. It did not look as if British North America had much chance to become a country. But wait till you hear what happened.



## Chapter Thirteen

### BRITISH NORTH AMERICA GETS A FOOTHOLD

1791 — 1814

THE next 20 were wonderful years for young Canada, British North America, as she was called then. During those years a number of exciting things happened. The British Provinces had three big chances to prove what they could do and they succeeded with all three. By 1814, the Canada-that-was-to-be had her foot in at the doorway of the world.

#### I

##### THE NOR' WESTERS WIN BRITISH COLUMBIA

##### (a) *Simon Fraser Explores the "Impassable River"*

One big chance the Canadians took was to carry the fur trade over the Rocky Mountains.

Through the 1790's not much was done about Mackenzie's great plan to bring in goods by Hudson Bay and take out furs by the Pacific. Old Simon McTavish, the head of the North West Company, disapproved of the plan because it would take the fur trade away from Montreal. Then the partners, who had been quarreling, split into two companies and for several years there was bitter war between them. At last McTavish died and the two groups united again; the new North West Company

was stronger than ever. They had not yet obtained a charter, or permission to use the short, cheap Hudson Bay route, but Duncan McGillivray, the new chairman, approved of Mackenzie's plan.

Also the eastern beaver fields were thinning, so they decided to risk the expense and begin trade west of the mountains. In 1804 they sent Simon Fraser to open the new department and to explore Mackenzie's "Great River" which they all thought was the Columbia.

Fraser was the son of a Loyalist, brought up by his widowed mother at Cornwall, Ontario. He was a stoutly-built young fellow who loved a joke. He had begun working for the Company at 16 and become a partner at 26. He was in Athabasca when his orders came and he wasted no time. James McDougall, his clerk, had already been through the mountains so, with McDougall as guide, and 17 men, Fraser paddled up the Peace and followed Mackenzie's route through the Rockies. After looking the ground over, they built their post on McLeod Lake. On his way back, Fraser built another post at Rocky Mountain Portage, now Hudson's Hope, just east of the range, to be the base for taking supplies through to the new department.

When McDougall reported that there were many Indians in the Stuart Lake country, Fraser decided to open a post there. Chief Kwah of the Carrier<sup>1</sup> tribe welcomed them and they presented his Indians with tobacco and the squaws with cakes of soap. Both at once tasted their presents. The braves spat out the bitter tobacco and the soap made the squaws foam at the mouth. When the shrieks of terror and laughter had been quieted, the white men taught the red men how to use these gifts.

<sup>1</sup> This tribe was called "Carriers" because the women carried the ashes of their dead husbands about with them in leather wallets.



Fraser's Journey



The Carriers lived on the salmon which came up their rivers every summer, and there were plenty of beaver, so the Nor'-Westers built Fort St. James. They nearly starved while doing it for the salmon were late that year, but they came up at last and Indians and white men feasted together. Two canoe-loads of goods came through the next year and business began in the new department. Fraser called it New Caledonia.

He was now free to explore the Great River. He built Fort George as a base and began collecting dried salmon and goods to trade for other supplies along the way. In May, 1808, with his friend, Stuart, and 22 men in four canoes, he set out on his dangerous journey. The river grew wilder as they advanced and presently they came to a canyon with steep, rocky walls through which the stream boiled at terrific speed. It seemed impossible to portage, so Fraser chose five of his best voyageurs to run a canoe through the rapids. Below the first rapid the canoe was tossed about like a leaf in a whirlpool, but the men managed to get her out and run two more rapids. Then another whirlpool caught her and threw her against the bank. With split second speed, the voyageurs jumped and held her. The others, still in terror for their friends, cut a track down the steep bank, let down a rope, and with the greatest difficulty and danger hauled men and canoe to the top. This was only one of their hairbreadth escapes.

Lower down stream they were forced to store the canoes and proceed on foot. Each man carried an 80-pound pack on his back, and a four days' tramp brought them to the mouth of the river that Fraser named for his friend David, the Thompson. The Indians there were very friendly; Fraser says that he shook hands with 1,200 of them. They gave him a canoe in which

the voyageurs carried the heaviest goods while the traders went forward on foot.

As they neared the sea, Fraser took observations of the sun to find out where they were. Imagine their amazement when he discovered that they were 200 miles north of the mouth of the Columbia. Theirs was a different river, the one now called the Fraser. The Coast Indians were so hostile that the party was forced to turn back before reaching the sea. This was disappointing, but Fraser had completed his work. He had taken possession of central and southern British Columbia and had proved two things about his river: it was not the Columbia; and it was not suitable for transporting goods and furs. For his great achievement, Fraser was promoted to command the Red River Department. The king wished to make him a knight, but Fraser refused the honor; he felt that he could not afford it. When he retired he returned to Cornwall where he lived to be 86.

(b) *David Thompson Outwits the Piegans*

Meantime David Thompson had been working through the mountains into southern British Columbia. Thompson was a short, dark, pug-nosed man with flashing dark eyes and two great gifts; he was a wonderful story-teller and one of the greatest geographers who ever lived. He was born in 1770, in London, in a poor family. A friend got him into a free school where he studied geography and mathematics for seven years. When he was 14 he was bound apprentice to the Hudson's Bay Company for seven years more.

While the Loyalists were settling Canada, young David was learning the fur-trading business under Samuel Hearne at Churchill. He became a successful trader, but his heart belonged

to science. He was only 16 when he made his first survey and he proved to be a genius at surveying and map-making. He surveyed much of Western Canada and his maps are still useful. More than that, Thompson studied the country he surveyed, its lakes and rivers; its plants, animals and people. He made many sketches of the Indians and described their clever ways of fishing and hunting. His diaries are among the most valuable books yet written about Western Canada.

The Hudson's Bay Company wanted Thompson to be a trader not a surveyor, so when his seven years with them were up, he walked 45 miles to the nearest North West Company post and joined them.

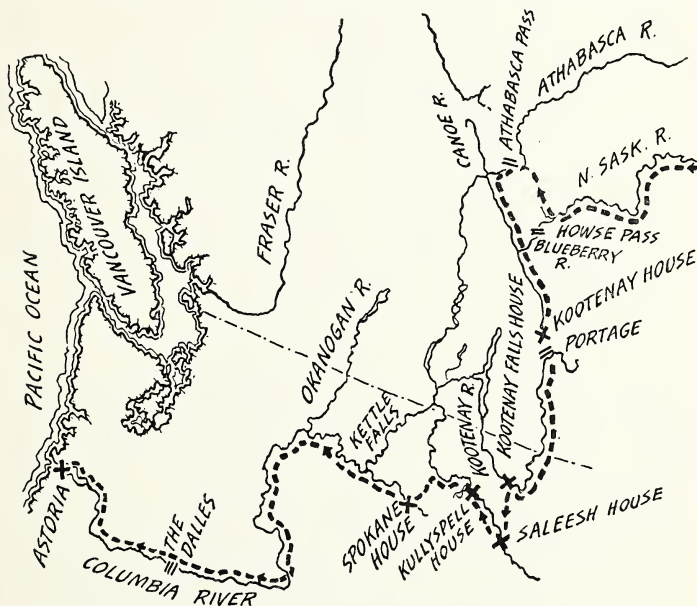
The Nor' Westers were delighted to get him. They needed a surveyor to mark the boundary line between Canada and the new United States, from Lake Superior to the Lake of the Woods, so that they would know in which country their trading-posts were. Thompson did this and discovered that Grand Portage was in the United States. This was a blow. Luckily Roderick Mackenzie had already found a new route from Lake Superior to Lake Winnipeg. It ran up the Kaministiquia River. Near



Thompson at the Summit of Athabasca Pass

its mouth the Company built Fort William, their handsome new headquarters.

When Thompson had finished his survey of the boundary, the North West Company sent him into southern British Columbia to begin trade with the Kootenay Indians and to explore the Columbia River. The American explorers, Lewis and Clark,



Thompson's Exploration of the Columbia River

had already crossed the continent and reached the mouth of the Columbia, but they had not built a fort there. It was important that the Canadians should build their post first so as to lay a claim to that country. But Thompson was a scientist; he could not hurry over his work.

In 1806, a trail was cut through the Howse Pass from

Rocky Mountain House; but the next year when Thompson went up, the Piegiens refused to let him use it for trade. They told Thompson that, much as they liked him, they would kill him if he took guns in to their enemies, the Kootenays. Then two Piegiens were murdered on the Missouri and the warriors rode south seeking revenge. Thompson and his men slipped through the pass. By canoe and pack horse they went down the Blueberry River to the Big Bend of the Columbia. There they built boats and paddled up to Lake Windermere where they built Kootenay House. When the Piegiens returned they sent, first a small force which besieged the new post, and then a strong one to destroy it. Thompson held Kootenay House against the small party, and bought off the large one with rich presents of tobacco. After that trade went on smoothly for two years, while Thompson explored, surveyed, and built trading posts in country that is now the United States.

(c) *"Slow and Steady" Loses the Race*

In 1810, he went down to Fort William with the fur brigade. By this time the Nor' Westers had heard that the Pacific Fur Company of New York was planning to build a trading post at the mouth of the Columbia. The big American Company was a keen competitor of the Canadians. The Nor' Westers turned Thompson right about face and hurried him back to explore his river, take possession of the country for Britain, and build a post before the Americans arrived. But bad luck dogged Thompson. When he reached the mountains, he found the Piegiens guarding the pass. They had just been beaten in battle by the Kootenays with their new guns, and they refused to let Thompson through again. The traders turned north and cut and snowshoed their way through the Athabasca Pass to the Columbia. It was a long way round and a heart-breaking journey. It made them very late.



Even then, if he had been able to turn downstream at once, Thompson would have reached the mouth of the river in time. But only three of his men were willing to risk the long river trip. He had to build a boat and return upstream to his posts to pick up more men. Hurrying now in earnest, he portaged to the Kootenay and then by pack horse and canoe into the Columbia at Kettle Falls. On July 3, with eight Canadians and four Indians, he set forth at last down the great river. Twelve days paddling brought them to its mouth. Flying the Union Jack, they shot round the last bend—too late! The Americans were there with their fort, Astoria, half built.

Thompson found Duncan McDougall, an old friend, in charge of Fort Astoria and the Canadians were kindly received. After a short visit, they turned homeward; and this time Thompson travelled all the way by the Columbia, completing his survey of its 13,048 miles. The North West Company must have been bitterly disappointed by Thompson's failure to reach the mouth of the Columbia first, but they did not reproach him. They gave him a retiring allowance and he settled down happily near Montreal with his family and his maps. He lived to be 87, and died blind, poor, and forgotten. But modern Canadians are proud of his greatness and have placed a monument over his grave in Montreal, and built a memorial to him on Lake Windermere near his Kootenay House.

Although Thompson had been late at the mouth of the Columbia, he had surveyed that great river, much of the prairie country, and important parts of British Columbia, Montana, Idaho and Washington. The North West Company had taken the chance; the traders, Mackenzie, Fraser and Thompson had won British Columbia from the Russians and Americans to become a province of Canada.

## II

### THE SECOND WAVE OF SETTLERS

#### (a) *The Displaced Scots*

All this time the Maritime Provinces and Canada had kept on growing rapidly. The Loyalists had hardly settled themselves before a flood of displaced Scottish people began arriving in the Maritimes. At that time the owners of great estates in Scotland were driving the tenants off their lands and making them into runs for sheep which were very profitable. Scotland was filled with displaced families, and charitable people arranged to send groups of them to British North America. They were crowded into wretched ships, shut below decks, without fresh air and with very little food. Many fell sick and many died on the long voyage across the Atlantic. Between 1801 and 1805 two and three ships a day sailed with them from Scotland for Nova Scotia. In one year 1,300 Scots came to Pictou county. They settled also in Prince Edward Island and along the Gulf shore from Chaleur Bay to Cape Breton where over 25,000 found homes.

These poor people had not wanted to leave Scotland, but in Nova Scotia they found themselves on land of their own. Think what that must have meant to people who had been driven off rented farms. The blue waters of the Gulf, the beautiful hills and valleys of Cape Breton reminded them that this was Nova Scotia, *New Scotland*. They lifted up their heads and, singing their proud Highland songs, they seized their axes. Quickly they built cabins, quickly cleared a small field for potatoes. Fish were plentiful and fish and potatoes made plain but nourishing food. The second year there was a new clearing for the potatoes while oats to make porridge, and wheat to make flour for bread grew in the first fields. From the first day, they were better off than they had been in Scotland.

The most famous person helping the Scots to come to British North America was Alexander Selkirk. His father was an earl, but Alexander was the youngest of seven sons. As he had no hope of inheriting the estate, he went to college to prepare himself to earn his living. At college he joined a club where the young men discussed social problems, and Selkirk became greatly interested in the welfare of the common people. As it turned out, all his brothers died and at his father's death he became the Earl of Selkirk. Wishing to use his money and power to help the poor, he took the lead in sending his displaced countrymen to the colonies. He took up a large grant of land in Prince Edward Island, and settled 800 people on it. This colony was a great success.

*(b) More United Empire Loyalists*

Scots settled in Canada also, but again most of her new settlers were Loyalists. Both Quebec and Ontario had invited them to come, and now that they could own their land in Canada, many came. In Quebec they settled chiefly in the Eastern townships. In Ontario, Governor Simcoe placed them along the military highways he had laid out: Dundas Street running east and west through Toronto, and Yonge Street running north from the capital.

When a group of German people in Pennsylvania decided to move to Canada, they sent Joseph Schorg and Samuel Betzner to look for land for them. Schorg and Betzner chose farms on the Grand River near Preston, and brought



their families over. Other families joined them and the settlement was doing well when the settlers were horrified to learn that there was a \$20,000 mortgage on their lands. In great alarm they sent Samuel Bricker to borrow money from their friends in Pennsylvania, to pay off the mortgage. The friends at first refused to lend so large a sum, but Bricker made them such a fine speech that in the end they collected 20,000 silver dollars for him, and he brought them home to Waterloo County in a tin trunk under the seat of his buggy.

So, by families and by communities the second wave of settlers filled the gaps between the first settlements and formed a second row of farms along the frontier. By 1812, there were 75,000 people living between Montreal and the Detroit River.

### III

#### THEIR TRANSPORTATION WAS TERRIBLE

##### (a) *Bateaux, Durham Boats, and Bad Roads*

The ships that brought settlers to the Maritimes were small, unsafe, and unsanitary, but they set their passengers down near their new homes. For those going to Canada, the St. Lawrence was still the main highway. Ocean going ships went up to Quebec. Above that passengers and light goods were carried in canoes, heavy freight in bateaux. There were only two roads: the post road from Quebec to Montreal with inns and post horses for hire; and the road from Montreal to Albany which was still little better than a cart track. Immigrants from Maine and Vermont to Quebec had to walk or ride many miles through the woods to cross the boundary line; and all those who settled in Ontario had to make a long, hard trip by bateau or Durham boat, and then through the woods afoot or on horseback. The trip from Montreal to Kingston took from 12 to 14 days. Goods

and passengers were carried in carts round the rapids to Lachine where they took a bateau. At the Cascades and the Long Sault rapids, the bateau had to be unloaded and goods and passengers portaged in carts, while the men towed the boat upstream. At the Coteau rapid there was a lock which lifted them up to quiet water.

Neither bateau nor Durham boat had any shelter and, says Patrick Sheriff, "men, women, and children were huddled together as close as captives in a slave ship, exposed to the sun's rays by day and the river damp at night". The heat, damp, and the drinking of river water caused much sickness.

"From Kingston, travellers went on to the Bay of Quinte on horseback. From there a white man guided them to the River Trent where they were given a fresh horse and an Indian guide to conduct them through the unsettled part of the country". Later, Governor Simcoe's troops "opened" Dundas and Yonge Streets; that is they cut through the woods tracks full of fallen logs, roots of trees, and pools of water.

"I have lately had the misfortune to ride on the roads of this district," writes an angry traveller in 1801, "and my escape from broken neck, legs and arms has been miraculous . . . . wagons breaking down, falling into gullies and bridgeless creeks . . . the women and children wading through. If the inhabitants have not enough public spirit to keep their roads passable, the law ought to make them do it."

Like the roads, the transport was poor and irregular. Stages were wagons with boards for seats. Taverns were dirty and crowded, four to ten people sleeping in one room. The food, chiefly fried pork and tea, was plentiful but expensive.

(b) *"Wooden Wagons" on the Lakes*

Ships on the lakes and river increased rapidly to take care of the Loyalists and their growing trade. Bateaux and

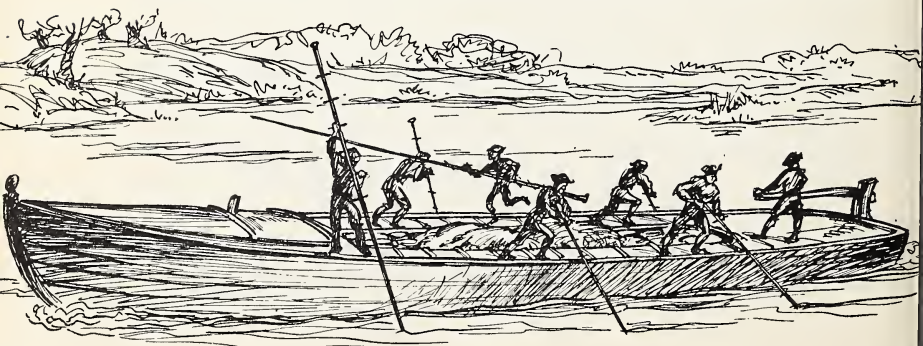


Durham boats were still used, but by 1800, Kingston, Belleville and other lake ports were busy building "wooden wagons", large cheap boats used to carry goods up and down the lakes. Steam came in 1809. The first steamer, the Accommodation, seemed a magic ship to the people of those days. She made the trip from Montreal to Quebec in 36 hours. Britain now had a line of fast passenger and mail ships calling weekly at Boston and New York, but only "seekers" came up the St. Lawrence. Seekers were "tramp" ships, old cargo boats, roaming from port to port, seeking whatever freight they could find. In those days the journey from Britain to Canada took from six to 12 weeks.

## IV

## THE BIG CHANCE IN TRADE

By this time most of the Loyalists were making a fair living. Considering that they had started with nothing, it is amazing how much they had accomplished in 20 years. The new soil was so rich that in spite of poor tools, poor methods of farming, and little care to fertilize their fields, by 1800 nearly all the settlers were growing good crops. They traded their wheat, pork, butter and eggs at the village store for the tea, sugar, cloth, tools and other goods they needed. Some



Durham Boat

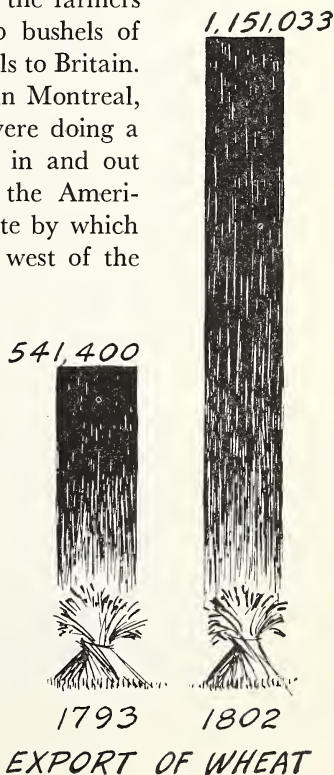
of the storekeepers helped the farmers; but others "squeezed" them by giving them low prices for their produce and charging them high prices for the goods.

(a) *Wheat and Timber*

In Quebec and Ontario wheat was the main export crop. They were now growing enough to feed themselves and the Maritime Provinces, with some over for Britain. She would not allow the colonies to sell their wheat to any other country, and would buy it herself only when her own crop was poor, so there were some years when the farmers had no market. In other years the demand was good and the farmers prospered. In 1801, Canada sold 30,000 bushels of wheat to the Maritimes, and 660,000 bushels to Britain.

The fur trade, with its headquarters in Montreal, was flourishing. The "wooden wagons" were doing a valuable carrying trade, freighting goods in and out for the North West Company, and for the Americans. The St. Lawrence was the only route by which the new American settlements south and west of the Great Lakes could export their produce and import supplies. Timber rafts carried down their wheat, flour, and potash, and rafts as well as goods were sold in Quebec. Wooden wagons brought their goods up the lakes. Trade flowed up and down the great waterway in a growing stream; between 1806 and 1810, an average of \$16,000,000 worth of goods a year was carried up to the American settlements.

Already Quebec and New Brunswick were turning to lumbering. In 1800, Philemon Wright led a party of 30 American



settlers up the Ottawa, their horses and oxen pulling their goods on sleighs over the ice. They founded what is now Hull, Quebec. Wright went into lumbering and took the first raft down the river. Other men followed him; the fur-trading river became the timber river and the voyageur gave way to the raftsmen. The logs were cut in the winter and built into rafts on the ice. When it melted, the raftsmen guided them down to Montreal or Quebec where they were sold. In New Brunswick, the Loyalist lumbermen were cutting into the great white pine forests on the Saint John and Miramichi Rivers, and saw-mills had sprung up in all directions.

"The number of sawmills erected is very great," writes William Donaldson. "The noble prospects this country opens for lumber are not to be equalled in any of the States."

This was true. The magnificent forests of New Brunswick, the Ottawa, Northern Quebec and Ontario, were one of Canada's richest resources. Canadians of those days saw no end to them, gloried in them, sang and shouted as they chopped the trees down without a thought of conservation or replacement. As they were cleared, the rainfall lessened, marshes dried up, rivers grew smaller, higher land had now not enough moisture. Canada was left poorer in both forest and field.

#### (b) *The British Provinces Leap Into the Breach*

Then an exciting thing happened. France declared war on Britain, and Napoleon, the great French general, forbade the other countries of Europe to trade with her. Britain had thought the British Provinces of little use. Suddenly she needed all the wheat, meat, timber and ships they could send her, just as she needed them in World Wars I and II. Then, as in our own day, Canadian farmers grew bigger crops, lumbermen and ship builders increased their output. Americans in the States south of the boundary joined in eagerly. Rafts and sleigh-trains of

wheat, provisions, and lumber raced to Montreal and Quebec where both the rafts and their loads were shipped to Britain as Canadian. Quebec and the ports of the Maritime Provinces had been building ships for years. Their men were trained, their shipyards ready, and they turned out great numbers of cheaply built ships to carry the timber and provisions to Britain.

Before the American Revolution, the English Colonies had been doing a big trade with the British West Indies. After the United States separated from her, Britain did her best to throw this trade to the Maritime Provinces, and they did their best to capture it. They had fine fish and lumber and the ships to carry their products to the West Indies. They did get a share of that trade, but they did not produce enough food stuffs to supply the islands. The United States smuggled in grain and pork, seizing that part of the trade.

As the war between France and Britain grew hotter, the United States began to fear that she might be drawn into it. To prevent this, Congress passed a law which said that all American ships must remain in their ports. This left Nova Scotia without competition in the West Indies and she leaped into the breach. Imagine how the American traders gnashed their teeth as they watched the Maritime ships sweeping by their doors, while they kicked their heels in port.



Timbers for Britain

The boom in trade passed, but the British Provinces had shown Britain how useful they could be. They now stood boldly in the doorway of the world.

## V

### BRITISH NORTH AMERICA DEFENDS HERSELF

#### (a) *How It Began*

France, led by Napoleon, had now been trying to conquer the other nations of Europe for almost 20 years and only Britain was left to fight against her. The United States had been afraid that she would be drawn into this war and in the end she joined France. Many Americans did not want to attack Britain while she fought for the freedom of Europe, but others did. They were angry because Britain had been stopping American ships at sea and searching them for deserting British sailors. Also the American settlers in the west believed that the Canadian fur traders were encouraging the Indians to attack them, and they wanted to take Canada. They felt sure that they could take Ontario, because most of the settlers there were Americans who would, they thought, fight on their side. In the end the war party won and the United States declared war against Britain.

The Americans were most anxious to drive the British out of Canada, so they sent their armies against Ontario and Quebec. Canada had neither an army nor a navy; and Britain, who was at the climax of her fight against Napoleon, could send her little help. But in Ontario the American settlers did not rise to aid their countrymen; and in Quebec French and British fought together against the invader. In all the provinces Canadians joined the small British regular forces to defend the country. No serious attack was made against the Maritime Provinces, so Newfoundland sent troops to help Canada, and a New Brunswick force



marched all the way to Quebec on snowshoes to help her sister provinces. In Quebec, Colonel de Salaberry organized the Voltigeurs (Vol ti jours); and on the St. Lawrence "Red George" Macdonell drilled the Glengarrys. General Isaac Brock commanded the forces in Ontario.

General Brock is one of Canada's heroes. By his boldness, courage, skill as a soldier, and lovable personality, he did more than anyone else to save Ontario. He was born in Guernsey, a small island in the English Channel, the eighth son in a family of 14. He joined the army at 15 and was one of the finest swimmers and boxers in it. He fought under Nelson at Copenhagen,<sup>2</sup> and afterwards was sent to Canada. He used the years before war broke out to plan the defence of the country

<sup>2</sup> Nelson was the famous British admiral who, when ordered to retreat, put the telescope to his blind eye so as not to see the signal, fought on, and won a great victory.



General Sir Isaac Brock

and to win the confidence of his soldiers, the people, and the Indians. It is said that when Brock met Tecumseh, the famous Chief of the Shawnees, the chief looked long at the General, tall, fairhaired, handsome in his uniform of scarlet and gold. Then he turned to his warriors and said, "This is a man." The two great leaders shook hands and were friends from that moment.

(b) *What Happened*

When war was declared in June 1812, General Brock's army was small and he was short of money and supplies, but he attacked boldly. He ordered the capture of Mackinac and he himself struck at Detroit.

Captain Roberts, in charge opposite Mackinac had only a few soldiers, but the North West Company sent him a band of expert voyageurs and Indians. They raced across the strait and surprised Mackinac which surrendered without a fight.

Meantime American armies had been gathering at Detroit, Niagara, and south of Montreal. Had the first two attacked together, they might have pinched off western Ontario. Luckily they did not. With the help of Tecumseh and his Indians, Brock captured Detroit and returned to Niagara before the American army there advanced. Early on October 13, in a storm of rain, they began crossing the river. Many of their boats were sunk or driven back, but some 300 men managed to climb the heights at Queenston. Brock at the head of a small force charged up the steep slope to dislodge them. The enemy at once noticed his tall figure and shot him.

Though Sir Isaac Brock died so early in the war, his spirit inspired the British and Canadians to the end of it. "Avenge the General" was their battle cry till victory was won. He was buried in Fort George while Americans as well as Canadians fired the solemn minute guns in his honor. Later, the men who had fought

under him built him a magnificent monument on Queenston Heights. There he sleeps today with his friend, Colonel Macdonell, killed in the same battle, beside him.

Brock was avenged even on the day of his death. As the news spread up and down the Canadian lines, every man "gave it to them hot and heavy for the chief". General Sheaffe marched the British and Canadians round behind the Heights, hemmed the Americans in against the river and forced them to surrender. The army aimed against Montreal retired after a short fight, so Canada ended 1812 the victor on all fronts.

We were not so fortunate in 1813. The Americans made the same plan as before, except that this year the Niagara army was divided: half remained at Niagara and half worked with their fleet out of Sackett's Harbor at the eastern end of Lake Ontario. In the west, the Canadians were beaten in a naval battle on Lake Erie and a land battle at Moraviantown where Tecumseh was killed; and the Sackett's Harbor force captured Toronto. But on the Niagara front, the Americans were defeated at Stoney Creek and Beaver Dams.<sup>3</sup> We won also in the east. The Americans had planned to have their eastern and Sackett's Harbor armies unite to take Montreal. Colonel de Salaberry led his Voltigeurs to meet the eastern army which was approaching along the Châteauguay (Shat a gay) River. He had only a small force, but he scattered his buglers widely through the woods with orders to sound their bugles continually. This made the Americans think he had a large army and they retired. Meantime, Colonel Morrison had caught up with the Sackett's Harbor force at Crysler's Farm and after a sharp fight drove it from the field. All the American armies now retired to their winter quarters.

<sup>3</sup> It was at Beaver Dams that Laura Secord saved the Canadian army. Overhearing the Americans planning the attack, she walked 20 miles through the bush to warn the Canadians. You should read that story.

*(c) The Privateers*

Meantime the Maritime Provinces were helping the British fleet to blockade the coast of the United States and so cut down her trade. Dozens of privateers swarmed out of the Maritime ports to capture American cargo ships. The Maritime captains boldly attacked ships three or four times as large as their own. They followed them almost into their home harbors and seized them under the very guns of the enemy ports. American privateers did the same to Maritime ships. A hundred exciting stories are told of the fights and captures of those days.

The most famous of the Maritime privateers was the *Liverpool Packet*. She was a small ship, carrying only five guns, but she was very fast. As soon as she was ready, her captain and his dare-devil crew sailed for the traffic lane used by the European-Boston ships. They had not long to wait. The morning sun revealed a cargo ship six times as large as the *Packet* heading directly towards them. The *Packet* sent a shot across her bows. The big ship knew what that meant and surrendered forthwith. Lieutenant John Barss had just sent a crew aboard to take her into Liverpool, when a second American ship came sailing up. The Canadians took her too, and the little *Packet* returned proudly to Liverpool with two prizes.

Barss next attacked New England coastal shipping. He sailed close in shore where the Americans shook their fists with rage as they watched him capture ships one after another. On one trip he took four schooners in five days, and on another five in eight days. Then one day the little *Packet* ran across a big American privateer with 14 guns. This seemed too big even for the



A Privateer

Packet and she fled. But the American caught her and took her into Portsmouth harbor, where Barss and his crew were marched off to prison.

(d) *How It Ended*

By 1814, Britain had Napoleon a prisoner on the island of Elba, and was able to send a large army to Canada. Part of it was kept in Quebec where it gained nothing; and part of it was sent to Niagara, where the hardest fight of the war was fought at Lundy's Lane near Niagara Falls. The British and Canadians held the high ground against charge after charge. It was a drawn battle and the Americans finally retired. Once Britain turned her full strength against the United States the war was soon over. One British army landed and burned Washington; another was defeated at New Orleans. The last was a wasted battle for peace had been made on Christmas Eve, two weeks before it was fought.

But the war was not altogether wasted. In Jay's Treaty, made in 1794, Britain and the United States had agreed that, in future, they would settle their disputes by discussion in committees. After the War of 1812 this was done. The Treaty of Ghent made peace, but the disputes were settled later by a committee. One point settled was that the 49th parallel of latitude was to be the boundary between the British Provinces and the United States from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains. This was again very hard upon the Canadian fur traders for it took from them their fur trading lands west and south of Lakes Huron, Michigan and Superior. Yet it did give our country a boundary upon which she could take her stand.

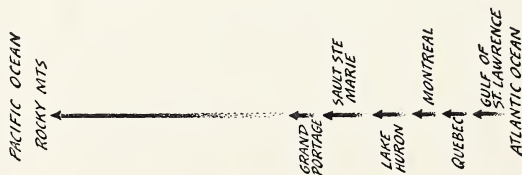
The discussion method has since been used to settle all differences between Canada and the United States. In the years since 1814 there have been some angry disputes between the two



countries, but they have all been settled by discussion. Today, our almost 4,000-mile long boundary has neither forts nor guns. It is marked only by peace arches, peace gardens and international bridges where steady streams of two-way traffic roll.

. . . . .

Calling the provinces British North America and giving them one Governor-General over all did not draw them together, but fighting the war did. Together they had taken a big chance and won. They had not yet a country, but they had now a boundary. The provinces had defended it from the Atlantic to the Great Lakes; the fur traders were holding it from the Lakes to the Pacific. Together they had driven back the forces of their much larger and richer neighbor. They could not forget that. Strange new feelings of pride in British North America, and of confidence in themselves began to grow in their hearts. In these feelings the spirit of the Canadian Nation was born. The Canada-that-was-to-be had not only a name; she breathed and was alive.



Growth of Canada's Boundary



plentiful and the demand great. Both fishermen and merchants made good money. Newfoundland was so prosperous that thousands of Irish came to settle on the island. The population rose to 20,000.

The new century brought Newfoundland many improvements. Governor Gambier granted pasture land to the people in spite of the old laws. Governor Duckworth told Britain that so large a population could not possibly live without farms; and that the people of Newfoundland ought now to have some part in governing themselves. After a few years Britain did away with the cruel old laws and instructed the Governor to grant lands to the people. When he began to do so, he found that he had not much land to grant. The Newfoundlanders had long ago taken most of it without permission. After all it was their own, their native land.

About this time, too, the British fishing merchants changed their minds. For 300 years they had done their best to drive settlers away from Newfoundland. Now they decided that it was cheaper to have the fishing done by the inhabitants. During the long war the Newfoundlanders took over their own



Family Fishing Scene

fisheries. They now did the fishing and Newfoundland merchants controlled the fishing trade. Home fishing and drying were cheaper than cross-Atlantic fishing because the whole family could help the father with both. The British fishermen had each carried his catch to Europe in his own small boat; now it was found that large ships did this work much more cheaply.

The French shore and the credit system were still great handicaps, but with pasture for cows, good fishing, and better prices, the fishermen's families were able to eat more and better food, buy better clothing and improve their houses. By this time the churches had opened schools in St. John's which the children attended two days a week. The town, which had been a small place with no paving or lighting and many fires, now doubled its population and began to tidy itself up. The first post office was opened in 1805, and in 1806, the first newspaper, the Royal Gazette, was published. Newfoundland had her foot on the ladder and she began to climb.

### (b) *The "Unhappy Time"*

The boom in fish which had made Newfoundland so prosperous during the War of 1812, burst at the end of it. The next few years were among the hardest the Newfoundlanders had ever known. Success in fishing depends on many things: the run of fish; good weather for curing; a big demand; a good price. After the war all these things seemed to turn against the island fishermen. The fishing was poor; the weather was bad; and the French and Americans came back to compete for the fish. Britain even made a treaty with the Americans which allowed their fishermen to fish on part of the coast of Newfoundland; so that she had not only a French, but also an American "shore" to worry her. French and American competition brought the price of fish so low that it hardly paid to take a boat out. Newfoundland's fish merchants were ruined and closed their

stores; her fishermen were thrown out of work and threatened with starvation. To cap the climax, a terrible fire destroyed 120 houses in St. John's and left 1,000 people homeless in mid-winter. A second and third year with even greater fires reduced St. John's to ashes and the people to despair.

(c) *Triumph*

Yet in this her most unhappy year Newfoundland triumphed. After 300 years of petitions for permission to live on their island, to build houses, to cultivate land, to have a church and a government, Britain at long last gave Newfoundland an all-the-year-round Governor. Governor Pickmore was old, ill, and so worried by the distress of the people in that dreadful winter that he died; but Britain had at last admitted that Newfoundland was a colony with a right to a proper government. Since then all her governors have lived on the island all the year round.

In 1832, Britain went a step further and granted Newfoundland a full colonial government with a Governor and Legislative Council appointed by the King, and a Legislative Assembly elected by the people. The two parts of the government quarreled at once about which of them had the right to



St. John's Before the Fire of 1846



pass laws about the Colony's money. As each part voted against any law that the other made, few laws could be passed. Britain suspended both Council and Assembly for a time, and afterwards required them to sit together as one body. When they met together they still quarreled, but they did get laws passed, and gradually brought about many improvements in the island's way of living. More than that, while they disputed, while each man argued for what he believed to be right, they were learning how to compromise; how to manage the business of the country; how to govern themselves in the democratic way.

## II

### THE RED RIVER STORY

#### (a) *The Companies Quarrel*

The story of Red River is an exciting one for it was over this colony that the long struggle between the Pedlars and the Gentlemen came to a head and was finally fought out.

By this time Sir Alexander Mackenzie had published a book about his voyages and become famous. He was living in grey old London, but he could see with his mind's eye: the endless sweep of the sunny prairies, the long rivers running down from the mountains, and beyond them his blue Pacific. He dreamed of a great North West Company with a charter, bringing its goods in cheaply by Hudson Bay, and so able to trade on the Pacific slope, and make the whole vast territory British. All they needed was permission to use the Hudson Bay route. To win this the Nor' Westers offered to unite with the Hudson's Bay Company; to buy it out; or to pay £2,000 a year for the right to use the Bay. The Gentlemen refused all these offers.

The Nor' Westers next tried to buy a majority of the shares of the Hudson's Bay Company. A majority of the shares

would give them a majority of the votes. They would then be able to vote themselves the right to use the Bay route. At the same time the Pedlars began persecuting the Hudson's Bay traders in the North West. They seized their men, destroyed their stores of food, stole their furs, and drove them out of Athabasca altogether. For five years the Gentlemen made no profits at all. This brought down the value of their shares. Even so, the Nor' Westers could not buy enough shares to get control of the Hudson's Bay Company.

Angrily they said that all Canadians had a *right* to trade in their own Bay. This worried the Gentlemen and they asked their lawyers about it. The lawyers said it was true that they did not own the Bay, but that they did own Rupert's Land, the land drained by the rivers flowing to the Bay. This made the Gentlemen feel safe and they planned to found a colony on the Red River to grow food for their trading posts. They asked Lord Selkirk if he would buy some of their land and found the colony. He agreed and bought from them 116,000 square miles of land on the Red and Assiniboine Rivers.

#### (b) *The Silver Chief Finds Red River*

The Nor' Westers in Britain did all they could to frighten colonists away from Lord Selkirk, but "the Silver Chief" as the Indians called him, got together an advance party of 105 men to go out to Red River. To be Governor of the colony, he chose Miles Macdonell, a Loyalist from Cornwall, Ontario. The party reached York Factory in September, too late to go up to Red River that year. They spent the winter in camp, where they were kept busy cutting wood for the fires, and building boats to carry them up to Red River in the spring. They took scurvy but Macdonell was ready with spruce tea and only one man died.

The 700 mile journey upstream was hard and slow. It was the end of August, 1812, before they reached the junction

of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers where Hudson's Bay men met them. They were welcomed also by the Nor' Westers, Alexander Macdonell of Fort Gibraltar, Governor Macdonell's cousin. After the taking possession ceremony, the Governor chose Point Douglas as the site of the colony. (It is now the center of the city of Winnipeg.) Some of the men stayed there to clear land and build houses, while the others went up to Pembina to join the buffalo hunters and bring back meat. In October, the second party of colonists arrived; this group had women and children among them. Houses were put up quickly. Food was very scarce, but the Hudson's Bay Company lent some, and the Nor' Westers sent them 59 pounds of meat.

(c) *The Nor' Westers Attack*

Up to this time the Nor' Westers on Red River had been kind to the half starved colonists; they enjoyed their company. But the Montreal partners saw that the Red River colony lay directly across their trade route to Athabasca. They thought that the Gentlemen were trying to cut them off, as they had cut off the Gentlemen not so long before. The North West Company traders were ordered to hinder, not help, the settlers.

As their first crops had failed and more colonists were expected in January, 1814, Governor Macdonell forbade pemmican to be exported from Selkirk's lands without permission. The Nor' Westers said this would prevent them from sending out their traders and ruin their trade. When the Governor seized some of their meat, orders came from Fort William that the colony was to be got rid of at any cost. Duncan Cameron began giving gay parties at Fort Gibraltar. At these he urged the settlers to move to Ontario where, he said, the North West Company would give them better



farms. Other Nor' Westers told the half-breeds, or Métis, that the land was theirs and that the colonists were taking it from them. This stirred up the Métis who began threatening the settlers, seizing their guns, and stealing their horses. When Nor' West traders began to gather from all sides, Governor Macdonell surrendered to prevent an attack on Fort Douglas. The Nor' Westers carried him a prisoner to Fort William, and took most of the settlers to Ontario where they were given farms near Owen Sound. After the Métis had burned their homes, 60 of the remaining settlers fled to the north end of Lake Winnipeg. Only John McLeod, the blacksmith, and three others remained at Fort Douglas. They defended themselves bravely in the blacksmith shop, for they felt sure that Lord Selkirk would send them help.

(d) *The Selkirk Settlers Fight Back*

Help was already on the way. A party of Hudson's Bay men and voyageurs arrived from Montreal, and Colin Robertson with 20 Canadians rushed up to Norway House and brought back the settlers. Eighty new colonists led by Robert Semple, a



The Battle at Seven Oaks

new Governor, came up from York Factory. The burned homes were rebuilt and new buildings were raised; Fort Douglas was made stronger than ever.

That winter, the Selkirk settlers turned on the Nor' Westers. Governor Semple seized letters from the North West Company's canoes which told of the North West Company's plot to destroy the colony. To protect themselves the colonists tore down Fort Gibraltar and used the materials to strengthen Fort Douglas. The Nor' Westers now brought up a large band of Métis, and Semple and 20 men went out to ask them what they wanted. The two parties met at Seven Oaks. The fight began almost by accident and lasted only a few minutes, but Semple and 19 of his men were killed. Fort Douglas surrendered and again the colonists fled to the camp on Lake Winnipeg.

Meantime, Lord Selkirk had been trying to get Britain and Canada to protect his colony, but the North West Company had so much influence with both Governments that no help was sent to the settlers. Selkirk then hired 84 Swiss soldiers and set out with them to save Red River. He was at Sault Ste. Marie when he heard of the fight at Seven Oaks and the surrender of Fort Douglas. Selkirk was a Justice of the Peace so, dashing across Lake Superior, he seized Fort William, arrested the North West Company partners he found there, and sent them to Montreal to be tried. Miles Macdonell, free again, hurried off with 60 men and retook Fort Douglas.

In July, the Silver Chief came himself to gather his scattered settlers together and set his colony on its feet. His coming brought peace and hope. The British Government ordered all property to be given back to the rightful owners. The settlers returned to their farms and planted their crops. Selkirk made a treaty with the Indians for their lands, and won their hearts by his friendliness and generosity. He arranged the lots to be



given the settlers and planned roads, bridges, mills, a church, school and cemetery for the settlers. Forty-six Swiss remained. They were poor farmers but they did protect the colony. Also some French Canadian settlers now arrived to strengthen it.

Selkirk left his colonists safe and returned to Canada where he was tried for plotting to destroy the North West Company's trade. This could not be proved and the case was dropped. The Silver Chief had spent his strength and a large part of his fortune to help people and the charges against him broke his heart. He died two years later, still a young man, but one who had lived a long and full life in his 48 eager years.

### III

#### THE PEDLARS AND THE GENTLEMEN UNITE

##### (a) *The Fight for Athabasca "As the Story Goes"*

Before the quarrel, the competition between the Hudson's Bay and North West Companies had been bitter enough; after the fight at Red River it became cut-throat. The Hudson's Bay Company had placed its Red River settlement across the North West Company's lines of transport. The Nor' Westers had driven the Hudson's Bay Company out of Athabasca. The Gentlemen were determined to get in again; the Pedlars were determined to keep them out; it was war to the knife between them.

In 1818, Colin Robertson, the fiery young man who had been with Selkirk, went boldly down to Montreal. Under the very noses of the Nor' Westers, he bought 19 canoes, hired 95 Canadian voyageurs and paddled gaily away to the West. On Lake Winnipeg, he picked up the 35 Hudson's Bay men whom the Nor' Westers had driven out of Athabasca. When Robertson paddled up to Fort Chipewyan with 130 armed men at his back, the Nor' Westers rushed out in alarm, but Robertson and his

men marched quietly to the deserted Hudson's Bay trading post and began to put it in order.

Two weeks later, Colin stepped out one morning to be fired upon by a North West Company bully. A dozen Nor' Westers rushed Robertson from behind, dragged him to the beach and threw him into a canoe. He managed to get a shot at the bully but missed. After that a Nor' Wester held a pistol at his head until they had him shut up in a small log room where they kept him, guarded day and night, until they could send him to Canada for trial.

The story goes that one day Colin asked his guard to send over to the Hudson's Bay post for a keg of whiskey. When they brought it to him, he wrote on a strip of paper a code that he had invented and hid it in the bung of the keg. He then told his guard that the keg was musty and asked him to take it back and tell the Hudson's Bay men to clean it. The men found the code and after that Robertson gave orders to his men and received their reports in notes passed back and forth in the bung of the whiskey keg.

In early summer, when the Athabasca fur brigade set out for Fort William, they took Robertson with them. At Cumberland House he asked leave to visit his friends in the Hudson's Bay post, promising to return. He went—and remained, breaking his promise.

"My conscience tells me I have not done right," he said, but he did not go back.

Robertson watched the Nor' Westers well out of sight and then followed them, for he knew that Williams, the new Governor of Red River, had been planning a little surprise for them at the Grand Rapids near the mouth of the Saskatchewan. Williams was there with a small force of Hudson's Bay men and Swiss soldiers. They had moored a barge with some cannon on it at

the foot of the rapids and the Northwest brigade raced down full tilt into it. When Robertson arrived he found the North West Company's furs on the bank and the Nor' Westers crowded into a hut under guard.

"Two can play at that game," thought the Nor' Westers grimly. The next year they turned the tables and caught Williams and the Hudson's Bay brigade by exactly the same trick.

### (b) *Union*

By this time even the heads of the fur Companies thought their men were going too far. There were no laws to protect the animals in those days. The use of guns by the Indians and the mad race for furs by the white men killed off the fur bearers quickly. The fur frontier was moving rapidly farther and farther north. Fierce competition at the trading posts was cutting the Hudson's Bay Company's profits to the bone. Their long haul was bringing the North West Company steadily nearer to ruin. In 1821, they agreed to stop fighting. After 150 years of rivalry, the Pedlars and the Gentlemen united. They have done business ever since under the name of the Hudson's Bay Company. In spite of the North West Company's better system, the short haul had won over the long haul.

The new Company combined the steadiness and fair dealing of the Gentlemen with the energy and daring of the Pedlars. The new Hudson's Bay Company ruled the whole vast territory between Hudson Bay and the Pacific, between the 49th parallel and the Arctic Ocean; it brought peace to the West and prosperity to the fur trade. The union did another thing: it shut settlers out of the West; for 50 years Red River remained its only settlement. This was partly because the Company did not want settlers and was strong enough to keep them out; and partly because the union cut the connection between Canada and the West. The North West Company had had its headquarters in

Montreal and while it traded beyond the Great Lakes there was a constant coming and going between the West and Canada. The new Company traded through Hudson Bay. Montreal lost its big fur business; Fort William became a lakeside village. The gay traffic of bateaux and canoes vanished from the Upper Lakes, and the songs of the voyageurs were heard no more upon the rivers of Ontario.

(c) *The Little Emperor*

Simpson was his name, plain George Simpson to begin with, though the king afterwards made him Sir George. His men called him the "Little Emperor". He was only 29 when they appointed him Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company and he ruled his vast "empire" (now Western Canada) for 40 years. He was a sturdy, good-looking, friendly young man who loved fun and showing-off. He had a clever brain and a smooth tongue, and he turned out to be a shrewd business man, a great organizer and a born ruler of men.

Governor Simpson divided the Company's enormous trading territory into three departments: northern, southern and western,



The Arrival of Governor Simpson

and chose Norway House at the head of Lake Winnipeg as his headquarters. At Norway House he sat at the crossroads of the three main highways of his empire: the rivers leading to the Saskatchewan, to Athabasca, and to York Factory. Not that he sat much; all his life he was continually on the move. To begin with he inspected all the trading posts. Where there had been two, he joined them together. He closed weak posts and built up strong ones. And he soon had the first trans-Canada running smoothly. It was made up of York boats, canoes, and pack horses; and it ran from York Factory on Hudson Bay to Fort Vancouver on the Lower Columbia, and later to Fort Langley on the Fraser. Simpson once made an inspection trip of over 2600 miles, York Factory to Fort Langley in 85 days.

Once a year Simpson called his chief factors to Norway House for a meeting; some of them travelled 2,000 miles to attend it. Between meetings Simpson dashed about the departments on inspection trips. He had a big "express" canoe, painted bright red and manned by a crew of the fastest voyageurs in the country. In this he rushed from post to post in record-breaking time. He was very particular about his dress. Before arriving at a post, Simpson landed, washed, shaved and changed his clothes. Then, with flags waving, bag-pipes playing, and guns saluting from the shore, the voyageurs swept the Governor up to the landing stage, where the Chief Factor waited in state to receive him. All this ceremony impressed the Indians and increased the Company's influence over them.

The welcome over, the Governor turned briskly to work. He discussed the business of the post with the factor, settled disputes among the men, lectured the Indians, went over the accounts, and inspected stores and buildings. Nothing escaped his sharp eyes. Then, when evening came, he was the gayest of the gay at the dinners and dances given in his honor.



## IV

### OUR WESTWARD LOOKOUT: COLUMBIA

#### (a) *A Quick-Witted Bride*

The North West Company's western department, Columbia as it was called then, included New Caledonia and Oregon. The New Caledonia of the fur traders lay between the Rockies and the Coast Range, between the Thompson and Peace Rivers. The district was a rich one, producing not only furs, but also birch bark, pitch, pemmican, moose-hides, buffalo meat, tongues, and robes. The new Company had six trading posts in New Caledonia of which Fort St. James was the center. At this time William Connolly was chief factor at Fort St. James with James Douglas as his clerk.

Douglas was an ambitious young Scot who came to Canada to work for the North West Company when he was 16. He was a silent lad, and probably a very homesick one, as he went up over the long river trails to Athabasca to learn his trade. When he had done that, he was appointed Clerk at Fort St. James. But Douglas had no intention of remaining a clerk; he hoped to become a chief factor. He went even farther than that as you shall hear.

The most anxious job at all early trading posts was keeping up the supply of food. At St. James, Douglas was placed in charge of the fishing. He also went on trading trips to the Carrier, Babine, and Chilcotin tribes to bring in furs. Between times he studied the geography of the country and the Indian languages he needed for trading. In the midst of all this, Douglas found time to fall in love with, and to marry, pretty Nellie Connolly, the Chief Factor's daughter. This was fortunate for him, for a little later the quick wit of his 16-year-old bride saved his life. This is the story:

Two years before, two Company men had been killed by two Indians. One of the murderers was caught, but the other

escaped. Chief Factor Connolly was absent and Douglas in charge of the Fort when word came that the second murderer had returned on a visit. Taking several men with him, Douglas rushed out to seize the man. In some way he was beaten to death in the struggle. It was a cruel deed even though the dead man was a murderer. The Indians were furious. Chief Kwah arrived with an excited crowd and pushed into the trading room of the fort. Kwah took hold of Douglas and demanded payment for the death. The father of the dead man waved a dagger. Brave young Nellie, half Indian herself, seized it, but it was snatched back.

"Shall I strike? Shall I strike? Say the word and I stab him!" shouted Kwah's nephew pointing the dagger at Douglas' heart.

Screaming with terror, Nellie and her sister rushed up the open stairway, snatched up whatever they could lay hands on: tobacco, handkerchiefs, ribbons, clothing, trinkets, and threw them down upon the crowd as was the custom at a potlatch.<sup>1</sup> The Indians turned from Douglas to scramble for the gifts. Kwah accepted them for his people and the danger was over. But the affair was a serious one. Governor Simpson came to Fort St. James soon after and young Douglas was transferred to Fort Vancouver.

(b) *The Okanagan Trail: End of the First Trans-Canada*<sup>2</sup>

The war of 1812 enabled the Nor' Westers to win the Columbia River after all. When David Thompson reported that the Columbia was a shorter route to the Pacific than he had expected, the Company sent a ship round Cape Horn with trade goods, and an overland party to settle at the mouth of the great river. The Nor' Westers reached Astoria in 1813

<sup>1</sup> A potlatch was a feast at which the Indian hosts gave gifts to their guests.

<sup>2</sup> The cross-Canada canoe and pack horse route of the fur traders was the first trans-Canada.

and camped near the American post to wait for their supply ship. When their leader, John McTavish, told the Astorians that Britain and the United States were at war, they were worried. They felt sure that their New York headquarters would not be able to send them any more goods; so they decided to leave. The Nor' Westers offered to buy their forts and goods. The Americans agreed, and the Canadians took over the trade. After the war, Britain gave Fort Astoria back to the United States and it was agreed that both countries should trade on the Columbia. But the American traders did not return to the river and the Canadians ruled the land from California to the Russian border of Alaska.

Oregon, the new district was called. It was a beautiful land, level as a lawn for its mountains stood 100 miles back from the coast. The mild rainy climate covered it with grassy meadows and forests of huge pines. The Columbia, its main highway, burst through the mountains at the Dalles with a great rage and roar of waters and then flowed quietly down to the sea. Astoria, renamed Fort George, brought its goods in cheaply by ship round Cape Horn, and John Stuart of Fort McLeod blazed the Okanagan Trail so that New Caledonia also could bring her heavy goods in that way.

The famous trail ran from Fort Alexandria on the Fraser to Fort Kamloops and then on to Fort Okanagan on the Columbia. Furs from the different posts were collected at Alexandria. The pack-trains were made up there, 60 horses to a train, carrying 85 packs of furs. From four to six trains made up a brigade. The trail led across country to



The Okanagan Trail

Fort Kamloops where the Company set up a large horse ranch. The pack-trains rested and changed horses at Kamloops and then set out again over open, rolling country to Lake Okanagan. The Chief Factor in his scarlet-lined cloak and beaver hat rode at the head of the train. The horses wore bells whose music mingled pleasantly with the songs of the voyageurs-turned-pack-riders, as they jingled and sang their way down Okanagan River. At Fort Okanagan on the Columbia, boats waited to carry men and goods down to the sea and the ships. One part of Mackenzie's great plan had been worked out.

(c) *Fort Vancouver*

The Chief Factor of the Oregon district was Dr. John McLoughlin. He was a Canadian, born in Quebec and educated there and in Scotland where he took his medical degree. McLoughlin was a big man, six feet four, and though still young he had snow white hair. It is said that his hair turned white overnight after he had been nearly drowned when a canoe overturned. He was a good and very kindly man. When he had sent a brigade away, he always went into his room to pray for the safety of the men, and in all his life was never known to refuse help to anyone.

The British and Americans had agreed to share the fur trade on the Columbia for the time being, but everyone knew that in the end it would be necessary to divide it between them. The fur traders expected that the Columbia would be the boundary line. Fort George was on the south bank of the river. Governor Simpson decided that it would be wise to build a new fort on the north bank, so as to make sure of having it in British territory. The party sent to find a site chose one 90 miles up the river.

Fort Vancouver,<sup>3</sup> as the new post was called, was built

<sup>3</sup> Now Vancouver, Washington, U.S.A.

in a rectangle, 250 yards long, 150 yards wide. Its walls were a double row of spruce slabs half a foot thick and 20 feet high. Guns were placed at the four corners. The gates were made of beams and had huge brass hinges upon which they swung open toward the river. Near the main gate was the wicket in the wall through which, as in all trading posts, the Indians passed their furs and received in exchange the goods they needed.

Inside, 40 neat, one-storey wooden houses were built round two courts as homes for the men and their families. Store-houses for goods and workshops for the carpenters, blacksmiths, tinnerns, and mechanics were erected. In the center stood the Chief Factor's residence, a two-storey building with a large dining-hall and a public sitting room called the "Bachelor's Hall". All the officers and clerks dined together in the hall and afterwards retired to the sitting-room where they smoked, read, and told tales of their breath-taking adventures and escapes. Often there were visitors, traders from inland posts, or men from the ships. Then, and on all holidays, there were grand dinners, merry sing-songs and gay dances.

#### (d) *McLoughlin's Men*

Fort Vancouver now became the capital of the Western Department. From it Dr. McLoughlin ruled his forest kingdom. One of his first moves was to send men to build a post near the mouth of the Fraser. The party, under James McMillan, travelled overland to Puget Sound and then by canoe to Fraser's River. A little above the place where Fraser had turned back, they found a pretty meadow on the south shore where, in 1827, they built Fort Langley, the first white settlement in that rich and lovely valley. The building was a simple task to the trained men but, like all their work, it was carried out on the edge of danger. It was hot and dry that summer and the forest fires swept down upon them. The strong current of the river

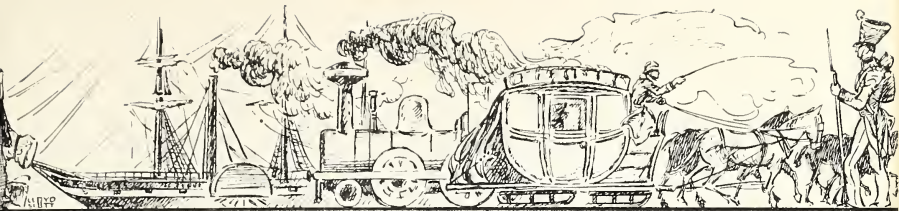


threatened them. The Indians, as in Fraser's day were unfriendly, but the Company's ship, the *Cadboro*, came up with supplies, and they did not venture to attack the white men. Working rapidly, the traders got out logs and soon had sleeping quarters and a trading-hall protected by a stout palisade and small cannon. Seeing the goods they offered, the Indians presently brought furs and fish to trade.

Then out from the gates of Fort Vancouver went the men who led the brigades into the wilderness, each man with John McLoughlin's "God bless you," ringing in his ears. Peter Skene Ogden traded south to California; Roderick Finlayson north to the Russian border. John Work led his men across Idaho to the plain north of Great Salt Lake; and Trader Ross crossed the Rockies and hunted the buffalo on the great plains in the teeth of the Blackfeet, the Piegan and the Crow. By such Canadians, feet bleeding from the mountain trails, throats choked with desert dust, skin and bone from starvation, Oregon was explored and held.

. . . . .

So in the end the proud dreams of Sir Alexander Mackenzie and Lord Selkirk came true. These two great men died almost together, Mackenzie in March, Selkirk in April, 1820, a short year too soon to know that they had won. For Mackenzie now had his great chartered Company trading in by Hudson Bay, and in and out by the Pacific; Lord Selkirk had his Red River colony, already the capital of the prairies; and the Canada-to-be had her Great West and North waiting for her. The fur traders: schemers, fighters, dreamers, had conquered almost the last of it and were holding it. But land cannot be held without settlers; the French Canadians had found that out. The question was: could the partners, French and British, find the people?



## Chapter Fifteen

### THE PIONEERS

1815-1850

BRITISH North America now had her land. She needed settlers to work it. Again they were already at her doors.

For a few years after the war of 1812, the provinces had hard times. Britain bought much less of our timber and in some years took no Canadian wheat at all.<sup>1</sup> The United States was again competing in the West Indian market and the Maritimes got less of their trade. But the depression did not last long. The provinces had their rich resources of fish, fur, farm and forest and, most important of all, their steady, hard-working people. With a strong pull from them, and a mighty shove from the flood of new settlers pouring in upon them, the provinces were soon on their feet again and moving forward into an exciting new period of growth.

#### I

##### ENTER THE PIONEERS

##### (a) *Many Borrowed the Money to Come*

The end of the war of 1812 was also the end of Britain's long war with France; and peace brought even greater hard-

<sup>1</sup> After World War II also Britain was obliged to buy less from Canada. Was it for the same reason?

ships to Britain than it did to our provinces. In England thousands of veterans were looking for work; thousands of factory workers were being dismissed from factories where newly invented machines were taking the place of men. In Scotland the lairds were still turning people off their lands. In Ireland the people lived almost altogether upon potatoes; when the potato crop failed as it did in the 1840's, the Irish faced starvation. To all these poor people British North America offered farms and a chance to make a living, and they came in thousands. It was an exciting time to live in our country for every day brought new people, and saw new districts opened up.

The British Government helped some thousands of war veterans and unemployed persons to go to the provinces, but the great majority of the immigrants came without help. Families pooled their savings to pay the fare of one member across the ocean. He came out, worked and saved to bring out a second member and so on, until the whole family had been brought out. Other families borrowed money for the fare. James Sharp, a Scotsman, had arranged to borrow the money to take his family to Canada. Their passage on the ship was booked; their house was sold; and they had spent almost all they had on food for the voyage. The ship was to sail the next day, and still the money had not come. The Sharps spent that night sitting on their boxes in the empty house, praying "Oh Lord, save us". Morning brought the money. They landed with only \$16 but managed to reach Niagara where they all got work. In eight years they saved enough to buy a fine farm near Galt, Ontario.

Most of the pioneers were so poor that they had barely enough money to pay the fare, and not enough to buy proper food for the voyage. They swarmed upon ships that were little

better than cattle boats and, after from six to ten weeks on the Atlantic, they arrived sick, starving, hardly able to walk ashore.

"These poor creatures starve about Quebec for months, then begin to creep up the country, on charity or government aid, and so fill the colony with beggary and disease", says one writer.

In 1832, the "poor creatures" brought cholera with them and this plague swept the country. One-tenth of the people in Toronto died and other places suffered severely. After that a quarantine station was opened at Quebec and the government began to take greater care in admitting people to the country.

Following a second epidemic of cholera, the flood of immigrants fell off for a time. Then the American ports began making new settlers pay a tax and this turned the stream back to the British Provinces. Many of the newcomers moved on into the States, but many remained. The total number who came to Canada was small compared to the throngs pouring into the United States; yet in 35 years, Canada's "Great Immigration" filled the spaces between and behind the Loyalist settlements in all the provinces. The Pioneers settled eastern Nova Scotia, southern New Brunswick, parts of Prince Edward Island, and filled the lands of Quebec and Ontario back to the edge of the Canadian Shield. They raised the population of Newfoundland from about 50,000 to over 100,000; and that of the British Provinces from half a million to over three millions. The Pioneers were British. They outnumbered the Loyalists and made all the provinces except Quebec, British.

(b) *The Officials Mismanage the Lands*

What these poor people needed was to be settled on farms as quickly as possible, but here all was confusion, mismanagement and dishonesty. The lands of each province were controlled

by its Governor and Council. Instead of placing the immigrants on farms and giving them legal titles to their land as soon as they had paid for it, the officials granted the land in blocks. Large tracts were reserved for the king. In Ontario one-seventh of all lands was set aside for the church and called Clergy Reserves. Free grants were given to war veterans. For the rest, the officials granted huge blocks to themselves and their friends, and sold them to land companies, and speculators. All these people were supposed to place settlers on their lands; instead many held them for higher prices. A few men like Peter Robinson at Peterborough, and Thomas Talbot in the Lake Erie country, did settle large numbers of immigrants on their lands. Big land companies in the Maritimes and Quebec, and the Canada Company, which owned a million acres on Lake Huron, built roads and bridges and settled hundreds of families, but they also kept much land vacant. All these empty blocks were a great nuisance to the settlers. They separated neighbors and made it difficult to build roads and form communities. This system of granting land caused the pioneers much delay, worry and loss. Perhaps their difficulties were worth while, for they helped to bring about our country's next step forward.

## II

### THE PIONEERS IMPROVED COMMUNICATIONS

#### (a) *Stage Coach Days*

The Loyalists had not had to build many roads for they settled along the waterways. The Pioneers took up land farther back and they needed roads. The long, through roads: Halifax-Windsor, Quebec-Montreal-Kingston-Toronto, and Governor Simcoe's Dundas and Yonge Streets were built by the government. By 1827, there was a through road from Halifax to



Amherstburg on Lake St. Clair. This was the first tie binding the Provinces together. Others, such as the Talbot and Huron roads were built by land agents or companies. The settlers built the short ones themselves, either by road work or by subscribing the money to pay for them.

Long or short, the roads were at first only blazed trails used by people on foot or on horseback. The next step was to "open" the road, that is to clear a strip forty feet wide along it. This left it with many stumps and mudholes. Many roads remained in this state for years. John McDonald tells of one so bad that a party of settlers going in were thrown from their wagons. A boy was killed; a man had his arm broken, and a horse stuck so fast in the mud that they had to free his feet with handspikes.

Some of these "bush roads" were presently corduroyed, that is split logs were laid across them side by side, the round side up. This made fairly safe, though very bumpy roads. Later some of the corduroyed roads were made into "common roads"; that is they were drained and roughly levelled. In the 1820's and 1830's, a few of the main roads were turn-piked, that is gravelled.



Stage Coach

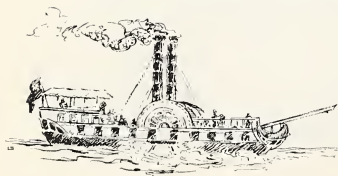
A turnpike had a toll-gate every five miles and in this way the money was collected to pay for it.

People travelled along these roads in wagons, carriages, sleighs, or stage-coaches. Regular stage lines now ran along the main roads. Stage-coaches were heavy wooden things drawn by four horses. They made from three to seven miles per hour and changed horses at certain taverns. The arrival of the stage at the inn was a great event. Horns sounded as the coach swung up to the door. Boys unhitched the horses. The driver, striking his great boots with his whip-handle, strode into the tavern for a drink. Passengers had hot or cold drinks handed in through the windows. In five minutes the fresh horses came jingling out, the great traces were caught up; the coach-man mounted his box and cracked his long whip; the boys jerked off the horse-blankets and they were off—perhaps to be bogged down within a mile.

By 1845 both roads and stages were improving. Coaches with steel springs were coming in. Nova Scotia had two roads in fairly good condition; the Halifax-Windsor road now went on round by Annapolis to Yarmouth and back by Lunenburg. It had two stage lines, and the competition reduced fares and improved the service. On the Halifax-Pictou road, light, elegant stages each drawn by six grey horses drove gaily into town.

### (b) *Stylish Steamers*

By this time steamers were running everywhere on inland waters. Halifax had a steam ferry; and Mr. Molson had now six steamships on the Quebec-Montreal run. The Frontenac, a "floating palace", ran from Kingston to Toronto at the breath-taking speed of ten miles per hour. The Walk-in-the-Water served Lake Erie with the help of the "horned breeze" (20 yoke of oxen) which towed her up the Niagara River against the current. The Great Britain, on Lake



Early Steamship

Ontario, "was furnished with sofas and mirrors". It had music on board, and accepted only pretty girls as stewardesses. These early steamships had no whistles, but each carried a cannon to announce its arrival. They all burned wood and stopped often to take on loads of it. This gave rise to the slang phrase of those days: "Will you take on wood?" meaning "Will you cat?", and "Is your steam up?" meaning "Are you ready to go?"

The first steamer to cross the Atlantic was a Canadian ship, the Royal William, built in Quebec and manned by a Canadian crew. She was a side wheeler with 50 cabins and a splendidly furnished parlor. She made several trips to Halifax and then set out, with seven passengers, to prove that a steamship could cross the ocean. She proved it, reaching London safely. The Royal William's trip convinced Samuel Cunard of Halifax that steam was safe. He got a British Government contract to carry the mail and, beginning with four small steamers, he built up the Cunard Line, now one of the great steamship lines of the world.

(c) *Canals Were All the Fashion*

Like steamers, canals were all the fashion in pioneer days. The Maritime Provinces and Quebec did not need artificial rivers, but Ontario needed them badly. Each of her fine new steamships had to stay in the lake in which it was built because it could not climb the rapids or falls leading to the next water-level. It cost over \$15.00 a ton to freight goods from Montreal up the rapids of the St. Lawrence to Kingston. When, on top of that, they had been hauled by oxen across the Niagara portage to Lake Erie, the Talbot settlers had to pay a bushel of wheat for every yard of cotton they bought.

Then a great blow fell. When Montreal lost the fur trade, she turned to timber and the carrying trade, for the St. Lawrence was still the cheapest route into the American West. But New York City had been eyeing that trade for years. Once the

Iroquois had blocked her river, the Hudson, but they were gone. In 1825, New York completed the Erie Canal connecting the Hudson River with Lake Erie and at one stroke carried off most of Montreal's western trade. It was time that Canada took up the pick and shovel.

She already had a few small locks and canals, built to help the Loyalists up the St. Lawrence; and she now quickly completed the Lachine Canal near Montreal. Then Britain sent Colonel By to build the Rideau Canal connecting Kingston with the Ottawa River. It was built to make a safe inland route for soldiers in time of war. No war came, but ships coming up the St. Lawrence used it to escape the rapids. Colonel By and his workmen founded Bytown, now our capital city of Ottawa.

Canada's real answer to New York's Erie Canal was the Welland Canal, by-passing Niagara Falls. William Merritt began talking about it in 1817, but it was seven years before he got the work started. It went on without a day's rest for four years and was almost completed when, suddenly, the banks of the Deep Cut fell in. This was a serious set-back for the Company's money was almost gone. But the British Government came forward with a loan and a year later, on November 27th, 1829, two ships moved through the canal. The St. Lawrence waterway was open from the Atlantic to Sault Ste. Marie.

When we remember that in building their canals the Pioneers took out every foot of earth with pick, shovel and wheelbarrow, it is amazing what they accomplished in a few years.

#### (d) *Railways Were Coming In*

Canada was beginning to find out what it meant for a poor country to live beside a rich neighbor. She had hardly finished building her canals when she found that they were old fashioned. Railways were coming in and the Americans were already build-

ing them west towards Chicago. So, late but determined, Canada began building railways. Her first two seem funny little ones to us, but the Pioneers were proud of them. Quebec built our first railway, the Champlain-St. Lawrence, a portage railway connecting the St. Lawrence opposite Montreal with the Richelieu River and so making a water route from Montreal to New York. It was finished in 1836 and was almost 15 miles long. The rails were of wood with flat bars of iron spiked on top. The first train was made up of four cars drawn by horses. Steam engines were introduced the next year and later the wooden rails were replaced by iron ones.

Canada's second railway was also a very short one. It was built in Pictou County, Nova Scotia, to haul coal from the Albion coal mines to the docks at New Glasgow. They began building the track in 1836, and in 1837 three engines were brought over from England and set up. As George Davidson, the engineer, was getting up steam for the trial trip the conductor, Patrick Kerwin, snatched up his little daughter, Margaret, to give her the first ride. The next day the train was run free to New Glasgow, "outstripping the wind in velocity"! People came from all parts of the province to try it. The Company gave a dinner with an ox roasted whole and served free with other food to all comers; and in the evening there was a grand ball.



An Early Train



### III

#### CANADA TAKES OVER HER OWN POST OFFICE

After Britain conquered Canada, post offices were opened in Halifax, Saint John, Quebec, and Montreal; but it was not until Loyalist days that the British Post Office arranged a postal service for the provinces. Mail from overseas came to Halifax and was brought up the Saint John River to Quebec by courier.

Postmen driving calèches carried it along the roads in Quebec; and couriers rode west with it to new post offices in Kingston, Niagara and Detroit. By 1846, Quebec had ten post offices and Ontario nine, but people living outside those towns had often to travel two or three days to post a letter or to get one.

There were no envelopes or stamps in those days. Letters were folded and sealed. The postage was paid in advance to the postman according to the distance the letter was to be carried. Rates were very high: 12 cents for a few miles; \$1.12 from Toronto to England. Because of this people wrote very few letters.

As settlements grew and roads improved, certain stage lines took contracts to carry the mail. By 1835, there was a through line of mail stages from Halifax to Amherstburg near Detroit. The mail stages were smart and fast. William Weller's Royal Mail Line had four-horse coaches, painted in bright colors, and carrying the royal coat-of-arms. Asked to drive Governor Sydenham from Toronto to Montreal to save a man condemned to death, Weller himself mounted the box and made the 360 mile trip in 35 hours 40 minutes. He won a £1,000 bet and the Governor-General gave him £100 and a gold watch.

In 1851, British North America took over the control of her own postal service and this made a second tie binding the provinces together.

## IV

### WHAT THEY WORKED AT

#### (a) *Timber Takes the Lead*

When the white men came here, the whole of Eastern Canada was covered with a beautiful forest. These trees had been growing for centuries and were much larger and finer than the second growth trees of today. The Loyalists cleared the fringes of the original forest to make their farms. During the war with Napoleon, they began to cut deeper into it to supply Britain. After the war she did not need so much; but when she began to build railways the demand for Canadian timber rose again. Lumbering became more profitable than farming. Hundreds of old settlers went to work in the woods; thousands of the incoming Pioneers went lumbering to earn money to buy farms. The lumbermen now moved inland up the rivers, clearing and opening the land behind the early settlements. The famous Glazier, the "main john"<sup>2</sup> of Maritime lumbermen led his men into northern New Brunswick. The Paul Bunyans of Canada led theirs up the Ottawa and into central and western Ontario.

The Pioneers rejoiced in the bustle and business brought about by the new industry. They seem never to have realized that reckless cutting, without reforestation, was bound to exhaust our forest resources rapidly.

"There are millions of acres in the valleys of the Ottawa and the rivers flowing into Lake Huron," says the Canadian Almanac of 1856. "They are capable of yielding a rich harvest of lumber for a century to come."

Yet only 20 years later, Sir John Macdonald warned Canadians: "We are recklessly destroying the timber of Canada and there is scarcely a possibility of replacing it."

Like the voyageur's, the lumberman's life was an exciting

<sup>2</sup> You would enjoy the poem, *Glazier's Men* by H. A. Cody and the book, *The Adventures of Paul Bunyan* by James Cloyd Bowman.

one. The shantymen, as pioneer lumberjacks were called wore grey trousers and red flannel shirts, blanket coats with red sashes and caps. They lived 30 or 40 together in large shanties with a stone fireplace in the middle and bunks round the walls and they liked plenty of salt pork, beans and potatoes, bread and molasses to eat. Whiskey was forbidden in the woods, so they drank gallons of strong tea instead, and spent their evenings singing, dancing to the fiddle, playing cards, telling stories. It was among these men that the Glazier and Paul Bunyan stories grew up.

When the shantymen had felled a tree, they trimmed and "squared" it, wasting much good lumber as they did so. The squared logs were drawn by oxen to the river bank where they were piled till spring. On the smaller streams the logs were sent down loose, the men running alongside and jumping from log to log to break up jams. This was dangerous work; all risked their lives and many a man lost his. On the large rivers, the logs were bound into small rafts called cribs for the run down stream and over the timber slides. These slides were built by the Government to by-pass the rapids and falls.



Shantymen Rafting

Lower down, in quiet water, the cribs were joined into large rafts which were often like floating villages with little wooden houses for the men and their families, lines of washing, frolicking children and dogs, the smell of cooking, and in the evening the pleasant sound of singing. The rafts were driven by long sweeps and by sails when there was a breeze. In this way Canadian logs came at last to the harbors of Saint John, St. Andrews and Fredericton, or to the coves of Quebec.

"Here", says Rollo Campbell, "is one of the greatest sights in America. Here wharves and booms enclose acres and acres of squared pine and oak logs, with from 500 to 600 ships stowing away whole rafts of immense timbers."

By 1834, lumber made up two-thirds of our exports to Britain.

#### (b) *Poor Farming*

In spite of the land granting system, the Pioneers did get farms; but everyone who visited Canada in those days says that their farming was poor. This was chiefly because so many of them had been factory workers who really knew little about farming. There was no rotation of crops. Fields were cropped for years without being fertilized; instead the manure from the stables was piled on the ice to be carried away by the spring floods. In spite of this shocking lack of conservation, the soil of the new land was so rich that in good years it produced 35 bushels of good wheat to the acre.

"The Upper Canada (Ontario) wheat that has come here by the late ships is beautiful, and brings a higher price than any other wheat in our market," says a letter from Liverpool.

Farming in the Maritimes had much the same faults as in Quebec and Ontario. Presently letters to farmers, signed with the name "Agricola", began to appear in a Halifax newspaper. The letters explained the importance of the farmer and sug-

gested that an Agricultural Society should be formed to help him. Everyone read the letters and tried to guess who "Agricola" could be. A society was formed and Agricola was elected secretary still no one knew who he was.<sup>3</sup> Then, by an article in the paper, he gave himself away, and took his place as secretary. The legislature granted the society \$1,500 and it did good work in improving farming.

"The general mode of farming is slovenly," says Lewellin of Prince Edward Island, "but there are exceptions. Many farmers manage excellently and, with the help of the Agricultural Society, are bringing about a very satisfactory change."

### (c) *Good Fishing*

Fishing had always been the most important kind of work done in the Maritime Provinces. They had now added to fishing, lumbering, ship building and coal mining, with farming increasing steadily. Having five industries instead of one or two made the provinces not only richer but safer, for if one kind of work failed, they had the others to fall back upon.

The Maritimers had been fishing for 200 years and still the fish in their waters were as plentiful as ever. Bay of Fundy cod was considered the finest on the coast and brought a high price in the United States; Saint John salmon, shipped in ice, found a good market in Boston and New York. Alewives, a small cheap fish, were sold to the planters of the Southern States who used them as food for their slaves. Gulf cod were preferred by the Mediterranean countries; they were smaller, very light in color and well cured so that they kept better in the hot climate. Nova Scotia sold most of her fish to the West Indies.

Fish were plentiful; markets good. The chief trouble of the industry was with the American fishermen. They were forbidden to fish in our waters; but they came just the same and carried

<sup>3</sup> "Agricola" was a Mr. John Young, who had a fine farm near Halifax.



off half a million quintals of fish in a season. The fishermen petitioned Britain to stop them, but nothing was done about it for a long time.

(d) *Great Ship Building*

During the war with Napoleon every little port along our shores had its ship-yards. New Brunswick built cheap ships which she loaded with her magnificent white pine timber and sailed to Britain where both ship and timber were sold. Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island built "tramps", that is cargo ships which sailed from port to port picking up freight wherever they could.

After the War of 1812, the demand for timber and ships lessened. Maritime ship builders then improved their designs and built better ships, until at last Donald Mackay of Shelburne, Nova Scotia, originated the "clipper", the fastest and most beautiful of all sailing ships. The Maritimers built and sailed their ships so skilfully that the "Bluenose fleet"<sup>4</sup> became world famous. In those days Maritime captains took their families with them as they sailed round the world and the boys and girls knew ships and sailing as well as you know your car and how to drive it.

Of all the famous ships built in the Maritime ports and the hundreds of stories told about them, the strangest is the story of the *Mary Celeste*. She was built at Spencer's Island in the Bay of Fundy and sold to American owners who sent her on a voyage to Genoa, Italy. She had a crew of eleven and the captain's wife and little daughter. Some weeks later, she was found by a British ship, drifting, empty. The weather was calm; everything on board was in perfect order. The remains of a recent meal lay on the table; the galley stove was warm, but there was not a living soul on board, nor anywhere in sight upon the sea.

<sup>4</sup> "Bluenose" is the nickname for Nova Scotians, and also the name of their famous racing champion, the fishing boat, *Bluenose*, built at Lunenburg.

What had happened to her crew? Where had they gone? And how? and why? From that day to this, no clue to the mystery of the *Mary Celeste* has ever been found.

(e) *Proud Growing*

The Pioneers were as proud of their new and growing industries as we are of ours today. In 1824, the *Montreal Gazette* had the "proud satisfaction of saying that Canadian potash stands as high in foreign markets as any from this continent". The *Gazette* reports also, "with feelings of honest pride" that the iron produced by the Marmora Iron Works in Toronto was of the best quality. By 1833, Halifax had a sugar refinery, Belleville a paper mill, and the Three Rivers Iron Works was advertising a great sale of stoves. Perhaps they wished to get rid of their old stock, for soon after that Dr. Nott introduced his marvellous Patent Stove for Burning Coal, the stove that proved "that coal *can* be burned in a Canadian stove".

## VI

### THE GOOD TIMES THEY HAD

Many of the Pioneers were poor folk who had never had a chance to go to school; others were educated people who, in the old land, had had fine homes and servants to wait on them. In the country districts of the new land, this made little difference. They all worked and played together. Bees were the commonest kind of party, and dancing was the favorite of all amusements. Quadrilles and waltzes were danced in towns, but the country people preferred square dancing with reels, jigs, and hornpipes in Scottish and Irish districts. They danced to the fiddle and the amusing directions of the caller-off. Favorite tunes were *Old Dan Tucker* and *Pop Goes the Weasel*.

Winter sports were tobogganing, skating, sleigh-riding, and

these parties usually ended with a hot meal and a dance. Curling was brought to Canada by the officers of the garrison at Quebec and spread gradually to the other provinces. Visiting was another "winter sport" for farmers had more time then and the snow packed roads made comfortable riding. People often drove several hundred miles in their homemade sleighs, stopping here and there to visit friends for weeks, or even months at a time.

Summer was a busy time, but Sunday afternoons were usually given to visiting or games. In Quebec, the French Canadians visited as they had always done. Some of the Pioneers of Ontario also visited their friends, but many of them were strict church people who did not approve of amusement on the Sabbath Day. In the Maritimes, the young folk gathered after church for running, jumping, wrestling, quoits, and other games. There were public holidays too; and now and then a circus came to town, or there was a day of horse racing. On summer evenings the young men practised wrestling; in the time of green corn, they went raccoon hunting. When they found a coon in a corn field they set their dogs on him. He usually escaped up a tree which the hunters had to climb, or cut down to dislodge him.

As soon as a church or school was organized, it became the center of the social life of the neighborhood. Tea meetings and socials were given; and the older women formed charitable societies. One of the first was the Potten (Quebec) Female Benevolent Society formed in 1823. It gave money to the Sabbath School, made up garments for the poor, and owned a cow which was rented out to poor people. The young people had singing schools and literary and debating societies; while young and old took part in the spelling matches in which the rivalry between settlements was very keen.



Raccoon Hunting

As things became more settled, decent people became ashamed of the amount of drinking done. Better families refused to serve liquor at bees, and braver farmers stopped providing it for harvesters. Toronto required men taken up for drinking to dig the stumps out of their streets; this punishment was so successful that other towns began to use it. Temperance societies were formed and spread rapidly. They held meetings once a month at which the young people gave papers and programs. People began to think it disgraceful to be drunk, and the amount of drinking lessened.

Life in the country still had its hardships, but it was improving. Frame and stone houses began to replace log cabins. Home-made furniture gave way to pieces made of fine maple or walnut by the village carpenter who often did beautiful work. Stoves were coming in; people were using more milk, butter and vegetables. Fashions in dress changed. The narrower skirts and high waists of the ladies, the knee breeches and powdered hair of the gentlemen of Loyalist times had gone out.

Women now wore a plain, close-fitting bodice with a wide skirt flaring over a hoop; and men's suits were not unlike those of today.

By 1825, Halifax, Saint John, Quebec, Montreal were classed as cities; St. John's,

Women's Fashions in  
Pioneer Days




Men's Fashions in  
Pioneer Days



Charlottetown, Kingston, Toronto, and Niagara as towns. Nova Scotia had 20 flourishing villages and each of the other provinces about the same number. In most places there were three classes of people: government officials and military officers; professional and business people; and working folk. In the cities, the three groups kept strictly apart, but in the towns and villages the first two classes mingled. Many of these people were educated and refined. Windsor, Nova Scotia, was famous

NEWFOUNDLAND

BEFORE PIONEERS  50,000 POPULATION

AFTER PIONEERS  100,000

BRITISH PROVINCES

BEFORE PIONEERS  500,000

AFTER PIONEERS  OVER 1,000,000

for its intellectual society; Charlottetown for its hospitality; Cobourg, Ontario, for its gay sleighing parties, afternoon teas, and Bachelors' Balls. Young men thought nothing of riding 40 miles in full dress to attend the balls. In Peterborough well-educated men "chopped, ploughed, and stood behind the counter without losing their grade in society for", says one writer, "it is education and manners that mark the gentleman in this country."

At a great ball in Quebec the rooms were decorated with flags, swords and green branches. The chaperons sat at one

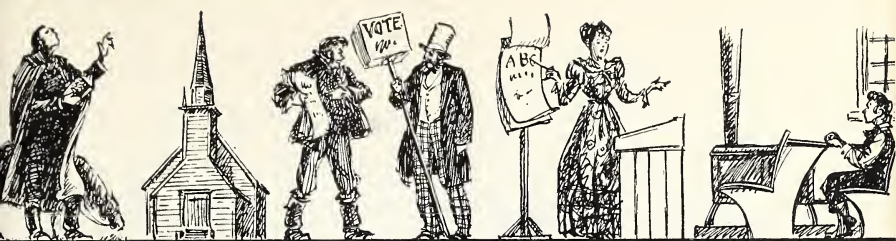


end of the room, while at the other the band thundered out quadrilles and waltzes. Except for the tunes, it might have happened yesterday.

"It was a very gay sight," says Eliot Warburton; "and there is one thing in which Canadien ladies certainly excel, that is dancing. I never saw one dance badly, and some of them are the best waltzers and polkists I have ever seen in a ballroom."

. . . . .

Even yet British North America had not enough people to hold all her land firmly, but she now had enough to take the next step forward. It was a very important one.



## Chapter Sixteen

### THE BRITISH PROVINCES WIN THEIR TOOLS

1815—1860

**B**RITISH North America now had land, and enough people to go on with. She needed next the tools with which to build land and people together into a country. The tools with which countries are built are churches, schools, and the power to govern. Other tools also are needed, as we shall see, but these three are of first importance.

The Pioneers were still poor, but they were now living pretty comfortably. They were proud of their provinces and beginning to have confidence in themselves. They felt that they were now able to manage their own affairs. They began to think, too, that it was time they were doing so, for by their mismanagement the officials had brought the business of the different colonies into a very unsatisfactory state. Yet they were not content with managing the governments of the provinces; they wished to control also the churches and schools. The Pioneers fought a long hard fight for a democratic way of life, that is for the right to manage their own churches, schools and governments, and they won it. By winning these rights, they started up the long road by which the six British Colonies became the country of Canada, and their people the Canadian Nation of today.

## THE BELLS BEGIN TO RING

(a) *The Church Bells*

Church bells have rung in Canada from the beginning; the churches have played a great part in the building of our nation. The church bells rang in Old Port Royal, in Quebec, in the Huron missions where the Fathers died with the Huron Christians for their faith. By the time the British came, the bells were ringing under the shining spires of a hundred churches up and down the St. Lawrence.

The first Protestant church in Canada was St. Paul's in Halifax. The settlers built it in their first year 1749-50. It was an Anglican church and in pioneer days it was already a century old. It was a fine sight, they say, to see the troops march there for service on a bright Sunday morning. Their scarlet uniforms filled the street with color; a brass band played before them; and the Governor, resplendent in gold lace and plumed hat, followed in his carriage.

When the Loyalists came, the missionary societies of England and Scotland sent missionaries to them. These men travelled about the country holding service wherever they could gather a few people together. Many a lonely woman cried and tears came to the eyes even of men, hearing again the hymns they had sung in their far-off homes. Dr. MacGregor of Nova Scotia travelled the roads for years before he had a church. Dr. John Stuart was at first the only minister west of Montreal. He settled at Kingston and preached, baptized, married and buried for the people as far west as the Grand River, and



at the same time farmed and taught school to add to his small salary. After a time William Lossee came from New York on a visit, and stayed to open a Methodist church near Napanee. He was followed by many Methodist ministers who were called "circuit riders" because they rode on horseback round a circuit, preaching at each place as they came to it. Between times good men, called "lay preachers" held services in the homes. By 1842, there were over 80,000 Methodists in Ontario.

Church bells rang even in the West. Two priests, Joseph Provencher and Sévère Dumoulen, came to Red River in 1818, and built the mission which grew into the Cathedral of St. Boniface. The bells under its twin towers rang welcome and farewell to the voyageurs coming and going on the long western rivers. When the Anglican, John West, arrived, it took him three months to marry all the couples waiting for the ceremony. The Anglicans had several churches before the Scots got a Presbyterian minister and built Kildonan Church. James Evans, a Methodist minister, invented a system of writing the Cree language, so that the Indians could be taught to read the Bible.

The church bells, at first so faint and far scattered through the lonely woods, rang nearer and clearer until most of the Pioneers had churches. They helped the small flame of Canadian spirit to grow, for they drew people together and gave them practice in managing community business. As the number of churches increased, each denomination elected members to a central committee which made rules for its churches, and built schools and colleges to educate its young people and train its ministers. To do these things the churches needed money. In Ontario it was expected that the churches would sell the Clergy Reserve lands to get money for building. When they began to do so, they quarreled.

Because the Anglican church is the official church of Eng-

land, the Anglicans said it was also the official church of Canada and they claimed all the church lands. The Presbyterian, Methodist, Baptist and other churches said that there was no official church in Canada, and they claimed a share of the lands. The quarrel was a bitter one and it went on for years. In the end it was decided that Canada should have no official church, but that all our churches should be free and equal. As if to punish them for quarrelling, none of them got the lands. The Government sold them and divided the money among the districts of the province.

## II

### THE SCHOOL BELLS CALL ALL THE CHILDREN

The school bells began to ring almost as soon as the church bells. The first school in Canada was a very funny one. The Jesuit fathers opened it for the Indian children of Quebec. They took in also six French boys, expecting that they would teach the Indians how to behave. It turned out quite the other way. The young Frenchmen learned so many savage ways from the Indians that the two groups had to be separated. Soon after that Mother Marie opened a school for girls in Quebec, and Bishop Laval founded his seminary. A hundred years later when the British came, there were still only a few church schools. Outside the towns very few people could read and write.

The school bells rang faintly for the Loyalists. It was not till pioneer days that they began to call all the children to school. The Pioneers did really big things for education. Before 1800, the Government did not pay for the education of all children as it does today. Schools were private; parents paid to send their children to them. The poorer people could not afford to do this. A few of their children were taught in church or charity schools, but most of them grew up without any schooling



at all. The missionaries started some schools; later the churches founded colleges, and the Government granted money for a few grammar (high) schools in each province.

The elementary schools were left to the parents. If they wanted one they clubbed together to set up a school. They elected three trustees to build a little log building and hire a teacher. He was usually an old soldier or someone unable to do heavy work. The parents paid a penny a week for each child and the teacher "boarded round", that is he lived two weeks with each family in turn. The school was heated by a fireplace. The desks were boards nailed along the walls under the windows with benches for seats. There were no blackboards, maps, or pictures. There were no classes; the teacher gave each pupil something to learn and later called upon him to repeat it. Only the "three R's: reading, 'riting and 'rithmetic" were taught. Discipline was very strict and the pupils were whipped for the smallest fault.

After the War of 1812, when the Pioneers began to feel proud of their provinces and to hold up their heads, they saw



A Pioneer School

that only a few children were being educated. Very few could afford to go to grammar school or to college, and in a great many districts the parents had not opened elementary schools. The leaders of the Pioneers knew that if people are to govern themselves, they must be educated, and they asked the government to grant money for elementary schools. New Brunswick began to do this in 1802 and now the other provinces followed her example. The money was given to any district which would open a school, and School Boards were appointed to pay it out. The Boards had no control over the districts; they could not make them hire good teachers, or even open a school, and a great many districts still did not do so.

Then in 1837, Prince Edward Island appointed a Superintendent of Education and the other provinces did the same. They appointed good men: Sir William Dawson in Nova Scotia, Egerton Ryerson in Ontario, and others. These men went abroad to study the school systems of other countries and came home to work out systems suited to our provinces. They planned good systems: each province set up a Department of Education; Normal Schools were opened; class teaching was introduced; courses of study were laid out, text books authorized, and inspectors appointed.

The fight came over who was to pay for all this. The parents alone could not afford it, that was clear. The leaders in education said that the elementary schools must be free for all children; and that they should be paid for by a general tax on everyone who owned property whether he had children or not. This raised a terrific storm. The property owners shouted that to make them pay for the education of other people's children was robbery. Private and church schools declared that free schools would ruin them. Rich people sneered at public schools; many poor people did not really care about

education and would not fight for it. But the leaders fought on, explaining, arguing, lecturing about free schools.

At last, in 1850, Ontario passed a law saying that the districts could raise money for their schools either by the parents subscribing, or by a general tax on all the people, whichever they liked. The general tax turned out to be so satisfactory that gradually all the school districts in Ontario adopted it. Quebec and New Brunswick did the same. The Government of Prince Edward Island took over the cost of all her schools.

The big fight came in Nova Scotia. For years Sir William Dawson had been asking for a compulsory school tax; that is a tax that everyone who owned property would have to pay. No one dared bring in such a law until Sir Charles Tupper became the leader of the Government. Tupper knew that if he passed a compulsory school tax law, the people would probably defeat him at the next election; but he was a strong, determined man and he dared to do it. The Assembly passed the law and the new school system was set up. Sir Charles paid for his boldness; he *was* defeated at the next election. But the new tax was now law, and in a few years Nova Scotia was proud to boast that she was the first province to have a compulsory school tax law.

It was a very long stride from the log cabins with their untrained teachers to the fine new elementary schools, free to every child, with their courses of study, text books, trained teachers, and inspectors. The Pioneers did a great thing for us, and for Canada, when they took that stride along the road to nationhood.

### III

#### THE PIONEERS SOLVE A PUZZLING PROBLEM

While the Pioneers fought for free churches and free schools, they were also fighting for free governments. The British Prov-

inces took an even longer stride forward, when they solved the puzzling problem of how to have a government that was all their own, without separating from Britain.

The Pioneers were like teen-agers. Teen-agers love their parents and do not want to leave them, but as they grow up they do want to manage their own affairs. Sometimes they find it difficult to persuade their parents to let them do this. The Pioneers loved their mother country, Britain. They did not want to leave her, but they did want to manage their own affairs, that is to govern themselves. They had some difficulty in persuading her to allow them to do so. As you remember, when the Americans wanted to do this, they fought a war with Britain and separated from her.

The Canadians fought too, but they fought with ideas instead of bullets. Settling the matter by discussion took a long time, but both sides learned a great deal. Between them they hammered out an important new idea about government. That idea made Canada ready to become a country and a nation.

### (a) *The Situation*

Governments have two parts: a legislative part which makes the laws, and an executive part which manages the business of the country. In a "responsible" government all the members of both parts are elected or appointed by the people. This makes them responsible to the people. That is they have to do what the people want them to do; for if they do not, the people can dismiss them and elect new members. The Pioneers wanted "responsible" government.

In those days the government of each British province had the two parts. The main law-making part was called The Assembly.<sup>1</sup> Its members were elected by the people and responsible

<sup>1</sup> Some of the provinces had also a Legislative Council which took part in passing the laws. Its members were appointed by the governor and so were on the side of the officials.

to the people. But the Executive part: the Governor and the Executive Council, that is the officials who managed the business of the province, were appointed by Britain and responsible to her.

Some of these officials belonged to noble, rich, or educated British families. Others came from well-to-do Loyalist and pioneer homes. Because of this they thought that they had a right to manage the business of the colonies and that the common people were not wise enough to govern themselves. At first there were not many officials and there were good men among them. But, as new positions came up to be filled, the officials gave them to their friends and relatives. Many of these people wished only to enrich themselves. They formed a close group which the people called a Family Compact. Each province had a Family Compact. The members took for themselves and gave to their friends, not only jobs but also huge blocks of land, contracts for canal and road work, and other favors. If people spoke, or wrote against them, they said they were disloyal to Britain. Sometimes they seized the property of those who complained, or even cast them into prison. When the Assembly passed laws they did not like, the Governor and Council threw them out.

Naturally many of the people disapproved of the Family Compacts and two parties grew up in each province. Those who favored the officials were called Tories; they wanted to keep the Government pretty much as it was. Those who disapproved of the Family Compact were called Reformers; they wanted the people to have control over *both* parts of the government, that is they wanted the whole of their government to be "responsible".

There were wise men and extremists in both parties. Many Tories were good loyal men who believed that the Reformers wished to separate from Britain and hand Canada over to the



United States. Most Reformers honestly believed all Tories to be selfish men who wanted to keep the government in their own hands and so were trying to prevent the people from taking control of it. The struggle went on for years.

(b) *The Struggle*

The struggle between the Tories and Reformers began in Nova Scotia. Joseph Howe, a clever young editor, attacked the Family Compact in his paper. They arrested him and brought him to trial. No lawyer dared to defend him, so he defended himself. He made such a brilliant speech that he was set free and the people carried him home on their shoulders. Soon after they elected him to the Assembly where he led the Reform Party in its fight to get Britain to give the people control over the officials.

At last Britain gave way a little. She told the Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia to appoint four members of the Assembly to the Council. This gave the people a little influence over their officials and was a beginning. Lemuel Allen Wilmot, the leader of the Reformers in New Brunswick, persuaded Britain to give their Assembly some control over the money and lands of the province. But when Newfoundland and Prince

Edward Island asked that their Assemblies should have control over their officials, Britain told them that they were too small to have responsible government and must wait till they had more experience.

Meantime things were working up to a fight in Quebec and Ontario. Up to this time the French and English Canadians had been quite good friends; now they began feuding. The Tory mer-



Joseph Howe

chants of Ontario and Quebec wanted canals built to carry their timber and wheat to market. They suggested that the two provinces should unite so that Quebec would help Ontario pay for the canals. They suggested, also, that English should be the only official language of the united parliament. This alarmed the French Canadians. They did not want to have to pay for the canals, and they were afraid that if they united with Ontario, they would lose their language and religion and be swallowed up by the English Canadians who already outnumbered them.

Louis Papineau was the leader of the Reformers in Quebec. He was a seigneur, handsome, a strong personality and a fine speaker, but rather hot headed. When the Family Compact planned to do things, the Assembly refused to vote money to pay for them. The Council then refused to do what the Assembly wanted. Neither of them would give in. When Britain threatened to let the officials *take* the money they needed, the Reformers were so angry that Papineau called upon them to rebel. A few of his followers did join him and they had three short battles with the soldiers, but the rebels were beaten and Papineau fled to the United States.

The Family Compact was ruling with a high hand in Ontario also. The struggle between Tories and Reformers began to come to a head when Robert Gourlay sent out a letter asking the people to tell what they thought were the chief reasons why the province did not advance. A great meeting of farmers was held and the principal complaints had to do with land-granting, the schools, and churches. As Gourlay was the ring-leader against them, the Tory Government imprisoned him and later drove him out of the country. When William Lyon Mackenzie wrote against them in his paper, some of their young men threw his printer's type into Lake Ontario. Five times the Re-

formers elected Mackenzie to the Assembly, and five times the Tories kept him out. By that time Mackenzie and the extreme Reformers were ready to fight. They gathered at Montgomery's tavern near Toronto, but there were not many of them and they, too, were defeated. Mackenzie had a very exciting time escaping to the United States; he was nearly caught a dozen times.

(c) *The Moderate Reformers Think It Out*

But the great majority of the Reformers were moderate men who disapproved of the rebellion. Their leaders were Robert Baldwin in Ontario, Sir Louis Lafontaine in Quebec, and Joseph Howe in Nova Scotia. Baldwin was a Canadian, born in Toronto, a quiet boy, a hard worker, with steady, hooded eyes. He became a lawyer, and though rich and educated, he was a Reformer. It was Baldwin who thought out the ideas that gave responsible government to the British Colonies.

Sir Louis Lafontaine was also a Canadian, the son of a farmer in Quebec. He was clever and looked, they say, like Napoleon. He too was a lawyer, a Reformer, and opposed to the Rebellions. After they were over, he took Papineau's place as leader of the French Canadians and won them to support his friend Baldwin's new idea.

Joseph Howe, the brilliant and fascinating, was born in Halifax in the same year as Baldwin, 1804. He grew up to be a poet, a writer, an editor, and an orator, as well as a great Reformer. He had a tongue to charm the birds off the trees. Above all he loved and served Nova Scotia. Once he did what she thought was wrong and she deserted him. That broke his heart. When it was too late, she forgave him.

Baldwin died at 51. Lafontaine became Chief Justice of Quebec and did Canada a great service by



Louis Lafontaine

working for friendship between French and English speaking Canadians. Howe's story comes in the next chapter.

(d) *The Problem*

After the Rebellions, the Reformers in Canada worked to bring in Baldwin's ideas for giving the people control over the officials. The first part of his plan was that all the members of the Executive Council should be chosen from the largest party in the Assembly. That would make the Council a kind of committee of the Assembly. This committee would appoint all the officials and manage all the business of the province. In this way both parts of the government would be responsible to the people who, when they were not satisfied, could dismiss both Assembly and Council and elect new ones.

Britain had this kind of government herself, but she was afraid to give it to her colonies for she thought that if she did, they would leave her and form a separate country as the United States had done. She said that if a colony controlled the whole of its government, it would *be* a separate country whether it wished to be or not. The Reformers claimed that their colony would not be separate for it would still have the Governor to represent Britain. Yet if they kept the Governor, there would still be two opposing parts: Britain's Governor and the people's Assembly and Council, and the quarrels would go on.

That was the most difficult part of the problem: how to have a completely responsible government with all parts elected or appointed by the people, and still be connected with Britain. It was a puzzling question. All the mother and daughter countries in the world needed to know the answer to it. If the Americans had known the answer, they need not have fought their revolution.

In the end the problem was solved by Robert Baldwin and the Canadians. Three great Englishmen



Robert Baldwin

helped them and Britain herself played the game fairly, as you shall hear. Finding the answer to that question was one of the biggest things Canada has ever done. Other nations have used it since. Australia, New Zealand, and South Africa used it in forming their governments. Indeed, the British Commonwealth of Nations is built on Canada's solution of this problem.

(c) *The Solution*

The difficult part was solved by Baldwin's second idea. This was as simple as it was clever. It said that, to prevent quarrels between the Governor and the people, Britain should name two or three matters such as trade, or crown lands, of which she would take charge. In all other matters the Governor should do what the Assembly and Council wished him to do. That was the solution. In that way the provinces (and later Canada) could be free without separating from Britain. To be free and yet associated with another nation was, in those days, a completely new idea. It was a very important one, for upon it has been built not only the British Commonwealth, but also the United Nations.

The Rebellions in Canada had alarmed Britain and she sent out Lord Durham to see what could be done. Durham was a Reformer and a great man. He spent five months here discussing the problem with all parties. Baldwin gave him his ideas. Durham approved of them and put them in his report.

Durham's Report is very famous. It said that Britain should give the colonies responsible government, that is: allow the people to elect the members of the Council as well as of the Assembly. That she should name the matters she wished to control,<sup>2</sup> and for the rest *tell the Governor to do what the people's Council and Assembly* asked him to do. Baldwin told Durham

<sup>2</sup> At first Britain did name some matters which she wished to control, but she gradually gave them all over to the Canadian people.



and Durham told Britain that giving the colonies responsible government would make them more loyal than ever. It did.

Durham's Report made several other suggestions: that Quebec and Ontario should be united in one province so that French and English Canadians should learn to work together; that all the colonies should unite to form one large country; that the people should elect township and county councils to manage their local affairs. The law forming local councils was one of the first passed by the new responsible governments of the provinces. The local Councils trained the people in managing community business and played an important part in making the people ready to become a nation.

#### (f) *How They Worked It Out*

The leaders of the Reformer party had given their ideas. Britain accepted Durham's Report and after a time told the Governors of the colonies to set up responsible governments. It was now the turn of the people to show that they could make them work. This was not easy, for responsible government in a colony was a new thing. Few people understood it, and the Family Compacts and Tories were strongly opposed to it. It took ten years of arguing and trying different ways before the provinces had it working smoothly.

By this time most people understood that the Executive Council managed the business of the country; and that responsible government meant that the councillors must be chosen from the elected assembly, so that they would be sure to manage the business as the people wished. But many people did not yet understand that to make responsible government work, the councillors must all be chosen from the *same party*, the *largest party*, in the Assembly. The Reformers wanted the councillors to be chosen from the largest party, but the Tories wanted

them chosen from *both* parties. Joseph Howe had already tried this in Nova Scotia and found that it did not work, for the two parties just voted against one another and the Council got nothing done.

The second thing that the people did not understand was that to make responsible government work *the Governor must do what the Assembly and the Council told him to do*. Before this the Governors had always told the Council and Assembly what to do and for a time they went on doing so. This made trouble, for example:

Lord Durham had suggested that Quebec and Ontario should be united in one province with English as the one official language. He hoped that requiring the French Canadians to speak English, and work with the English Canadians in parliament would make them British. He was wrong in this, but Britain accepted his idea and sent out Lord Sydenham to bring about the union. Governor Sydenham was a very clever and charming man. He soon talked the two provinces into uniting, though neither of them really wanted to do so. The Union Act was passed in 1840 by the Assemblies in both provinces. The United Province was called Canada and its Assembly and Council met in Kingston.

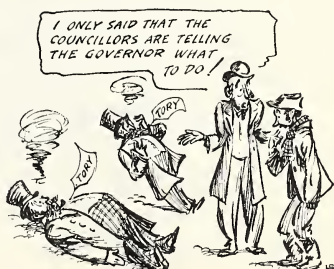
Lord Sydenham chose both Tory and Reform members of the Assembly to form the Council. He told them what to do, and brought in laws for the Assembly to pass. The Tories said this was responsible government, but the Reformers said it wasn't. They said that in a responsible government, the councillors must all belong to the same party, and that *they* should appoint the officials; bring in the laws; *and tell the Governor what to do*. The Tories were horrified at the idea of telling the Governor what to do. This dispute caused trouble in all the colonies.

At last, in 1846, a fortunate thing happened. Britain elected

a new government and Lord Grey was placed in charge of the Colonies. Grey was Durham's brother-in-law. He understood responsible government and sent word to the Governor of Nova Scotia that he must choose the councillors from the largest party in the Assembly and do what they wished him to do.

This was exactly what the Reformers had been fighting for and there was great rejoicing among them. An election was held and the Reform party won a majority in the Assembly. The Governor asked their leader, Joseph Howe, to choose the councillors. He chose them all from the Reform party. Howe was now called the Prime Minister of Nova Scotia and the Council was called the Cabinet. As the Councillors all belonged to the same party, the business was done without quarreling. The Tories did not like this, but they knew that if they won a majority at the next election, they would choose the councillors and manage the business, so they waited and worked for that. New Brunswick also changed to responsible government. Newfoundland petitioned Britain for it, and after nine years she got it. Prince Edward Island petitioned until she was tired. Then her Assembly struck. It refused to pass more laws or to vote the money needed to run the government. Britain gave in and told the Lieutenant Governor to bring in responsible government.

The change was not made so quietly in Canada. The new Governor there was Lord Elgin, Lord Durham's son-in-law. Like Grey, he understood responsible government and believed in it. The Reformers won a majority in the election, so Elgin asked Robert Baldwin and Louis Lafontaine to become joint Prime Ministers and to choose the Cabinet (Executive Council) from the Reform party in the Assembly. They did

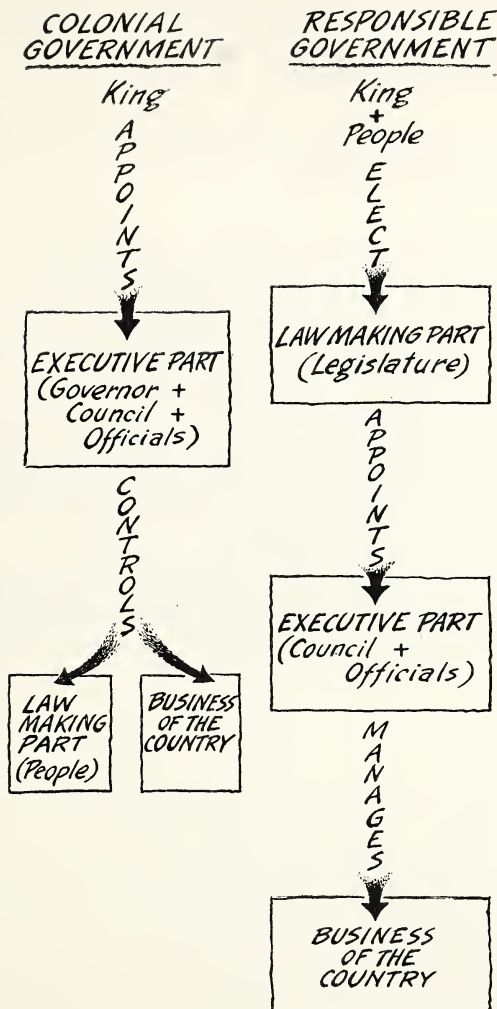


so. The Cabinet organized the business of the country and brought in many useful laws.

At last Lafontaine and Baldwin brought in a bill called the Rebellion Losses Bill. This bill said that those people whose property had been destroyed in the Rebellions should be paid for their losses. There was a hot debate over this. The Tories said that if it were passed, rebels would be paid for their losses. They opposed it bitterly and insisted that Elgin must not sign it. But Elgin knew that under responsible government the Governor must do what the people tell him to do. A majority of the members of the Assembly voted in favor of the bill. It was Elgin's duty to sign it. He signed. The bill became law.

The Assembly was then meeting in Montreal. There were many Tories there and they were furious. A mob of them gathered in the street and pelted Lord and Lady Elgin with rotten eggs as they drove home from the signing. As evening came on, the mob grew wilder. "Burn the Parliament Buildings" cried one, and off they rushed to do it. The building and its fine library were destroyed. A few days later, Elgin risked his life to drive again to the Assembly. This time the mob pelted him with stones, smashing his carriage. But the fuss and fury soon died away. Elgin had given the provinces their last lesson in responsible government. Both parties now understood it and have made it work quite smoothly ever since.

When Britain's other large colonies: Australia, New Zealand, South Africa heard of Baldwin's plan, they also asked for responsible government. The old English families who had grown rich on Newfoundland fisheries, Hudson Bay furs, West Indian sugar, and Canadian timber thought Britain would be ruined if she gave the colonies their freedom. But the new manufacturers now ruled Britain and they were interested chiefly in markets for their goods. They were rather glad to be rid





of the bother of the colonies and gave them responsible governments. So the Canadian idea went marching round the world, building a new kind of British Empire called a Commonwealth.<sup>3</sup> It is being studied today in many colonies and countries that are trying to work out free governments, and so is helping to build the modern free world.

. . . . .

Meantime the British Provinces had their free churches, free schools, free town and district councils, and free, responsible governments. The free churches trained the people to do what they believed to be right. The free schools taught them to read, think over, and discuss the problems of the country. The free local councils gave them practice in managing community business.<sup>4</sup> The free, responsible government did what a majority of the people wanted them to do. The provinces had the tools to build a country and they went to work at once to build one. That was Canada's fifth adventure.

<sup>3</sup> A commonwealth is a group of nations each of which is free and independent, and yet associated with the others, like the members of a team, to work for the good of all.

<sup>4</sup> Of course not everyone thought about, and helped with public business. Many "left it to the other fellow" just as many people do today. But enough people did these things to go ahead building our country.



# *The Fifth Adventure: Canada Becomes a Country*

## Chapter Seventeen

### CONFEDERATION

1850—1867

THE British Provinces now had their tools and were free to think, discuss, and govern themselves. In winning these rights they had had a good deal of practice in using the first two; but up to this time they had not had much real practice in using their power to govern. Yet they soon used all three tools quite skilfully and built themselves into a country in a surprisingly short time.

#### I

##### DREAMS

##### *(a) British North America Is Pushed Out of The Nest*

It is an interesting thing that about 1850 life began to change. The Pioneers had been working away at a stage-coach pace; suddenly everything began to move faster. In the British Provinces several remarkable things happened quickly. The first new thing was governing themselves; that made the people feel proud, confident, ready for another stride forward.

A second exciting thing was freedom to trade. Britain had allowed her colonies to trade only within the Empire. The provinces had been doing well selling their timber, wheat and flour to Britain; she permitted their goods to come in with a lower duty, or tax, than she charged other countries. This made Canadian goods cheap in Britain and gave them an advantage. Now Britain became a free trade country; that is she charged no duty on any goods entering Britain. The provinces had to compete with all countries. They were "pushed out of the nest" and fell with a great thump. They were terribly frightened. The timber, wheat, and flour merchants declared they would be ruined. Some of them were ruined. They talked angrily against Britain and threatened to join the United States.

But when the provinces looked about them, they found that they had fallen on their feet. For Britain now allowed them to trade with any country they wished. Ships from many countries came up the St. Lawrence. The United States bought more of their products. In 1854 Lord Elgin went to Washington and came home with a Reciprocity Treaty which said that, for ten years, many kinds of goods were to pass both ways across the border free of duty. The Pioneers had stepped out on the road that has led Canada to her present place of third largest trading nation in the world. With free government and free trade, the provincial leaders began to dream of still greater things.



### (b) *The Small Dream*

It was not so small either. Their first dream was of a union between the Maritime Provinces and Canada.<sup>1</sup> Lord

<sup>1</sup> Remember that in those days Canada meant only Quebec and Ontario.

Durham had advised it and people had talked about it, but always as a dream. It would be a fine thing if the six small, unimportant colonies united to form one big important country, but few thought it could be done, at least not for a long time. The two groups of provinces were cut off from one another by the mountainous country in Gaspé and northern Maine, and by the ice which closed the St. Lawrence in winter. What was even more important, they were not much interested in one another. The Maritimers were fishermen, lumbermen and ship-builders. They faced the sea and were interested in their customers: Britain, Europe and the West Indies. The Canadians were farmers; they were loyal to Britain but more interested in their neighbors in the United States where many of them had been born. Now this situation began to change.

(c) *The Railways Did It*

The railways changed it. They made it possible for the British Provinces to unite. Railways seem commonplace to us nowadays, and slow compared to planes; but our forefathers compared them with the horse-drawn stage; to them they were wonders of speed. With the telegraph, which had been introduced in 1844, the railways completely changed land travel, communications, and trade. Mail which had taken a week, now arrived in a day. Business men knew the latest prices. Farmers could sell their produce in distant cities.

Britain and the United States had been building railways, and the British Provinces had been talking about doing so for years. The provinces, being so wide-spread, needed them badly. They began late, but worked fast. The first important line ran from Montreal to Portland to give Montreal a winter port. Nova Scotia built one from Halifax to Truro. Canada came out in a rash of short lines to help the rivers carry down her timber. Then things steadied down. The small lines were connected to

make the Grand Trunk Railway which ran from Sarnia to Rivière du Loup (Riv ee air d Loo). The provinces needed only to build it on to Halifax to have a railway binding them together.

(d) *The Big Dream*

As the railways spread their network over the land, they changed it. Places that had been far apart seemed near; things that had been hard to do became easy. The great fierce lion of a land that the Pioneers had worked so hard to tame only a little, the railways tamed quickly. The railways changed the people too. They were no longer Pioneers, they were new people, they were the Builders. The Pioneers had been shut in to their farms, their lumber camps, their fishing villages. The Builders moved about and moved fast. They thought little of the 700 odd miles separating Canada and the Maritimes; trains would eat them up in hours. The union of the provinces had been a dream to the Pioneers; it was real to the Builders.

The Pioneers had talked about the union; the Builders brought it about. The first step was to finish the railway. Nova Scotia sent Joseph Howe to England to ask for help in building a railway to connect Canada and the Maritimes. He could not get a promise at that time, but the leaders of the provinces were not discouraged; they went on working for union; writing articles, holding meetings, speaking, explaining it to the people. Canada's "silver-tongued orator", D'Arcy McGee, made a yearly visit to the Maritimes to speak for union with his rich voice and wonderful eloquence. In 1864 he took with him a large party of leading Canadians to meet and make friends with the people of the Maritimes. At the grand banquet given for them in Fredericton, McGee made so fine a speech that he won over Leonard Tilly, the New Brunswick leader, to the cause of union.

Already Nova Scotia's Joseph Howe, and Canada's Alexander Galt, George Brown and D'Arcy McGee were dream-



ing a still greater dream. They were speaking hopefully of the day when all the British Provinces from the Atlantic to the Pacific would be joined in one great country whose vast distances would be bridged by railways.

## II

### DANGERS

In spite of these brave dreams, the provinces were worried, Ontario especially. Most of her farming land had now been taken up. The new settlers who came to Canada had to go north to the poorer land on the edge of the Canadian Shield to get farms. Many of them did not like this and moved on across the lakes into the fine open country of the American West. Many of Ontario's own sons followed them. Canada had a big West of her own, but it was cut off from her by the rough land where the Canadian Shield reaches down to the northern shores of the Great Lakes. Losing thousands of good settlers was bad enough, but that was not the worst of it.

#### (a) *Red River Threatened*

As you remember, when the Hudson's Bay and North West Companies united, Montreal lost her fur business and Canada lost touch with her North West.

In the 30 years since then Red River had grown slowly. Company officers and voyageurs settled there, when they retired with their half-breed families. By 1843, Red River had a population of over 5,000 of whom about 1,000 were white, the rest half-breed. The farmers suffered now and then from plagues of mice and grasshoppers, from blizzards and floods, but in general they did well. They grew wheat on their



Dangers Threatening Canada

front fields and pastured cattle on the back ones. They had miles of prairie upon which to cut hay for their stock. In summer the whole settlement went haying, living in tents, picnicking till the work was done. Most of the Métis hunted or freighted for the Company which now used boats on the rivers and Red River cart brigades for freighting across the prairie.

In this way the people of Red River had been living comfortably, but shut off from the world. They got their mail and new clothes once a year when the Company's ship came from England. They had their churches and books, and plenty of fun: hunting, riding, dancing, visiting one another. Twice each summer the Métis went on a big buffalo hunt. In those days Indians and fur traders used the buffalo chiefly for food and killed comparatively few of them. They still pastured on the plains in thousands. As many as 800 Red River carts and over 1,000 men, women, and children joined the hunt. The hunters operated under a chief and ten sub-chiefs and obeyed them strictly. They waited quietly till the great herd drew near. Then, guiding their ponies only with their knees, they dashed upon the buffalo, shooting furiously. They brought back hundreds of buffalo tongues, a great delicacy, and thousands of pounds of dried buffalo meat from each hunt.

"Red River is a perfect Canaan as far as good cheer goes," wrote Governor Simpson to a friend. He had married Roderick Finlayson's pretty sister and was now living in Red River.

But now danger approached from the south. The new American railways were pouring settlers into their West. The newcomers moved rapidly up towards the Canadian boundary. Already St. Paul was a busy frontier village. It was only 500 miles from Red River and an easy road. The Red River people arranged to get a monthly mail through the new town. Soon

a stream of Red River carts squealed<sup>2</sup> back and forth carrying freight and passengers to and from St. Paul. Red River was no longer cut off from the world; it was connected with the United States.

The Hudson's Bay Company required the half-breeds to sell their furs to the Company. But the freighters soon found that if they could slip a few furs down to St. Paul, they could get big prices for them. Smuggling began. It was dangerous; it was exciting; it was profitable; and it grew by leaps and bounds. The Company tried to stop it, but could not. At last they caught William Sayers, a popular Métis, and brought him to trial. An excited mob surrounded the Court House and though Sayers was found guilty of trading in furs, the judge dared not punish him. The crowd went off shouting, "The trade is free! The trade is free!" After that it *was* free.

Clearly the Hudson's Bay Company was losing control over Red River; a stronger government was needed. The Americans in the place wanted the colony to join the United States; the Canadians petitioned to join Canada. Ontario needed more land and asked Britain to annex Red River to Canada. Britain sent out Captain Palliser to see if prairie land was fit for farming. He reported that there was good farm land in the wooded parts, but that the South-West was too dry. Dawson and Hind, sent out by Canada, reported that much of the land was fertile. Dawson, an engineer, surveyed a road from Fort William to Red River. But Canada was far away and there was no road as yet; while the new state of Minnesota was near, easy to reach, friendly. Which would Red River choose?

(b) *Fifty-Four Forty or Fight: (British Columbia)*

Meantime, British Columbia had been having an even more exciting time than Red River; she stood in even greater danger.

<sup>2</sup> Red River cart wheels were never greased and so squealed horribly.

As soon as Dr. McLoughlin had the fur business organized on the Columbia, he began farming to grow grain and vegetables for his men in the forts up the river. The crops grew amazingly. When news of this reached the American settlers struggling across the desert, they set out for Oregon. Many died on the long, long trail, but in 1843, a large party, ragged and starving, reached the Columbia. Dr. McLoughlin fed them and settled them along the Willamette River.

After that American settlers swarmed into Oregon. They formed a government and raised the cry "Fifty-four Forty or fight". By this they meant that the whole coast as far north as 54° 40", the Russian boundary, must be given to the Americans or they would go to war. Britain and the United States had agreed to trade on the Columbia together, but the time had now come to divide the land between them. The Canadians had expected the boundary to be the Columbia, but in the Oregon Treaty of 1846, Britain agreed to let it be the 49th parallel through to the coast. So Canada lost part of the state of Washington. Again fur traders had failed to hold the country against farmers.

The Hudson's Bay Company men had already chosen a site for their new headquarters. In March, 1843, James Douglas led a party of men to Camosun on the southern tip of Vancouver Island to build Fort Victoria. It was a beautiful place. The



Fort Victoria

small, safe harbor was surrounded with green meadows gay with spring flowers and rising gently to fine groves of oak; while away to the south the Olympics lifted their snow-clad peaks into the blue sky. The fort was built at the foot of what is now Fort Street and as soon as the palisade was finished, Chief Trader Finlayson put his men to work farming. Everything they planted did well; Victoria bloomed like a rose.

Now that the Canadian fur traders could no longer use the Columbia they turned to the "impassable" Fraser. Fort Yale was built at the head of the lower river; and orders were sent to the inland posts that they must, at all costs, break a way through from Kamloops to Yale. Three brigades did get through, but with heavy losses in furs and canoes. The pack-horse route up the Coquihalla River seemed the least difficult, so Fort Hope was built at the mouth of the Coquihalla. After that the traders brought their furs out to Fort Hope where the pack-trains met the supply boats from Fort Langley.

The land west of the mountains, like Athabasca, did not belong to the Hudson's Bay Company; they rented it from Britain. The loss of Oregon made Britain understand that if she wished to hold what she had left of the Pacific coast, she must send settlers to it. Naturally the Hudson's Bay Company did not want this. To prevent it, they asked for a grant of Vancouver island. After much discussion, Britain gave it to them for ten years on condition that they should bring in settlers. This made Vancouver Island a colony and Britain sent out Mr. Blanshard to govern it. But the Company managed everything. Mr. Blanshard found nothing to do and soon went home. Chief Factor James Douglas was then appointed Governor.

(c) *The Gold Rush*

Since his young days at Fort St. James, Douglas had become a skilful fur trader and a wise leader. He made a good Governor,



building schools, improving roads, and developing the coal mine at Nanaimo. The Company asked a high price for the land so very few colonists came; but Douglas had an Assembly elected. It was a small one, but it was made up of strong men. This was a good thing, for the excitement was about to begin.

Wandering American miners first found gold in the sand of the lower Thompson and soon all the Indians round were digging for it. They found so much that news of it crept out, flashed round the world, and the "gold rush" began. The "49ers", men who had "rushed" to the Californian gold strikes in 1849, got out their pans again. Men left their offices, stores, and farms. Every ship carried a double load of passengers to Victoria. With packs and pans on their backs and their guns handy, the treasure seekers crossed to the Fraser in ships, skiffs, boats, canoes, anything that would float, and began washing the river sands for gold. Shelter was easy to provide and fuel plentiful. Food was the great problem for there were no farms in the country to feed the multitudes. Yet somehow Governor Douglas kept order, and food moved in.

Most of the miners were Americans and groups of them began electing councils to manage their affairs. Douglas had seen Oregon lost; he knew their next step would be to claim the land for the United States. He was Governor only of Vancouver Island, but he boldly acted as Governor of the mainland also. He put out a proclamation saying that no one might dig for gold without a license from the Colonial Government. This warned all comers that they were on British soil and under British law. As soon as news of the situation reached England, the parliament set up a colony on the mainland. It had been a close shave, but British Columbia was saved again.

Douglas was appointed Governor of the new colony also. but was asked to resign from the Hudson's Bay Company, which

he did. Britain sent out a troop of Royal Engineers to help him in laying out roads and in keeping order. Fort Langley was chosen as the capital of the new colony and there, in November 1858, Governor Douglas read the Royal Proclamation setting up the colony of British Columbia, and making Mr. Begbie its judge.

Here then were the last two British colonies, young, small, 2,000 miles from Canada; but only a few hours sail from the new state of Washington. The few people in the two colonies knew little about the other provinces, but they were already trading with the new states to the south. The danger was that they would join them.

#### (d) *Civil War In The United States*

And now came another kind of danger: war between two parts of the United States. The quarrel began over the slaves. The Southern States had always kept slaves; the Northern States believed slavery to be wrong. The Northerners wanted the Southerners to set their slaves free. They refused. They said that they would break away from the union and form a country of their own. The Northern States said they would not allow the South to break up the union. In the end the North fought to keep the United States united.

The war lasted four years. The people of the British Provinces also believed slavery to be wrong and hundreds of our young men joined the North to fight for the freedom of the slaves. Britain, too, disapproved of slavery, but she allowed Southern ships to be built in British and Canadian ports from which they sailed to attack Northern ships. This made the North very angry with Britain and the British Provinces. The North won the war. The Union was saved; the slaves were freed; but for a long time the people of the South hated the North.

The North was still angry with Britain and the provinces.

She had a large army and she threatened to take the provinces. For years the people along the border were unfriendly to our people. Also the United States refused to renew the Reciprocity Treaty. It had given the provinces a large market and helped greatly to build up their prosperity. The loss of it was a great blow.

All these dangers worked for union in the provinces. As the leaders saw the Americans fighting fiercely to hold their union together, they remembered that they could form a union without any fighting at all. When the Americans threatened to attack them, they saw that separate they were helpless, but united they might make a stand. When the Americans refused to continue reciprocity in trading, they thought that they might make up for the loss of the American market by trading with each other. Last, but not least, the big dream drew them: if, with a railway, they could unite not only Newfoundland, the Maritimes and Canada, but also Red River and the two new Pacific Colonies, they would have a country larger than the United States; and could, perhaps, build as strong a nation.

### III

#### DEADLOCK

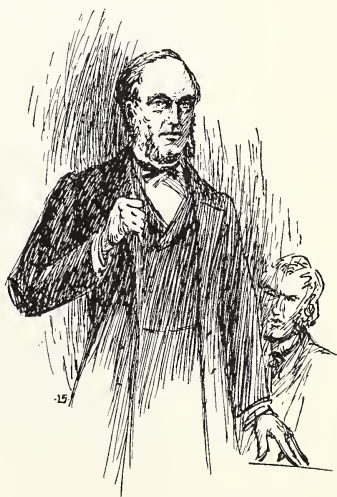
In spite of these good reasons for uniting, the union did not advance. The provinces could not agree on a plan. Also they felt that there could not be a real union without a railway to bind them together. They could not afford to build so long a line themselves, and they had not yet been able to arrange with Britain to help them. At last a thing happened which brought matters to a head.

Canada was in trouble again. The union of the two provinces had not been a success. The French Canadians believed that the English Canadians wanted to deprive them of

their language and religion. The English thought the French wanted to "rule the roost".<sup>3</sup> At last the Reformers brought into the Assembly a law called Representation by Population, "Rep by Pop" for short. This law said that: as Ontario now had more people than Quebec, she should have more members in the Assembly. This made Quebec angry because when the two provinces united she had had more people than Ontario, and had not been given more members. As the two groups in the Assembly were the same size and now always voted against one another, no laws could be passed. There was a deadlock.

George Brown was the leader of the Ontario group which wanted Rep by Pop; while John A. Macdonald and Georges Cartier led the Quebec group. Brown and Macdonald were bitter enemies, but in the deadlock crisis they showed their greatness by laying aside their personal quarrels and acting for the good of the country. George Brown led the way. He rose in the House and said that he was willing to work with Cartier and Macdonald to form a federal union either of Ontario and Quebec, or of Canada, the Maritimes and the North West Territories. It was a dramatic moment. A hush fell upon the House. Members held their breath while he spoke, then burst into cheers. One excitable young member rushed across and hugged him. That made everyone laugh and feel friendly and willing to work together. Cartier and Macdonald accepted Brown's offer and the two groups united to work for union.

<sup>3</sup> This feuding has gone on, off and on, ever since and has hindered the growth of national feeling in Canada. Modern Canadians are trying to put away these old quarrels and work together to build up the nation.



George Brown Rose to Speak

As it happened the Maritime Provinces had already arranged to meet in Charlottetown to discuss a union of the three provinces and perhaps Newfoundland. The Canadians asked for permission to send representatives to this meeting and were invited to do so.

#### IV

##### THE DREAMERS: THE FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION

##### *(The Characters in the Play)*

*Sir Alexander Tilloch Galt* (1817-1893), the financier. Born and educated in England. The first to lay down a plan for the union of the provinces and one of its strongest supporters. Worked out the financial arrangements for the union. Became Canada's first Minister of Finance, but resigned to return to his own business.

*Thomas D'Arcy McGee* (1825-1868), the orator. An Irishman with a beautiful voice, a poet, writer, and editor. Had been a rebel in Ireland and escaped to the United States. Came to Canada and was soon elected to parliament; a witty debater and fine speaker. Won the Irish Canadians, and many others, to Confederation. Was shot and killed on his own doorstep by a Fenian.<sup>4</sup>

*George Brown* (1818-1880), the fighter. A Scotsman. An honest, earnest, determined man, who fought valiantly for what he believed to be right and never gave way an inch to what he thought wrong. Founded the *Globe* newspaper and helped to win responsible government. One of the first men to speak for bringing the West into Confederation. Worked to win Confederation, then retired to edit his paper. Shot by an employee who had been discharged for drunkenness.

*Sir Leonard Tilley* (1818-1896), the gentleman. A Canadian, born at Gagetown, New Brunswick. "Loyal to his own

<sup>4</sup> The Fenians were an Irish-American society. See page 323.



side and without bitterness to his opponents, a gentleman". Worked his way up from being a clerk in a drug store to be: member of Parliament, Premier of New Brunswick, Cabinet Minister of the Dominion, and Lieutenant-Governor of his own province. Lost New Brunswick for Confederation by doing what he thought right and won her back by his good sense.

*Sir Charles Tupper* (1821-1915), the strong man. A Canadian, born at Amherst, Nova Scotia. Taught school to pay his way through college. Took his medical degree at the University of Edinburgh and became a successful doctor. Wise, strong, determined, knew what it was best to do and *made* people do it. Gave Nova Scotia free schools against her will; took her into Confederation against her will. Became Prime Minister of Canada at 75 and led the Conservative party till he was 80.

*Sir Georges Cartier* (1814-1873), the key man. A Canadian, born on the Richelieu, an outspoken man with a rather harsh voice. Rebelled with Papineau, but after responsible government was granted became a strong supporter of Britain. A lawyer, quick witted, quick in decision, a statesman. The key man because he brought the French Canadians into Confederation. Quebec was, as it were, Canada's pretty wife. Had she not said "Yes", we could not have had Confederation.

*Sir John A. Macdonald* (1815-1891), the diplomat. A Canadian, (born in Scotland but came to Canada at 5). Educated at Kingston. Entered a law office at 15 and opened his own office at 21. A Tory, but opposed to the Family Compact. Member of Parliament before he was 30. Extremely gay, friendly person with an extraordinary gift for managing people, for making friends and keeping them. All admit that it was his supreme skill, patience and tact in getting people to work together that won Confederation. His story will be continued.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup> All these men, except McGee and Brown, were made baronets, with the title Sir, for their work in winning Confederation.

## V

### DISCUSSION

The Charlottetown Conference had already begun when the seven Canadian representatives arrived. They were welcomed by the government of the hospitable little island; and by the leaders of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick: Dr. Charles Tupper, and Leonard Tilley. The Maritime delegates had been talking of uniting the three provinces under one government. The Canadians suggested a federal union; that is, one in which each province would have a provincial government to manage its own affairs; and would also elect members to a union government which would meet at some central place to attend to the business in which all the provinces were interested. The Maritime delegates accepted this idea; and so at Charlottetown, in September, 1864, "in the hearts and minds of the delegates assembled," the Dominion of Canada was born.

The Canadians invited the Maritime delegates to meet in Quebec to work out a plan for the new government and an invitation was sent also to Newfoundland. Prince Edward Island entertained the delegates at a grand banquet and ball in the Province Building. All the important people of The Island attended and no expense was spared. At the banquet the leaders of the provinces spoke enthusiastically of the great nation that should grow out of the union, and hope, pride, and joy made the evening one never to be forgotten.

The delegates then proceeded in turn to Halifax, Fredericton and Saint John. Everywhere they were warmly welcomed, gladly heard, and sumptuously entertained. October 10th had been fixed upon for the Quebec Conference and in good time the beautiful new steamship, *Victoria*, was sent to bring the Maritime delegates and their wives and daughters to Quebec where rooms were provided for them in the fashionable Hotel St. Louis. Two delegates had already arrived from Newfoundland,

but with power only to discuss, not act, for their government. The Governor-General entertained the guests at a "Drawing-Room"; the "Bachelors" gave a grand ball in their honor; and the City of Quebec showered them with courtesies.

At their meetings the delegates worked out a plan for the provincial and central (federal) governments. The plan said that the provinces should have power to make laws about local things such as schools and social welfare; and that the federal government should have power over things like money and trade that must be the same for the whole country. The plan gave power over 16 things to the provinces, and over 29 things to the federal government. The Fathers of Confederation did this because they wanted the central government to be strong to hold the provinces together, to build the nation. The plan said also what taxes each government might require the people to pay. It gave most of the taxes to the federal government, but said that it must pay a sum of money called a subsidy to each province every year to make up to it for the taxes taken from it by the central government. When all the points of the plan had been written down, the delegates signed them. The plan was then sent to the different provinces to be discussed.

## VI

### DOMINION

The next step was to have the union, the Confederation,<sup>6</sup> of the provinces accepted by their Assemblies. The meetings at Charlottetown and Quebec had been successful because the delegates believed in confederation and wished to bring it about; but there were many people in the country who were afraid of it. The provincial leaders expected opposition in their Assemblies and they met plenty of it.

<sup>6</sup> A Confederation is a group of provinces or states united in a league to support one another.

The year 1865 was an unlucky one. The Canadian Assembly voted for Confederation. Prince Edward Island voted against it. The delegates from Newfoundland, Mr. Carter and Mr. Shea, had returned from Quebec very enthusiastic about uniting with the provinces. An election was held and the Confederation party won; but there was some opposition, so the Newfoundlanders decided to wait and see what the other provinces did.

Premier Leonard Tilley of New Brunswick also thought it right to hold an election, and the men opposed to Confederation stumped the country against it. They told the farmers that



Cartoon: Chasing a Cow with a Tax Notice

if they joined Canada "every horse, every cow, every sheep they owned would be taxed and even their poultry would not escape". Naturally the people voted against Confederation and it was defeated by a large majority. Premier Tilley and most of his supporters lost their seats in the Assembly.

In Nova Scotia, Joseph Howe feared that Nova Scotia might be placed at a disadvantage by being united with the larger provinces. So many Nova Scotians agreed with him that Charles Tupper, the Prime Minister of the province, did not hold an election. This made the people angry, and Howe by his fiery speeches roused them to white heat against Confederation.

But 1866 was a new year and several things happened to make people think again. Britain sent word to the Lieutenant-

Governors of the provinces that she approved of Confederation and wished them to work for it. In March, the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States came to an end. The profitable trade which had been moving freely back and forth across the border stopped. The provinces saw that they would need to trade more with one another. In April the Fenians gathered on the American side of the border. The Fenians were a society of Irish Americans who hated Britain and had made a mad plan to seize Canada. One band appeared on the border of New Brunswick. The New Brunswickers rushed to guard it. There was no fighting there, but the Fenians actually did cross the Niagara River and fought with the Canadians. The Fenian Raids made the provinces realize how much stronger they would be if they were united.

Meantime Mr. Tilley had been going about his province explaining Confederation to the people. In the election that summer, New Brunswick voted in favor of it, and Mr. Tilley again became the Premier. Some Nova Scotians also were changing their minds. They still did not like the Quebec plan, but the Assembly voted to send delegates to London to plan with the British Government for *some* form of union among the provinces. Newfoundland was still "waiting to see".

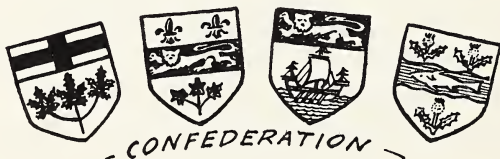
In December, delegates from Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Canada met in London. John A. Macdonald was the chairman of the meeting in which they again discussed the Quebec Plan. Macdonald led the discussion so skilfully that he was able to get them all to agree to the plan when they had made a few changes in it. They then met the British leaders and the plan was made into a bill, which the British Parliament passed. It was signed by the Queen and so became a law called the British North America Act. Several names were suggested for the new country. Macdonald suggested the Kingdom of



Canada, to show that Canada was now independent and connected with Britain only by having the same king. It is said that Mr. Tilley suggested the "Dominion of Canada". Queen Victoria had already chosen Ottawa as the capital. The first dream had come true and the delegates returned in triumph. On July 1, 1867, a new country, the Dominion of Canada, stepped out upon the stage of the world.

. . . . .

July 1, 1867! That was a great, proud, and happy day. The provinces had used their tools well: Canada was a country. At least she was half a country. She had a noble name and four provinces (Ontario and Quebec became separate provinces again in Confederation). But with four provinces and the Great West to win, our fifth adventure had really only begun.





## Chapter Eighteen

### BUILDING EAST AND WEST

1867—1886

ON July 1, 1867, our people celebrated the birth of our country; on July 2, like good parents, they began to help her to grow up. There was a great deal to be done, for that young Canada had only four provinces and no training at all in acting as a united country. For years her people had been working to build up their separate provinces; they knew and loved them. Many were proud of the new Dominion but no one loved her, and some did not even approve of her.

The leaders of the Dominion Government were enthusiastic about her. They saw, in imagination, a magnificent Canada stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific and from the 49th parallel to the Arctic Ocean, the second largest country in the world. In their dreams they saw this great Canada filled with busy, prosperous people, and they set themselves to bring the whole country into the Dominion. They did bring it in, and in only six years.

#### I

##### THE FIRST DOMINION PARLIAMENT

The first thing to be done was to elect the new Dominion Parliament. It was to be made up of members from all the

provinces and was to meet in Ottawa, the new capital, to manage the business of the country as a whole. The four leaders: Sir John Macdonald, Sir Georges Cartier, Sir Charles Tupper, and Sir Leonard Tilley, began at once to prepare for the election.

Instead of Tory and Reform, the two parties were now to be called Conservative and Liberal. But the leaders decided that for this first election they would ask the people to vote not for either party but for, or against, Confederation. They did this, and the election resulted in a large majority in favor of Confederation. All the provinces voted for it, except Nova Scotia where Joseph Howe still led the people against it.

The Dominion Government was, of course, a responsible government. The head of it was the Governor-General. He was appointed by Britain, but he was instructed to do what the Executive Council, or Cabinet, asked him to do. The main law-making part, called the House of Commons, was elected by the people.<sup>1</sup> The Governor-General chose Sir John A. Macdonald, an elected member, to be Prime Minister. Sir John chose his Executive Council, or Cabinet, from the members of the largest party in the "House". Then Macdonald and his Cabinet chose the members of the Senate. In this way the executive, or managing part of the Government, the Prime Minister and the Cabinet, were all made responsible to the law-making parts, the House of Commons and the Senate, which were responsible to the people.

By good fortune, the new Parliament Buildings in Ottawa were finished just in time for the opening of the first Dominion parliament on November 7, 1867. There was a grand ceremony. The Governor-

<sup>1</sup> The law says that an election for the House of Commons *must* be held every five years and may be held more often.



The New Parliament Buildings  
of 1867

General drove to the Parliament Buildings in state, took his seat on the throne and read the "Speech from the Throne" to the members. The galleries were filled with newspaper men, friends of the members, and ladies in beautiful dresses. People in all the provinces read about it in their newspapers, and began to feel a little more like a nation. They now had a central government and capital city to look to.

## II

### BRINGING IN THE PROVINCES

When Sir John and the Cabinet looked over the work to be done, they decided that their first task should be to bring the rest of British North America into the Dominion.

#### (a) *The Crisis in the Maritimes*

They began with Nova Scotia because, although she was in Confederation, she wanted to get out. Joseph Howe and his party were trying to take her out. They thought that the Quebec Plan was unfair to Nova Scotia, and that Sir Charles Tupper had done wrong in taking the province into Confederation without having an election to let the people say whether they wanted to join or not. They sent Howe to London to ask Britain to repeal Confederation. Britain refused.

It was a crisis. What was to be done? Nova Scotia waited to see what Howe would do. Some people began to talk of joining the United States, but Howe was too loyal to Britain to do that. Sir Charles Tupper begged him to give up opposing Confederation now that it could not be undone. Sir John Macdonald promised that the Dominion Government would give Nova Scotia a larger grant of money (subsidy) than the Quebec Plan had offered her. He invited Howe to become a member of the Cabinet at Ottawa where he could use his great

talents to serve, not only Nova Scotia, but the whole country. Howe advised Nova Scotia to accept the larger grant of money. She did so and Confederation was saved.

Howe, the good fighter and great orator, had done wisely for his province, but less wisely for himself. He accepted a place in the Dominion Cabinet and did good work there, but he lost many of his old friends. Those Nova Scotians who were still opposed to Confederation could not forgive him for accepting it. When he was growing old and ill, he was appointed Lieutenant Governor of his province and spent his last days in the beautiful old "Governor's Mansion" in Halifax. After his death, his friends forgot their anger against him and he became again Nova Scotia's hero.

Prince Edward Island still refused to join the Dominion. Sir John was disappointed but he smiled to himself and waited; he had an idea. Newfoundland had been "waiting to see". Governor Musgrave, Mr. Carter, and Mr. Shea were still hoping to bring the big island into the Dominion; but those who were opposed to Confederation went round telling the fishermen that Canada would tax their fish. So, at the next election, they voted against Confederation. Governor Musgrave was so disappointed that he asked to be moved, and was sent to British Columbia. We shall meet him there.

(b) *The Tragedy at Red River (The first "Western")*

Thankful that she had at least won Nova Scotia, the Dominion turned hopefully to the West. Here she really acted very stupidly. She acquired Ruperts' Land from the Hudson's Bay Company and neither asked the people of Red River what they wanted to do, nor told them what she planned to do with them. Canada made plans; Red River heard rumors. It was not surprising that there was trouble.



Prince Edward Is-  
land Refused to  
Join the Dominion



Rumor said that Canada planned to govern Red River by a Governor and Council. The people were determined, if they joined Canada, to join as a province with responsible government. Then, before the bargain with the Hudson's Bay Company was completed, that is before Canada owned the West, she sent men to survey the land along the Red River. This alarmed both settlers and Métis. The Nor' Westers had told the Métis that the land was theirs, and they gathered round their leader, Louis Riel, to defend it. Riel was a clever, well educated young man, a natural leader, but not very well balanced. He and his men stopped the survey; and drew up a list of "rights", that is things they had a right to, such as their farms, land for their children, and so on.

Next, and still before she owned it, Canada sent out William McDougall to be ready to govern the West when it was handed over. This news threw the settlement into great excitement. The English-speaking settlers were discussing what rights they would demand, when word arrived that McDougall was on his way north from St. Paul. At this, Riel and his men, with guns ready, rode south, met him, and warned him not to cross the border. Luckily McDougall obeyed them; he returned to Ottawa. Riel then rode back to Red River, seized Fort Garry, imprisoned some Canadians who opposed him, and presently set up a government with himself as president.

Sir John, "Old Tomorrow" as he was sometimes called, had been "putting off" dealing with Red River, but Riel's bold deeds at last roused him. He begged Bishop Taché to return at once from Rome, and hurried Donald Smith off to Red River to tell the people that Canada had no intention of taking their lands. He invited them to send delegates to Ottawa to state the conditions upon which they would join the Dominion.

The settlers had just accepted this invitation when, one

night, the Canadian prisoners in Fort Garry escaped. They fled to Portage la Prairie, collected some friends, and returned to seize Riel. Instead he seized 47 of them. He let all go except three. One escaped. Donald Smith begged the lives of the other two: Major Bolton and Thomas Scott. Bolton was set free, but poor Scott was shot.

Red River was shocked! But Bishop Taché had arrived and he quieted the people. The delegates were sent to Ottawa. Red River went about its business. But Scott was Ontario's son. She called his death murder and demanded that Riel should be punished. Quebec took Riel's side, and the friendliness that Lafontaine and Cartier had built up between the two provinces began to break down. Canada sent soldiers to keep order in Red River. Riel, his career ruined by his one mad act, slipped away to the United States. The tragedy of Red River was really three tragedies: the death of Scott, the ruin of Louis Riel, and the anger of Ontario and Quebec which smouldered.

In 1870, the House of Commons passed the Manitoba Act. This law gave Manitoba her own provincial government and brought the new province into the Dominion. In the same year Britain gave to Canada the North West Territories and the Arctic Islands. At first the Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba ruled over the Territories. Later Canada gave them a Governor, Council, and Assembly of their own.

### (c) *British Columbia Joins the Dominion*

By this time British Columbia had had a second gold rush. In the first one the miners washed the sands of the sand-bars on the lower Fraser through their "pans". After the first excitement was over, men who were not making much money drifted away. Things quieted down. The miners who remained worked their way up the river from bar to bar, past Hope and Yale, on up to Quesnel and Prince George. The capital of the colony was

moved from Fort Langley downstream to a point where the water was deep enough for ocean-going ships. There the Royal Engineers built New Westminster to be both capital and port. Victoria also was growing. Streets were laid out, schools built, a water system arranged. In 1862 it was made a city.

Upon this peaceful scene, the Cariboo gold rush burst like a bomb. Near the mouth of the Chilcotin River, Peter Dunlevy met a chief's son who led him away from the main stream and up a creek to what soon became known as the famous Horsefly Mine. Others followed this lead. The creeks were found to be immensely richer than the sand bars had been and the "Cariboo Rush" began. Fortunes were made in a few weeks, or months. "Cariboo Cameron" made \$150,000 in three months—and lost it in about three years. In seven years the miners took \$25,000,000 worth of gold out of the Cariboo. Gold mining on the creeks required expensive machinery and brought in wealthy men who formed companies and made mining a business. It still goes on in Cariboo, though in a much smaller way.

Minerals are a different kind of resource from fish, animals, timber, and the soil. Each of these can be conserved by limiting the amount of the resource taken each year, and by replacing it. Minerals cannot be replaced. The only way to conserve them is to mine them in the least wasteful way possible. This was not done in Cariboo and other early mines. Their riches were soon exhausted and they now operate in a small way or are closed altogether.

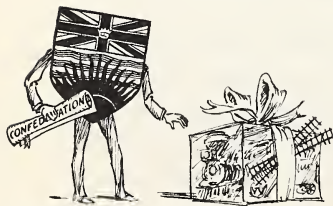
As soon as the Cariboo Rush began, roads by which supplies could be taken in to the miners became necessary. Douglas opened first the Harrison-Lilloet Road, and then the famous Cariboo Road. The latter was built by the Royal Engineers and ran from Yale to Barkerville. The lower part was blasted out

of the rock and ran like a shelf supported on timbers along the walls of the canyons. In dangerous places there was barely room for two teams to pass. But up and down the "bull-teams" (oxen), mule-teams, and "express" stages plodded, trotted, galloped, bringing the gold out and taking supplies in to Cariboo.

By this time the two coast colonies were finding that keeping up two governments was expensive. They had only 12,000 people between them and agreed that it would be wise to unite, but they could not decide which capital to use. They argued about it for some time and then decided that the mainland should name the united colony, British Columbia; and that Vancouver Island should have the capital, Victoria.

They had just united when the Dominion of Canada was formed, and the people began to discuss joining the Dominion. They were divided into three groups: the Canadians wanted to join Canada; the British wished to remain a colony of Britain, while a small party wished to join the United States. The Governor died and Governor Musgrave of Newfoundland took his place. He was strongly in favor of Confederation and no doubt that tipped the scale. Word was sent to Ottawa that British Columbia wished to join the Dominion. Sir John telegraphed back that she would be very welcome.

British Columbia then listed the terms upon which she was willing to join Canada. The most important one was a railway to connect her with Canada. Three delegates took the terms to Ottawa and Sir John promised them a railway within ten years. Imagine the excitement in British Columbia when that news reached the coast. A railroad! And within ten years! Most people did not believe it was possible, but they had Sir



British Columbia Joins the Dominion on Condition that a Railway is Built

John's promise; and on July 20, 1871, amid great rejoicing the sixth province joined the Dominion.

(d) *Prince Edward Island Comes In*

By this time Prince Edward Island was in trouble. She had built a railway and found herself heavily in debt. Sir John was very anxious to have the Island join the Dominion because it was awkward having her outside when she was so near Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. He had had an idea that the railway might be too much for her to handle alone, and he had been hoping that, if it were, she would change her mind. Canada agreed to take over her railway debt and to buy out her proprietors for good and all. Prince Edward Island accepted this offer, and became a province of the Dominion in 1873.

The big dream that had seemed so great, so distant, so impossible, had come true. From the Atlantic to the Pacific, Canada was almost complete, lacking only Newfoundland. And in only six years! It was a great triumph.

### III

#### THE GREAT LONE LAND AND ITS PEOPLE

When the Hudson's Bay Company and Britain handed the North West over to the Dominion of Canada, Canadians called it the "Great Lone Land". They knew very little about it. The huge block, roughly 760 by 1,000 miles, is divided into two great regions: in the north-west, the Canadian Shield; in the south-west, the Great Plain, "the prairies".

The Canadian Shield is rough land, wooded in the south and treeless in the north; laced with lakes and streams; and divided from the Great Plain by a giant's necklace of Great Lakes and rivers. The Great Plain is the bed of ancient seas, grassy in the south, wooded in the north, and drained by the Saskatchewan and Mackenzie River systems. It is a



pleasant, sunny land, rising in three wide steps from Manitoba to the Rocky Mountains. The climate is bracing, cold in winter, hot with cool nights in summer. Rain and snow are heavier in the east and less toward the west, so that the south-west, with its warm, dry, chinook winds is too dry for ordinary farming.

In this Great Lone Land there were, at the time of Confederation, about 35,000 Indians, 10,000 half-breeds, and 1,500 white settlers at Red River; these with the fur traders and a few missionaries, made up the whole population.

(a) *The Missionaries*

The missionaries had now been among the Indians for 30 years. James Evans and the other early preachers were gone, but their places had been taken by vigorous men. From his headquarters at Edmonton, Father Lacombe tramped about what is now Alberta, preaching, teaching, nursing the sick. He was already so much beloved that he was able to stop the fighting between the Crees and the Blackfeet. At his Lac Ste Anne Mission, the Crees not only became Christians, but also learned to farm. Bishop Taché of Red River was visiting him when a huge Blackfoot arrived to ask that a mission might be built for his people. The Bishop agreed, and left Father Lacombe already at work with his Indians building St. Albert.

In 1860, George McDougall brought his family from Colingwood to Norway House. They went by boat to Milwaukee, by train to the Mississippi and up that river in a huge, flat-bottomed steamer driven by a wheel as wide as the boat. From St. Paul, they went on by stage to Georgetown on the Red River. The coachman allowed teen-age John to drive; guiding the stage along at a quick gallop gave the lad a great thrill. From Georgetown they went down the Red in a steamer which had to be rowed with sweeps because the water was so low.

It took them eight days to reach Fort Garry and ten more by York boat to reach Norway House.

Later the McDougalls moved up the Saskatchewan and, in 1873, John rode south to open a Protestant mission for the Blackfeet at Morley on the Bow River. It was glorious country. In the west the Rockies lifted their glittering peaks; eastward the foothills ran out into the flower-strewn prairies. The Indians welcomed them. David, John's brother, opened a trading-post for them, and the two men brought their wives to this new home. They were the first white women in the south-west. Mrs. John had a cook-stove, the first in the country, and a source of the greatest amazement to the squaws.

(b) *The Whiskey Smugglers*

Missionaries were needed in the south, for danger greater than any Indian enemy threatened the southern tribes. Because the Blackfeet and Bloods had been so warlike, the Hudson's Bay traders had kept out of their country, and now traders from the United States began to drift into it. Settlers were already moving into Montana, pushing ahead of them the "bad men", outlaws and riff-raff driven out of the decent settlements. These wild characters were now crossing the border west of Manitoba with wagon loads of whiskey which they traded to the Indians for buffalo skins.

The whiskey smugglers cared not at all that their whiskey maddened the Indians. They drank wildly themselves, and killed Indians and each other. In the Cypress Hills, they shot up a whole village of Indians who had stolen some of their horses, killing about 40 and wounding many others. They built strong posts at Whoop-up on the St. Mary River, at Blackfoot Crossing, High River, Calgary, and Kootenay Lake, and traded as far north as Edmonton. The Indians, crazed by the whiskey, killed parties of white men and fought with

each other. Scalps fell on every side. Drunkenness, robbery and murder became the order of the day in the camps.

(c) *The North West Mounted Police*

When news of this situation reached Ottawa, the Dominion Government at once considered what to do. Life and property were no longer safe in the Canadian West; it looked as if it might become really "wild" like the American West which it was taking hard fighting to tame. Besides, the whiskey smugglers were bringing goods across the border without paying duty on them; they were even flying the American flag on their Canadian posts. The Dominion Government organized the North West Mounted Police to stop all this and to carry law and order to the Canadian West.

Three hundred men were chosen, young, healthy, educated, brave, of good character. They were told what they had to face, and divided into six troops. They drilled hard all winter. On June 6, 1874, in scarlet, gold and gray uniforms, mounted on the finest horses that money could buy, and with a long train of baggage wagons and cattle, they set out from Dufferin, Manitoba, on their thousand-mile march across the Great Lone Land to the foothills of the Rockies.

They followed the boundary line west to the modern Estevan. From there Colonel French sent one troop across to Fort Edmonton. It was a dry summer and pasture was poor. The horses were so weak that the men had often to rub their joints before they were able to go on, but they reached Edmonton where a warm welcome and plenty of food awaited them. The other troops pushed on to what is now Macleod in the heart of the smugglers' country. Colonel French left three troops there under Colonel Macleod; another on the Assiniboine; and returned with the sixth to Dufferin early in November. They had marched 2,000 miles.

Colonel Macleod's troops held the front line. They built stables for their horses first, then barracks for the men; the officers were the last to be housed. By that time they already had the whiskey traders under control. Patrols combed the country. They followed up every case of drunkenness, or cattle stealing; and investigated every suspicious post and trader. Arrests, fines, and imprisonment were more than the outlaws had bargained for. In December, Macleod reported that the whiskey trade had been completely stopped in that part of the West.

The Mounted Police built forts also at Calgary, at Fort Walsh in the Cypress Hills, at Qu'Appelle, Battleford, and Fort Saskatchewan. At every point they put things in order and kept them in order. One reason for their almost magical success was that they were always perfectly honest with both Indians and smugglers. All knew that a Mounted Policeman would do exactly what he said he would, either in kindness or punishment. In this way the Force won the confidence of the tribes and built up for themselves a great reputation. Another reason for their success was that the Indians were intelligent people. They knew that the whiskey trade was ruining them and that the "Red Coats" were their friends.



The March of the Mounted Police

"Before you came," said Crowfoot, the "Chief of Chiefs" of the Blackfeet, "the Indian crept along; now he is not afraid to walk erect."

(d) *The Indian Treaties*

Canada has reason to be proud of the good name that the Mounted Police made for her, and thankful that she lived up to it. The Americans had to fight their way across the plains. At this very time they were fighting a bitter war against the far western tribes. Their chiefs came to invite the Canadian Indians to join them, but the firmness and kindness of the Mounted Police kept our Redmen at peace. Sitting Bull and his warriors wiped out an American force. When they were attacked by the main American army, they retired across the border into Saskatchewan and asked the Mounted Police to protect them. Inspector Walsh promised that he would do so as long as they behaved themselves. When the Americans came to persuade them to return to the United States, Sitting Bull refused to go. Instead he asked Inspector Steele for a reserve in Canada. The Inspector explained that he could not give him one as he already had one in the United States, and finally persuaded the old warrior to return there. One Mounted Policeman whom the Indians trusted had done what an army of strangers had not been able to do.

The Police could keep the Indians at peace, but they could not give them back their buffalo. For generations the prairie tribes had killed the buffalo they needed with bows and arrows; but when thousands of white hunters swarmed across the plains with guns, they soon swept the animals from the land. (This is a good example of the result of failing to conserve our resources.) The Indians had used buffalo meat for food and buffalo hides for clothing and teepees; they knew no other way to



make a living. As the buffalo disappeared, the tribes faced starvation. Something had to be done and done quickly.

The young Dominion of Canada needed the prairies for her settlers. She had bought the Hudson's Bay Company's right, and she now offered to buy the Indians' right to them. Canada offered to give each Chief \$25; each head man \$15; each man, woman and child \$5 a year forever. Each band was to have a reserve of good land, one square mile for each family of five, with implements, seed grain, cattle, and a white "agent" to teach them how to farm. Tribe after tribe accepted this offer and made a "treaty" with Canada. Treaty Number Seven, the Blackfoot Treaty, was the last to be made. It was signed at Blackfoot Crossing, in 1877, by Crowfoot and his Chiefs. Lieutenant-Governor Laird of the Northwest Territories and Colonel Macleod signed for Canada.

It was a colorful scene. Behind the officials stood fifty Mounted Policemen, their red coats bright against the gold of the autumn poplars. In front, in a semi-circle on the ground, squatted the chiefs, each in full regalia of feathers, paint, beads, and porcupine quill work. Behind the chiefs sat the less important men, and farther back the squaws and children. The band played *The Maple Leaf Forever*. The Lieutenant-Governor explained the treaty. Then Crowfoot made an eloquent speech.

"The Police have protected us as the feathers protect the bird," he said in conclusion. "I wish them all good, and trust that our hearts will increase in goodness from this time. I will sign." The treaty was signed and the Blackfeet had lands and money to begin a new way of life.

The government meant to be generous to the Indians whose country we had taken. At that time, the provision made for them *was* generous. But we now understand that giving them

money to live upon made dependents of them. This was a poor use of our most valuable resource, our people. Canada is now hoping by new laws and better education to make adult fellow-citizens of the "First Canadians".

(c) *The Old Timers*

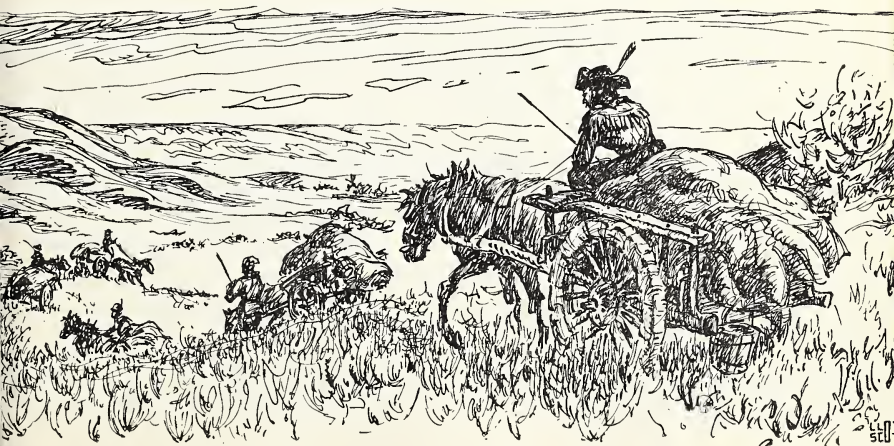
As soon as Manitoba became a province, settlers began to drift in. Some of the soldiers sent up from Canada at the time of the Red River trouble stayed on. Others returned and told their friends in the East how easy it was to farm on the flat, treeless prairies. First a line of stage coaches; then steamers on the Red River; then a railway from Winnipeg to Emerson on the boundary, connected the province with the outside world, and made it easier for settlers to come in. Some came from Eastern Canada and the United States. A large colony of Mennonites from Russia settled on the Red River, and a settlement of Icelanders grew up on Lake Winnipeg. The Hudson's Bay Company had given Eastern Canadians the idea that the prairies were not good farming land. These new settlers proved that, just as the north produced the finest furs, so also it produced the finest and hardest wheat. By 1880, Manitoba had a population of 60,000 and was producing half a million bushels of wheat a year.

Not all of these "Old Timers" stayed in Manitoba. The Mounted Police had made the North West Territories safe for settlers and there was a market there for farm produce. The Dominion Government was spending large sums of money in the West for the salaries and upkeep of the Police, and in treaty money for the Indians. The Hudson's Bay Company and other fur companies had to buy supplies. A farmer was sure of a good price for everything he could grow, and a trek into the Great Lone Land began.

At first brigades of Red River carts carried the settlers

south and west of Winnipeg, and north-west along the old cart trail to Edmonton. In good weather this journey was not unpleasant. The carts were loaded with the family goods and the women and children perched on top. All day the slow oxen plodded along the trail, the men driving; the women knitting, sewing, visiting; the children riding, or playing alongside. At sunset the brigade drew its carts into a circle, tethered the oxen, lighted its supper fires and slept under the friendly western stars. By 1879 Hudson's Bay Company steamers carried the settlers from Winnipeg to Grand Rapids on the Saskatchewan. There was now a portage railway where Colin Robertson's men had trapped the Nor' Westers. The settlers crossed on it and then took another steamer up the river. Where the newcomers settled, villages grew up: Gladstone; Fort Ellice, Prince Albert, Battleford. Edmonton, built on the river bank above the old fort, had a telegraph line, saw and grist mills, and a village of shops and houses.

While the farmers moved to the western and northern prairies, the ranchers took possession of the south-west. Here there were millions of acres of good grass to feed cattle, rivers



The Red River Cart Brigade

to water them, shady bluffs and snug coulees to protect them from sun and storm. John and David McDougall brought the first herd of stock to Morley in 1871, and after the Mounted Police had made the country safe. The Dominion Government rented large tracts to ranching companies which brought in big herds from Montana. Small ranchers also did well. The rancher built long low houses against the tree-shaded coulee bank: cook house, bunk house, sod stable. He then threw a few rods of fence round a corral; hired his cowboys; turned out his herd; and was ready for business. There were good years and bad, and the range country grew through both, until the cattle business began to take an important place in the industry of young Canada.

#### IV

##### THE NORTH WEST REBELLION (A Shooting "Western")

Suddenly across the prairies fell the shadow of war. Again the Métis rose and again the Dominion Government was chiefly to blame. After the Red River trouble most of the half-breeds moved up to the land between the forks of the Saskatchewan. There they settled upon strip farms along the river. At first they hunted. When the buffalo disappeared, they began freighting goods in from Winnipeg and planning to farm. They petitioned the Dominion for title deeds to their farms, but received no answer. Again the surveyors came to them, and began laying out square farms which crossed the Métis' strip farms. Again they thought that Canada was going to take their farms from them. They saw their Indian cousins safe on their reserves. Canada supplied them with seed, stock, tools, and treaty money; but did not even answer the Métis' petitions. On top of all this came the railway. It took away their freighting business, and

brought in white settlers to live on the new square farms. It is little wonder that the Métis grew desperate and sent for Riel.

He came. He had spent some time in an asylum, but had recovered and been teaching school in Montana. He set up his headquarters at Batoche, near the modern Saskatoon, and persuaded the Métis to send a "Bill of Rights" to Ottawa. Again no answer came from the Dominion Government. Then Riel set up a rebel government at Batoche and sent out runners to ask the Indians to join the Métis against the Canadians. Had they done so, they could easily have killed every white man in the West. Fortunately the Chiefs held their young men back and only a few of the Indians joined the Métis.

As soon as the Mounted Police heard that the runners were out, Major Crozier of Fort Carlton set off for Batoche, hoping to stop the rebellion before it began. He and his men were trapped by the Métis. Half of them were killed or wounded; the rest escaped only because Riel begged his men to kill no more. News that the white men had been defeated went out over the moccasin telegraph, and the whole Saskatchewan valley was aflame. The white settlers fled to Battleford



The March to Battleford



and Prince Albert, all but those at Frog Lake. Their priest thought that they would be safe, but Big Bear could not hold his young men. They fell upon the settlers and only three escaped alive. Big Bear's band then captured Fort Pitt, imprisoning the civilians, though Big Bear made them let the Mounted Police go.

By this time 4,000 troops from Eastern Canada were rushing west by train. General Middleton divided them into three armies which attacked the rebels at different points. General Otter marched north from Swift Current and relieved Battleford where 530 people were crowded into the small fort, very short of food and water. General Strange, marching from Calgary, defeated Big Bear's young men at Frenchman's Butte; and General Middleton captured Batoche and Riel. The rebellion was over.

Rebellion is treason, and the punishment for treason is death. Riel and eight other leaders were tried at Regina. Riel was condemned to death, but recommended to mercy. Now the anger that had smouldered between Quebec and Ontario blazed up. Ontario shouted furiously for Riel's death; Quebec as angrily demanded that he be spared. In the end he was executed with the others. Again the greatest tragedy was the anger of the provinces which hindered the growth of Canada's national feeling.

## V

### THE SECOND TRANS-CANADA

With the Dominion united from the Atlantic to the Pacific and the North West quiet, the Government was able to attend to the second great task laid out by the first parliament. This was the building of the second trans-Canada the railways

promised to the Atlantic and Pacific Provinces. Canadians travelling from the Maritimes to the St. Lawrence provinces, or from Ontario to the West, had still to go through the United States. Canada could not become one country until she had a railway to unite her.

(a) *The Intercolonial*

The Intercolonial was begun in 1867, but it went on slowly. Britain had promised to pay part of the cost, but it took time to arrange this. People disagreed, too, about the route. The cheapest and quickest way would have been to build lines connecting the railways already built from Fredericton to Saint John and from Truro to Halifax. Most of the people lived along these lines and wanted this done. But Britain thought that route too near the United States to be safe, so a line was surveyed along the Gulf shore and completed in 1876. There were few people living near it, and it did not pay, but it did join Halifax and Quebec, and connected there with the Grand Trunk. Canadians could then travel from Halifax to Sarnia in their own country. Almost a third of the Second Trans-Canada had been built.

(b) *A New Idea: The "National Policy"*

When Sir John promised British Columbia a railway to connect her with Canada, he meant to keep his word. But the Conservative Party was accused of accepting a bribe, and defeated at that election. The Liberal Party then had a majority in the House of Commons. They chose the Prime Minister and the Cabinet and took charge of the business of the country. The Liberals thought that the railway should be built a little at a time, as the country was settled. They started to build it west, but there was a depression and little was done.

Meantime, Sir John had thought up a good idea to win the

next election. The idea was that the Government should put a high tariff (tax) on all goods coming into Canada from the United States. American goods would then be so expensive that Canadians would be forced to buy goods made in Canada. This would give more work to the men and women in our factories. They would make the clothing, furniture, and tools needed by our farmers and fishermen, who would produce food for the factory workers. In this way Canadians would help each other and keep their money at home. Sir John called this the "National Policy". He and his supporters stumped the country with it and won the election.

(c) *Getting the Money*

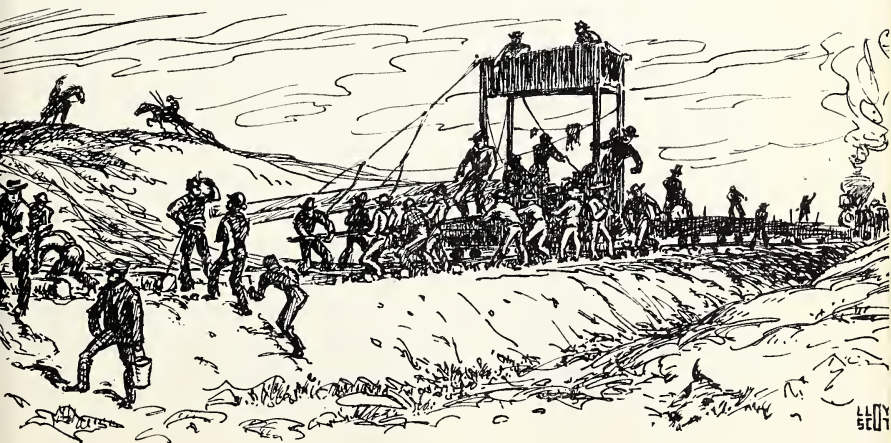
The Conservative Party now had a majority in the House of Commons and Sir John became Prime Minister again. He began at once to plan the railway to British Columbia. The first difficulty was to get the money to pay for it. Sir John knew that two young Canadians, Donald Smith and J. J. Hill, had made millions out of a bankrupt American railroad that they had bought cheap and built up. He turned to them. Smith brought in his cousin, George Stephen, and R. B. Angus, of the Bank of Montreal. Sir John promised to give them \$25,000,000 and 25,000,000 acres of western land. Most people thought that they were mad to risk their money. Hill did drop out; but the others formed the Canadian Pacific Railway Company, took the contract, hired William Van Horne to build the road, and the "big job" began.

It was an even more exciting and dangerous job than they had expected. Building the railroad cost so much that the partners soon used up all their money. Rival railways kept banks from lending to them. They asked the Dominion Government for a loan. Many of the members of parliament did not believe that the line would ever pay and fought against

the loan tooth and nail. Just when the Company despaired of getting it, the North West Rebellion broke out. Van Horne rushed the soldiers west by train in three days. It had taken the troops weeks to reach Winnipeg at the time of the Red River trouble. The quick trip opened the eyes of the House of Commons and they granted the loan. But the builders were soon again in desperate need of funds. Smith, Stephen, and Angus mortgaged their homes to get money to go on, and at the last gasp Britain made them a loan.

(d) *Building the Line*

Sandford Fleming, Canada's world-famous engineer, advised building the railroad through the Yellowhead Pass beyond Jasper, but Van Horne insisted on the shortest route, so they headed for the Kicking Horse Pass west of Banff. They began building in three places at once: westward through northern Ontario; west from Winnipeg; and eastward from the Pacific coast. Building across the rough land of the Canadian Shield was a terrific task. It took 12,000 men and 5,000 horses four years to do it and they used \$2,000,000 worth of explosives.



Laying Track on the Prairies

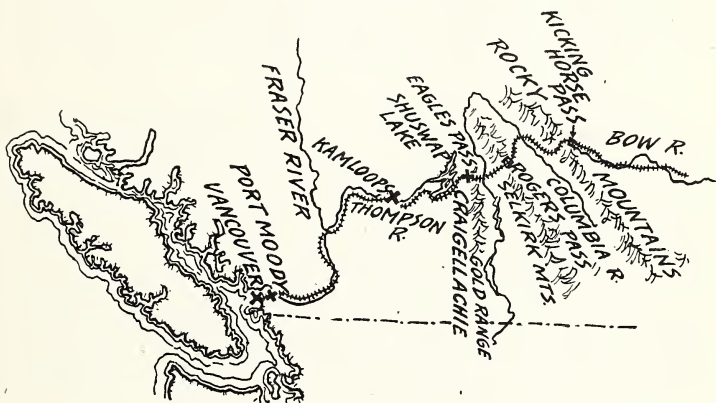
Construction on the prairies was easy; the builders raced across the plains. First came the surveyors laying out the line; then the graders building the grade. Next came Donald Grant and his group of track layers to place the ties, lay the rails and spike them down. Donald was seven feet tall, and like Van Horne, a record breaker. At first they laid two and a half miles a day; then three and a half and then, in one record-breaking three days, twenty miles.

Difficult as was the conquest of the Shield, it was easy compared to building through the Rocky Mountains. There are three ranges. The Kicking Horse Pass would carry them in from the east through the Rockies; Moberly's Eagle Pass would carry them west through the Gold Range; but they were well across the prairies and still no one knew how they were to get through the towering Selkirks. Then Major Rogers with his nephew, Albert, and ten Indians tried the valley of the Illicillewaet River. Making 25 minute runs with five minute rests, they pushed up the almost impassable trail; it took them five days to travel sixteen miles. Another five days and a last dash brought them to an open space with the water running west and east. They had reached the watershed. Through "Rogers Pass" the way lay open to the Pacific.

Engineer Fleming and his party next fought their way through the three ranges on foot. Their sufferings were extreme. They marched now at a dizzy height; now through acres of poisonous devil's club. They climbed over and crawled under huge logs, waded through roaring streams, and were continually drenched by the drip from the great trees. Exhausted and with little food left, they reached the Columbia River only to find that the party coming to meet them had cached their food supplies five days' travel west. More dead than alive they struggled through the Eagle Pass to the cache.



Following hard after the engineers came the builders, blasting out a shelf for the roadbed along the steep sides of the mountains, or tunnelling through them. They built walls to support the railway along the ledges, and bridges to carry it over the raging mountain torrents. They worked from dawn till dark, summer and winter, every hour in danger from explosives, rockfall, or avalanche. Many lives were lost. At the



same time, 7,000 Chinese were hacking out the roadbed and laying the track up the Fraser from Port Moody to Kamloops. In the canyons men had to be lowered hundreds of feet down the perpendicular cliffs to blast out the roadway. To feed them the gallant little steamer Skuzzy fought her way up and down through Hell's Gate and Black Canyon with supplies.

(c) *The Last Spike.*

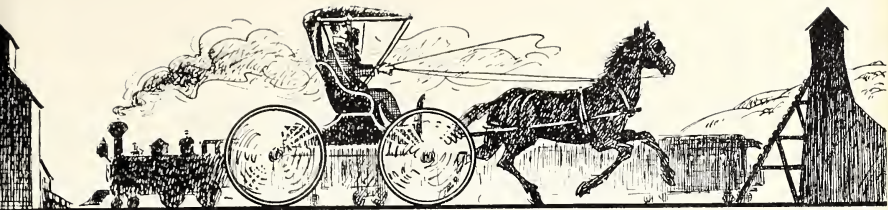
The work was done at last. On November 7, 1885, the track layers from the east met those from the west at Craigellachie (Gaelic for "Stand fast") and amid shouts of triumph, the rails were joined. A train from the east drew up and from it stepped

Donald Smith, the financier; Sandford Fleming, the engineer; and William Van Horne, the builder. The crowd of workers, the actual builders, pressed close; the hammer was handed to Smith and silence fell as he drove the last spike home. For a long moment the silence held; then it broke in a thunder of cheers. The "big job" was done.

Six months later trains were running from Halifax first to Port Moody and later to Vancouver. The doubters were put to shame. Canada was united physically as well as legally.

. . . . .

At last Canada was a country, a whole country. All the space behind her boundary (except Newfoundland) was gathered in. Her scattered provinces were bound together with twin lines of steel. Her first task was done; she had a home for her people. It was a magnificent home, immense, stately, with every beauty nature knows; a strange, fierce, proud home. The next task was to build a nation great enough to live in it. That was a much more difficult thing to do. Canada has been working at it ever since. She has made good progress, but she has still a long way to go.



## Chapter Nineteen

### GROWING UP

1867-1914

#### I

##### THE MORNING AFTER: REACTION

CANADA was united in Confederation; she was now a country, but she was not yet a nation. To be a nation, the people of a country must *feel* like a nation. They must feel that they belong to one another as a nation-family of which their country is the mother. They must want to help each other in trouble and to stand shoulder to shoulder in danger. They must be proud of one another and of their nation; they must be willing to work and to co-operate to make it a good and great nation. A country can be formed by signing agreements, but a nation has to grow.

Canada had several things to keep her national feelings from growing. First, she was such a very wide country and her settled parts were so far apart that it was difficult for her people to know one another. A second difficulty was that the people in her different regions worked at different things: the Maritimes people were fishermen, lumbermen, and ship-builders; the people of the St. Lawrence valley were farmers and manufacturers; the main business of the prairies was still fur trading; and British Columbia was then a mining prov-

ince. Each region had a different way of life; they needed different things and sometimes what was good for one was not good for another.

The greatest difficulty was the strong love and loyalty which each person felt for his own province. It filled his heart, while as yet he hardly knew Canada. The people of the Maritimes had been Nova Scotians or New Brunswickers, or Prince Edward Islanders for 100 years. They did not like to be called



Canadians. The French Canadians had been here 150 years before the others. Naturally they looked upon them as step-sisters. They were friendly at first; but as the other provinces grew bigger, Quebec stood on her guard against them, as step-sisters sometimes do. Ontario was even then the biggest and richest. She paid the most taxes and so expected to have the most "say". The Western Provinces were still very young, but they had already cost the others a good deal of money and given them some trouble. It was plain that Canada's family was not going to be easy to bring up.

It was natural, too, that after the excitement of winning Confederation, bringing in the provinces, and building the railways, there should be a reaction. The leaders had been, and still were, enthusiastic about Confederation. During the building of the country the people had been interested too. Now that that had been done, each province turned back to its own affairs and began to complain. Nova Scotia saw that she had lost much of her business. This was mainly because the world had changed from wooden to iron and steel ships; but the change came at the time of Confederation so Nova Scotia blamed the union. Quebec was afraid the English-speaking provinces would overrule her, perhaps try to take from her her French language and ways of living. Ontario wanted more power. By winning cases in the courts, she was able to take away some of the powers of the Dominion Government and add them to those given to the provinces. This made the Dominion less strong to hold the country together and do the things needed by all. Altogether there was a good deal of grumbling in the family.

In spite of this the feelings of a nation grew in Canada. They had begun to grow when the Maritime Provinces sent help to Canada when she was attacked by the Americans in 1812. When that war was over and the people saw that they had been able to defend their land, a wave of thankfulness and pride swept over the country; this strengthened the national feeling. It grew stronger still while the people of the different provinces were struggling for control of their churches, schools, and governments. When the Fathers of Confederation described in their speeches the great Canada of which they dreamed, our people began to *hope* that they could become a nation; when the railways were built, they began to *believe*



that they could become one. Even grumbling at one another made them feel a little more like a family.

Many things have happened since Confederation, things wonderful and terrible. Some things have helped, others have hindered. As you read about them you will see that, in spite of hindrances, Canada's national feeling grew steadily stronger.

## II

### THE BUILDERS

*(The People Who Helped Canada to Grow Up)*

*(a) The Poets Sing for Canada*

One of the first things that happened after Confederation was a burst of triumphant poems from the pioneer poets: Charles Sangster, Charles Mair, Barry Stratton, Agnes Machar, William Lighthall, and others. Their verses tell us how they felt about Confederation:

"One voice, one people, one in heart  
And soul, and feeling, and desire"

—Charles Sangster.

"Shall we not all be one race  
Shaping and welding the nation?"

—Barry Stratton.

"From Nova Scotia's misty coasts to far Columbia's shore,  
She wakes—a band of scattered homes and colonies no more;  
But a young nation, with her life full beating in her breast,  
A noble future in her eyes—the Britain of the West."

—Agnes Machar.

Next came a flight of proud and joyful poems by the Confederation poets, the young Builders. It is an interesting thing that within a few years before Confederation a dozen or more

Canadians were born who became well known poets. They grew up with Canada and express in their poems the pride, joy, and hope of the youth of the nation. They wrote about Canada's many beauties, while the prose writers wrote histories and novels about life in the different provinces. Our nation was still a teenager, so our poets and novelists were not great writers, but even then they wrote fine, musical poetry, careful histories, and readable stories in both English and French. A nation's writers are very important in building up national feeling, for they express what the whole nation is thinking and feeling.

The two most famous of the Confederation poets were cousins: Charles G. D. Roberts and Bliss Carman, born in New Brunswick. Roberts was the son of a minister and had three brothers and a sister, and Bliss often visited them. One brother died, but the others all became well known writers. You may remember from your school readers: Roberts' musical *Apple Song*: "O the sun has kissed the apples"; and Bliss Carman's *Rivers of Canada*: "They call me and call me to follow them away"; and his amusing *Song of the Little People*: "O Moon, Mr. Moon, When you Comin' Down?"

As someone said in those days, "you can't throw a snowball in Canada without hitting a poet." Octave Crémazie wrote rousing patriotic poems; and Louis Fréchette, Quebec's greatest poet, was crowned in Paris by the French Academy. Of five other Confederation poets three: Archibald Lampman, Wilfred Campbell, and Duncan Scott worked for the government in Ottawa. They spent their days at the office, their evenings writing verses, and their week-ends and summers with nature about which they all wrote sincere and lovely poems. Perhaps you know Duncan Scott's *Height of Land*: "The stars are up, and far away the winds sound in the wood"; and Frederick George Scott's *The Unnamed Lake*: "It sleeps among the thousand hills"; and

everyone knows Pauline Johnson's: *The Song My Paddle Sings*.

Later our poets began to write about people: William Henry Drummond wrote about *Little Bateese* and *Johnny Courteau*; Marjorie Pickthall about *Père Lalement*, the French Canadian Martyr. And you may have read Katharine Hale's *The Ballad of the Jasper Road* about Dark Plume Bill, the Blackfoot Chief; and H. A. Cody's singing poem about the lumberjacks: *Glazier's Men*:

"Don't you hear them coming, tramping down the glen,  
Husky, lusty giants, shades of Glazier's men."

(b) *The Story-tellers Write of Canada*

Canada has always been a land of good stories. The Indians were great story-tellers; their stories were their geography, their history, their social studies and their literature. The French Canadians, too, had many legends and tales about this strange land of Canada<sup>1</sup>; while Cartier, Lescarbot, Champlain, Mother Marie, Father Charlevoix, and the Fathers in their "Relations" all wrote valuable books about it.

The Loyalists were too busy making homes in the bush to have much time for writing, but the Pioneers turned out a few good stories: William Kirby's *Golden Dog* is an exciting novel about the wretch, Bigot; and *Les Anciens Canadiens* by Philippe de Gaspé, published in 1863, is still a good story.

John Richardson's *Wacousta* is about the Conspiracy of Pontiac and the Indian maiden who saved Detroit. James de Mille of New Brunswick wrote our first boys' books. The most famous of the pioneer writers was Thomas Chandler Haliburton who wrote *The Clockmaker*, an extremely funny story about a Yankee pedlar in Nova Scotia. The other great book written in pioneer days was *L'histoire du Canada* (The History of Can-

<sup>1</sup> You will find these stories in the books of Louis Fréchette, Charles Maurel, and Marius Barbeau.

ada) written by François-Xavier Garneau of Quebec. It is now over 100 years old, but is still studied by students of Canadian history.

After Confederation, the novelists began to write about life in the different provinces. Gilbert Parker wrote good stories about Quebec in English; and Pamphile Lemay and Joseph Marmette wrote good ones in French. L. M. Montgomery wrote of Prince Edward Island (all girls like her "Anne" books); and Agnes Laut wrote exciting novels about the fur traders. Nellie McClung, Mrs. Salverson, and Arthur Stringer wrote of the prairies; Bertram Sinclair of British Columbia; Robert Service and H. A. Cody of The Yukon; Ralph Connor and Philip Groves of different parts of Canada. Charles G. D. Roberts wrote stories as well as poems; he was the first to write really good animal stories. You have probably read his *Kindred of the Wild*, and the books of the animal story writers who followed him: Ernest Thompson Seton's *The Biography of a Grizzly*; Marshall Saunders' *Beautiful Joe*.

### (c) *The Press Teaches Canada*

Newspapers and magazines have also played a very important part in developing Canadian national feeling. Indeed, Canada could hardly have become a nation without the press. At Confederation, the people of the different provinces knew very little about one another. But our newspapers have kept teaching us, until today every person who reads knows a great deal about all parts of Canada: what resources each part has; what the people work at; and how they are getting along.

Canada's first newspapers were gazettes. A gazette is a newspaper that the Government pays to publish the information it wishes to give the people. Halifax had the first gazette; then Quebec, Montreal, Saint John, and St. John's each got one. They were funny little papers. The Saint John Gazette was a weekly

paper, 8" by 13" in size, and printed on a press worked by hand. Its three columns were filled with British and American news, because the new settlers cared most to read about their old homelands. The newspapers remained small and full of foreign news until the Pioneers began their struggle for responsible government. People then began to demand Canadian news.

The Pioneers had no radios or moving pictures. They depended on their newspapers to report what was going on and upon the editors to give their opinions as to what should be done. Famous editors such as Joseph Howe, Jean Thomas Taschereau (Tash er ō) of *Le Canadien*, Egerton Ryerson, and George Brown played a large part in winning responsible government and Confederation. Later editors who gained great influence over their readers were: Trefle Berthiaume (Tref lay Bear thoom) of *La Presse*, a fair and moderate writer who built up his paper till it had the largest circulation in Canada; and John W. Dafoe of the *Winnipeg Free Press*. Dafoe was a true Westerner, keen, independent, plain-spoken. He guided the thinking of Western Canada for 40 years, and became famous both in Canada and abroad.

Another important editor was Sir John Willison of the *Toronto Globe*. Before his time newspapers were either Conservative or Liberal. Their reporters and editors wrote very biased reports of what was said and done in Parliament and at political meetings. This made it difficult for the people to know the truth. Sir John still wrote party editorials himself, but he required his reporters to report the news without taking either side. Many people objected to this at first but it was a great improvement. It forced the people to make up their own minds. Nowadays all good reporters, and editors try to write unbiased accounts of political matters.

In 1917, the different news-gathering associations in Can-



ada united in the Canadian Press, a national co-operative for gathering news. This enabled the newspapers to give the people more "accurate, honest, unbiased news." It brought the same news to all parts of Canada and gave the press still more power to help Canadians to think and feel as a nation.

### III

#### THE CHANGING WORLD HELPS

##### (a) *Changes Made by Inventions*

Like Canada herself, life in Canada was growing up. The Pioneers had made some important changes in our ways of doing things; the Builders made many more. Inventions which had been begun in pioneer days were completed and brought into common use in the days of the Builders, the "Horse and Buggy Days" as they are called. The Builders developed the mower, binder and thresher. Of these the binder was probably the most important. Many men had a hand in inventing it, each adding a useful part until, in the 1880's, the Massey Company was manufacturing a "harvester" that did the work of eight men in a sixth of the time formerly required. The binder and thresher enabled men to cultivate much larger farms and to take more of the riches out of our soil. They made it possible for the Canadian prairies to become the greatest wheat exporting area in the world.

To export her wheat Canada had to change her ships and improve her roads and railways. In those days, the Maritime Provinces were building their beautiful clippers, the wooden sailing ships which had made them famous all over the world.



Wooden Sailing Ship

They built so many that with Quebec's ships, young Canada owned the world's fourth largest merchant fleet. But wooden sailing ships were not satisfactory for shipping wheat which "heats" when it is kept long in a closed space. Fast iron and steel steamships began to be used for freight as well as for passengers, and the "clippers" disappeared from the sea over which they had reigned for so long. This was a blow to the heart for the Maritime Provinces and they were long in recovering from it.

Railway transport was made safer and swifter by Sir Sandford Fleming's invention of the time zone. He worked it out while he was building the Canadian Pacific Railway. Before that each town had its own time, each one a few minutes behind, or ahead of its neighbor. This was very confusing, especially for railways. Fleming suggested that the world should be divided into twenty-four time zones, one for each hour of the day. All places in one time zone would keep the same time, and when a traveller passed the boundary into the next time zone, he would put his watch back, or forward, one hour. The plan was so satisfactory that all the principal countries of the world adopted it.

Another series of great inventions speeded communication. Sir Rowland Hill, an Englishman, invented the postage stamp which prepaid letters by their weight. This increased enormously the number of letters written. Almost at the same time, Samuel Morse, an American, invented the telegraph. Canada set up her first telegraph line between Toronto and St. Catharines in 1847, and lines were soon connecting all the Eastern and Central Provinces. In 1858, the Atlantic cable was landed at Heart's Content in Newfoundland and people could telegraph half-way round the world. Sir Sandford Fleming at once began working for a cable across the Pacific. This came in 1902. Telegrams could then be sent all round the world. Alexander Graham



An Early Steamer

Bell, a Scotsman, invented the telephone. His father lived in Brantford, Ontario, and it was there that the first telephone conversation in the world took place.

By this time cities and large towns were replacing the planked roadways and wooden sidewalks of their business districts with brick, stone, or pavement. Water systems also were being installed in the central part of town, and steam engines provided for firehalls. Volunteer fire brigades were giving way to paid fire-fighters. Oil street lamps had been replaced by gaslights in the 1840's and now gas was being replaced by electricity. Halifax put in the first electric street lighting system in America in 1890. Hamilton, Ontario, and Glace Bay, Nova Scotia, were the first places in Canada to have telephone systems; and Vancouver was one of the first to change horse-drawn for electric street-cars.

All these inventions and improvements made great changes in the way people lived in Canada, as in other countries. Cheap postage encouraged them to write to friends in other places; cheap excursions on trains and boats encouraged them to visit them, or to spend their holidays in sight-seeing. The telegraph and telephone increased social life, speeded up business, and poured a stream of national and international news into newspaper offices. Our people moved about more, met more people, made more friends; thought more often of Canada as a nation; became more interested in other nations.

#### (b) *Changes Made by Education*

Many important changes in our growing nation were the result of education. Attendance at school had long ago been made compulsory for children under 14. By 1900, nearly all Canadians had gone to public school, many had attended high school, and an increasing number were going to college. In public school the pupils now studied geography, history, com-

position, grammar, literature, drawing and physiology as well as the "three R's". All cities and larger towns now had high schools from which pupils usually graduated in three or four years. They studied the public school subjects with mathematics, physics, chemistry, Latin, French and German added. All subjects were compulsory for all pupils and each year ended with an examination. Canada's Universities: Dalhousie, Acadia, Mount Allison, New Brunswick, Laval, McGill, Queen's, and Toronto, were now training not only her ministers, but also doctors, lawyers, scientists and high school teachers.

Our pioneer forefathers were good men and women with strong characters, and many of them were well educated. But, as a result of his education, reading, and travel, the average Builder was better informed than the average Pioneer and he was interested in more things. One thing in which the Builders were more interested was music. The French Canadians are our natural musicians. From early times they have poured out their gay hearts in their folk songs. They sang as they worked: spinning, threshing, paddling songs. Some six thousand of their tunes have been collected, and still the folk singers sing. The Loyalists and Pioneers had little time for music but many communities held singing schools in the winter. By the 1860's, well-to-do farmers were buying organs for their daughters, and mothers were saving the butter money to pay for their music lessons. On Sunday evening the young folk gathered round the organ to sing hymns. Choirs in churches and singing in schools became common.

The Builders also began to be interested in art. Our only pioneer painter was Paul Kane who painted fine pictures of the Indians. These are valuable now as they show us how the redman lived. After Confederation, a number of artists came to Canada from other countries. Krieghoff was the most inter-

esting of these. He lived in Quebec and delighted to paint the picturesque French-Canadians, their homes and customs. Krieghoff loved fun and often painted amusing pictures. One funny one shows an angry old man on crutches chasing a horse that has galloped through his toll-gate.

In pioneer days, the few Canadians rich enough to buy paintings were not interested in pictures of Canada. They thought our country "the back woods" and bought only foreign pictures. After Confederation, the Royal Canadian Academy of Art was founded. It is supported by the Dominion Government and has a national art gallery in Ottawa. The Academy honors Canadian artists and buys fine Canadian as well as foreign paintings. This led Canadians to take more interest in the work of our own artists. Young Canadians now began to go abroad to study art. The most famous of this group of painters was Homer Watson. He lived at Doon near Galt on the Grand River and painted beautifully the quiet loveliness of the Ontario country-side.

But when Lauren Harris returned from abroad, he decided that his European methods did not suit Canada's broad masses, strong colors and sparkling light. He and other young men who came to be called the "Group of Seven", began to paint Canadian scenery in a bold colorful, decorative style which was new and different. At first people were shocked by their paintings, but they soon became famous. The greatest painter of this group was Tom Thomson. His "Spring Ice", "West Wind" and others are recognized as masterpieces by all the world.

### (c) *Horse and Buggy Days*

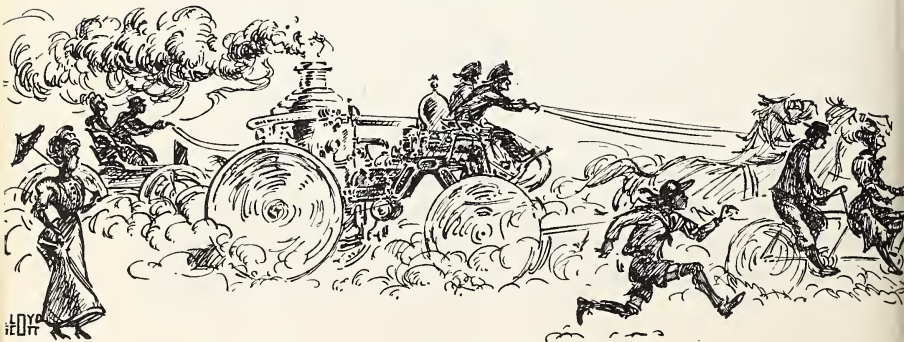
Better roads brought lighter and more comfortable conveyances. Rich people drove about in elegant carriages, but the horse and buggy was the car of those days. It was the ambition of every young man to own a buggy and a fast, high-stepping



horse. In this outfit, on summer evenings, a girl's "beau" dashed up to her door. He probably wore a straw hat and a striped blazer. She appeared in a fancy blouse, a long skirt and a much-trimmed hat. Controlling the dancing horse with one hand, the young man handed his "girl" in between the wheels and they drove off in style. In winter, he used a smart red "cutter" and they departed in a silver jingle of bells. Youth was as gay and exciting then as now.

The young people returned from their drive to a house larger than the pioneer homes with, perhaps, both a front and back "parlor". It was lighted with coal-oil lamps, or in towns and cities blazed with gas-light. Fireplaces had disappeared; stoves were used for heating and cooking. Chairs and sofas upholstered in colored velvets had replaced the black, very scratchy haircloth used by the Pioneers. The Brussels carpet and long lace curtains were factory made. Up-to-date wives already had a pump and sink in the kitchen, and bathrooms were talked of, though some people doubted whether they were either sanitary or proper. Home grown food was cheap; eggs 7¢ a dozen, butter 10¢, and meat 5¢ to 25¢ a pound. The clipper ships had made tea, coffee, sugar and spices cheaper than they had been in pioneer days. Oranges were common and bananas coming in.

In those days the majority of Canadians were farmers.



Horse and Buggy Days

Better roads made it possible for them to drive farther with a horse and buggy. The center of the community moved from the country or village store to the town. Towns were still small but most of them had two or three stores, livery stables, blacksmith and carpenter shops; perhaps a grist, saw, or planing mill; sometimes a tannery or other small factory. Each town had a post office, several churches; perhaps a town-hall, and a high, as well as a public school; many had public libraries. Farmers drove in to have their horses shod, or to get parts for their new machines. On Saturdays they brought their eggs, butter and other produce to the stores to trade for groceries. On Sunday the family drove in to church.

In country or town, in the horse and buggy days, the churches were the center of social life which was very "proper". All respectable people went to church—dressed in their "Sunday best". Women had few clubs but they worked in the Ladies Aid and Missionary Society; young people joined the Christian Endeavor, and Temperance Association; girls and boys went to Mission Band. Some churches forbade their members to dance or play cards; others discouraged these amusements. Even young people whose parents approved of them did not go to dances till they were in their late teens and then were strictly chaperoned. All this, with no cars, radios, or movies, sounds as though the Builders had a dull time, but they did not think so. They had jolly cycling parties; oyster suppers, dances in the homes (dances in public halls were thought "fast"); socials in the churches; debates, lectures, concerts in the town hall. Before the movies came, even towns had theatres or opera houses where companies of professional actors and singers acted regularly. In summer there were garden parties, strawberry festivals, political party picnics with speakers and bands, and fairs with horse races.

The Builders enjoyed their recreations, but it is true that

they were quiet folk; serious, respectable, God-fearing people. They were not brilliant, not highly educated, not at all artistic, but they were honest and reliable and they built these qualities into the foundations of our nation.

(d) *A Great Canadian*

By this time Sir John A. Macdonald was growing old. His private life had not been a very happy one for his eldest son died and his first wife was an invalid for many years. After winning the election of 1878, Sir John remained Prime Minister until his death in 1891. During those years he won three elections and became every year more popular, yet he had hard battles to fight both at home and with the British and American leaders. Business was poor all over the world and Canada seemed to stand still. People were disappointed that she did not grow as the United States was growing, but there was not much for immigrants to do. There was little good land left for farms and the towns were still too small to provide work. Young Canadians had to go to "the states" to get jobs. Canada needed her Northwest; but it was only beginning to be opened up.

In spite of these things Sir John was a great Builder. His main achievements were: Confederation; the organization of the Conservative Party; the National Policy; the winning of Canada's right to negotiate with other nations;<sup>2</sup> the building of the Canadian Pacific Railway. This was his last great task. He overworked in the election of 1891 and died of a stroke soon after. He left Canada a country beginning to be a nation. The churches, the Conservative and Liberal Parties, the large banks, insurance, and implement companies, had branches in all provinces; they were already national. The Provincial and Dominion Governments were working well. By meeting in Ottawa the leaders of the different provinces were coming to know

<sup>2</sup> See Chapter Twenty-two, page 446.

each other better. Much of this good progress Canada owes to Sir John A. Macdonald. It had been the aim of his life to see her a nation; all agree that he did more than any other single person to set her feet on the road to nationhood.

## IV

### CANADA'S CENTURY

#### (a) *The New Leader*

"The Twentieth will be Canada's Century" said Sir Wilfrid Laurier (Lor ee ā), the new Prime Minister, and in 1900 Canadians everywhere were repeating that slogan. As you read of her new adventures, you may agree with them. Certainly the 1900's began well for Canada. Wilfrid Laurier, Sir John's successor, was as much admired, as much beloved, and as great a leader as Sir John. Laurier's family had lived in Quebec for 200 years. His mother died when he was five, and his father sent him first to a French, and then to an English school. There he lived with the schoolmaster and learned to appreciate English, as well as French, Canadians. He took his degree in law at McGill University and opened an office. But he was a brilliant speaker, equally eloquent in French and English, and was presently elected to the House of Commons. There he was at once recognized as outstanding, and chosen Leader of the Liberal Party. The Liberals won the election after Sir John's death and Laurier became Prime Minister.

Laurier was a tall, handsome man with a "silver tongue" and gracious manners, so sincere and honorable that he has been called "The White Knight". With so good and brilliant a



Sir Wilfrid Laurier

leader it seemed as if friendliness must increase between Canada's two races. As if to give him the best possible chance, the long depression rolled away and good times returned.

Laurier chose clever men for his Cabinet and together they attacked the problems of those days. Their first problem was the Manitoba school question. When Manitoba first became a province she had both Protestant and Roman Catholic schools. Later the Protestant population increased and the government decided to have only public schools which all pupils must attend. This roused the old bitterness between Ontario and Quebec. Catholic Quebec said that Manitoba must have two kinds of schools; Protestant Ontario said she must not. Sir John had been unable to get the question settled, but Sir Wilfrid understood both French and English Canadians, and persuaded them to compromise: Manitoba kept her Protestant schools but arranged that time should be given all Roman Catholic pupils to be instructed by their priests.

In 1897 Laurier represented Canada at Queen Victoria's Diamond Jubilee. All the royalties of the world were there, but in all that gorgeous gathering no one was more admired than the eloquent and courtly French Canadian. Somewhat against his will, the old Queen made him a knight, and few public men have lived more knightly lives. He returned to Canada to work at the great aim of his life: increasing the friendliness between Canada's two races.

(b) *Nobody Came To The Party; Then, Stampede!*

The wide sunny prairies had now been waiting for settlers for 25 years. The Dominion had bought them from the Hudson's Bay Company; sent the Mounted Police to make them safe; made treaties with the Indians; surveyed the land into farms; built the railway. Manitoba had proved that the land was fertile by producing, in 1880, a million bushels of good wheat.



Immigrants were pouring into the American West from Europe, the Eastern States, and Eastern Canada, but only a few came to the Canadian West. It was as disappointing as if Canada had prepared for a party and nobody came.

At last it was Canada's turn. When the American West had filled up and there was no more free land to be had there, the flood of settlers rolled over the border into the Canadian West. Clifford Sifton, a shrewd young westerner in Laurier's Cabinet, began to advertise Canada's farm lands in the United States and Britain; the Canadian Pacific Railway carried the advertising campaign into the countries of Europe. For a \$10 fee a man could get a "homestead"; that is, 160 acres of land which he could make his own by living on it for six months in each of three years; breaking 30 acres and cropping 20 each year; and building a small house. The land was fertile and needed no clearing. With a plough and a team a man could break an acre a day; build a sod shack and stable and, with luck, have a crop in his first year.

This offer promised a living to the poor and land-hungry everywhere, and the stampede for farms in the Canadian West began. Thousands came from Eastern and Central Canada, a million from each of: the United States, Britain, and Europe. Scandinavia, Finland, Russia, Germany, Austria, the Ukraine, Italy and the Balkan countries each sent us those of their people who were brave enough to risk all in a strange land in the hope of making a better life for themselves and their children. All the provinces received new settlers, but the great majority settled in the West. By 1914 some three millions had arrived, raising Canada's population from five to eight millions.

(c) *Up-to-Date Immigration*

There was no slow bateau journey or long trek by Red River cart for these new settlers; they came in style by steamer

and railway. To bring them in, and carry their crops out, the prairies were criss-crossed with railways. The Canadian Pacific built branches, and two new transcontinental lines were constructed. British financiers and the Dominion Government built the Grand Trunk Pacific from Moncton to Prince Rupert; but the Canadian Northern was strung together by two bold Canadians, Mackenzie and Mann. No one but themselves knows how they did it, for they had not much money. Gaily they built a small railroad here and bought another there, and wangled and managed till they had a through line from Quebec City to Vancouver. In the end they went bankrupt, but so did the Grand Trunk Pacific. The Dominion took them both over and combined them to make the Canadian National Railways. By 1916, Canada had almost 40,000 miles of railway.

Nine or more trainloads a day of "homeseekers", their stock and goods, poured into Winnipeg. Day and night the station was crowded to the doors, and noisy with talk in 30 or more languages. Mothers sat, each with her baby in her arms and her children huddled round her, waiting anxiously for the father to bring food, or information as to the next move. All night long trains puffed in and out, while tired families were bundled on board or slept, exhausted, on benches or the station floor. Among them were thousands of young "bachelors" with little or no money. They built one-room "shacks" and "batched", living lonely, uncomfortable lives until they married.

"No nice woman remains single here for want of good offers" writes Mrs. Soxley. "She may choose a husband from among a dozen, hearty, hopeful, liberal-minded young men".

#### (d) *Wheat Becomes Canada's Staple*<sup>3</sup>

From the first the West's main crop was wheat. The

<sup>3</sup> A staple is the most important article grown or manufactured in a place. Canada's first staple was fish, her second fur, her third timber.

prairie soil and sun were just right for it, though in some years the crop suffered from drought, frost, grasshoppers, or rust. The scientists could do nothing about the rain, but William Saunders and his sons bred an early-ripening wheat to beat the frost; the Rust Laboratory at Winnipeg produced rust-resistant wheat seed; and new ways of combating grasshoppers were discovered. Manitoba shipped the first cargo of Red Fife Wheat to Glasgow in 1884 and suddenly found herself famous. The wheat which wheat-men have ever since called "Manitobas" was discovered to be the "strongest" wheat in the world. Flour made from it makes "high-rising" bread and is used to mix with "weaker" flours to make bread "light". Grown from good seed in good soil, with 16 hours of sunlight a day to pack the vitamins into the kernels, Canadian wheat has won the world championship many times, and is freely admitted to be the world's finest.

Wheat built up in the West a new way of life. The wheat farmer farms not to live off his farm as the Pioneer did, but to make money. He makes farming a business. With machinery and help he can farm 500, 1,000, 20,000 acres. Many modern wheat farmers keep no stock at all. From seeding to harvest they work from 12 to 16 hours a day, but when the wheat has been shipped, they are free for the winter. If the crop has been good they may take a winter holiday at the Pacific Coast or in California. If drought, rain, or hail has made it poor, they can potter about their farm or take a job in town. This kind of farming is all very well for the "get-rich-quick" farmer, but it wears the soil out quickly. As we shall see, it helped to bring about a terrible disaster.

(e) *"New Canadians"*

To make Canadians out of so many strangers was a tremendous task. The Americans made themselves at home at once; the British learned Canadian ways in a few years;

for the Europeans it was much more difficult. Most of them could neither speak, read, nor write English; and all our ways of living, farming, and doing business were new to them. Even their religion and their ideas of what was right and wrong were different from ours. Imagine being set down on the moon among a strange race of people, and think of the loneliness and fear in which many of these "New Canadians" spent their first years in Canada. Unfortunately the Government allowed them to settle in communities of their own. This was a comfort to them at the time, but it kept them from mixing with the English-speaking Canadians and so from becoming Canadians quickly.

Worse still the rudeness of some of the older Canadians and British of those days hurt and hindered them. Uneducated people are apt to dislike and laugh at strangers, and these Anglo-Saxons forgot that their own forefathers had all been immigrants and that they themselves were immigrants in the West. Instead of helping the New Canadians to learn Canadian ways, they looked down on them, laughed at them, even ill-treated them. No doubt this was one of the reasons why many of them moved on into the United States where everyone was welcomed at once as an American. Other Canadians, better educated and wiser, saw that the newcomers were strong, hard-working people and that they had gifts in music, art, dancing and handicrafts that would greatly enrich our nation. These people did their best to help the adults become Canadians. The schools taught the children and they taught their parents the new language and the new ways. In ten years their young people, in 20 years most of their older people, *were* Canadians. Indeed it is partly due to them that Western Canada is much less province-minded than Eastern Canada. Most Westerners had no home province to be loyal to and this made it easier for them to be just Canadians.

The New Canadians were strangers, but from the first most of them were quite able to take care of themselves. Dauphin, Manitoba, found this out when some hundreds of Galicians arrived by train to take up farms near the town. They were large, dull-looking people in home-made suits, head shawls and huge boots. When the Dauphin people saw them making camp nearby, the councillors hurried to Mr. Hanna, the railway man in charge of them, to beg him to take these "paupers" to some other district. Mr. Hanna pointed out that the Galicians were strong, used to farming and should make good settlers. The Dauphin men went home to petition the government to have the "paupers" removed. They returned beaming. While they had been trying to have them sent away, the Galicians had bought \$2,000 worth of goods from the Dauphin merchants for which they had paid cash. No more plans were made for removing them.

(f) *Two New Provinces*

While the prairies filled up with settlers and the rivers of wheat began to flow, the West had its little fight for responsible



New Canadians Winnowing



government. It was strange that the older provinces, which had themselves fought so bravely for responsible government should refuse it to their fellow citizens, but they did. They felt that they had bought and paid for the West and they wished to hold on to their property. But the Western leaders kept arguing and petitioning, and at last the Dominion gave in. The North West Territories were given responsible government in 1897 and, in 1905, they were divided into two new Provinces, Saskatchewan and Alberta with their capitals at Regina and Edmonton.

By 1912, the West was already passing out of the pioneer stage. Good crops were enabling the farmers to replace their shacks and stables with frame houses and barns. Villages grew into towns over night; towns became cities in a year. Elevators multiplied. Saw and flour mills were built. Coal was mined at Souris and Lethbridge. The new railways had opened the parklands where mixed farming was coming in. Alberta was shipping farming produce to mining camps in the Kootenay. Peace River was proving that the farther north you can grow it, the better the wheat. The West, too, was growing up.

## V

### POWER, COAL AND STEEL, GOLD AND SILVER

The new people and their new staple, wheat, made not only a new West, they made a new Canada. When the outside world poured money for Canadian wheat into the West, the West poured it back to the St. Lawrence and Maritime Provinces. Sir John's National Policy was really working now. The wheat trains and boats speeding down to Montreal returned with machinery, hardware, furniture, clothing, all the things the wheat farmers needed. The Maritimes and British Columbia also got a share of the wheat money, for they stored and shipped

the grain. When the West had a good crop, all Canada prospered.

To supply the new demand in the West, Ontario and Quebec multiplied their factories. They had no coal, so they began to use their water-power. Ontario set up an Hydro-Electric Commission, built a great power-house at Niagara, and began to sell cheap power to her homes and factories. Farmers turned to stock and dairy farming to feed the factory workers. The cheap power speeded up lumbering and mining in the Canadian Shield region of the two provinces. A rich cobalt mine was discovered there in 1903. Prospectors rushed in and silver, nickel, copper were also located. Startling gold discoveries were made at Porcupine and Kirkland Lake in Ontario, and Noranda in Quebec. Soon the Canadian Shield was producing 80 per cent of the world's nickel; and had made Canada the world's second largest producer of gold.

When iron steamships came in, the Maritimes lost their great wooden ship-building industry. With the coming of refrigeration, the demand for dried fish lessened. In the face of these blows, the Atlantic Provinces had to change to producing fresh fish, and to developing their other resources. Nova Scotia built her new industry on coal and steel. She has rich coal mines at Sydney and Pictou. A company was formed to develop the Sydney mines; and a steel mill using iron from Newfoundland, was built near Pictou. As a result of wasteful cutting without reforestation New Brunswick's white pine was gone, and she began cutting smaller timber for building and the pulp mills. More Maritimers took up farming. Nova Scotia specialized in apple growing, New Brunswick in horses, hay and oats for the lumber camps; Prince Edward Island in seed potatoes and fox farming.

In British Columbia, the mountain region was opened up

by the miners. Cariboo had grown respectable by the time the Yukon gold rush began. The Yukon was the most spectacular of all the gold rushes. Thousands fought their way over the terrible Chilcoot Pass to Dawson City; hundreds died; only a few made fortunes. Meantime the Kootenay silver, lead, zinc-copper mines had been discovered, and Wildhorse and the other camps filled up with desperadoes from the south, their "shooting irons" loose in their belts. At first the ore was shipped to Montana to be smelted; but that was too expensive, so the smelter at Trail was begun in a small way. It is now the largest in the British Empire. In the interior, ranching began in the north and fruit farming in the south. On the coast, lumber was being shipped, and salmon fishing<sup>4</sup> and canning grew by leaps and bounds. Vancouver and New Westminster were becoming busy ports. To feed their people the Fraser Valley filled up with dairy farms. Victoria was already a tourist resort.

## VI

### NEWFOUNDLAND GROWS UP BY HERSELF

All this time Newfoundland had been growing up by herself. In 1869, after her Government had decided not to join Canada, it set briskly to work to help the island to grow up. The members of the Government knew that it is dangerous for a country to have only one industry, so they began improving the roads, helping the farmers, and searching for minerals. A telegraph line had already been built across the island and after several failures the Trans-Atlantic cable was landed at Heart's Content. Today Heart's Content has many cables and is the center of the Trans-Atlantic cable service. Another red letter day was that on which

<sup>4</sup> Salmon is another resource that might easily have been exhausted by wasteful methods of fishing. Luckily the Government stepped in in time. Laws were passed to require the use of large-meshed nets, and ladders were built to help the fish up the turbulent Fraser River to their spawning grounds.

Marconi, on Signal Hill, St. John's, received the first Trans-Atlantic wireless message.

For the Newfoundlanders, the most important improvement was the building of a railway across the island. It was completed in 1893, and although it did not pay, it gave Newfoundland additional industries which she needed: copper mining at Tilt Cove; one of the richest iron mines in the world on Bell Island; and great pulp and paper mills at Grand Falls and Corner Brook. In 1904, Britain at last arranged with France to give up her rights on the French shore; in 1912 the Americans surrendered theirs; so that after 400 years Newfoundland came into full possession of her homeland and home waters. In 1927, the boundary between Quebec and Labrador was settled and Newfoundland got a larger share of the mainland than she expected. The new industries and new powers brought Newfoundlanders into closer contact with other countries; gave them more money to spend on education and social services; and so raised their standard of living, and their pleasure and pride in their island.

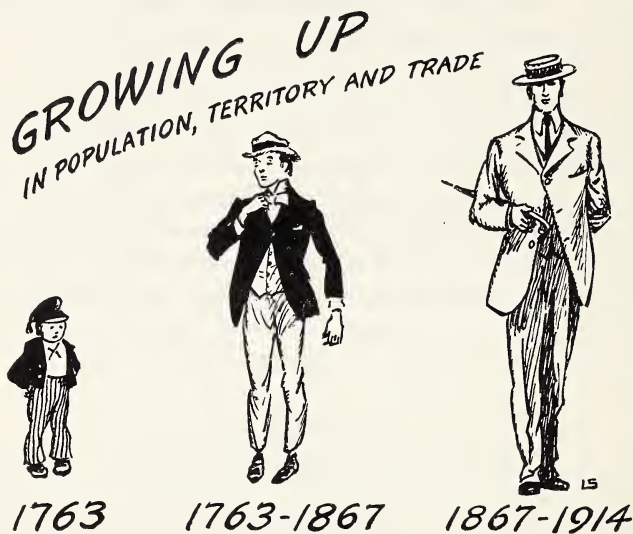
## VII

### CANADA FEELS HERSELF A NATION

Through these prosperous years, Sir Wilfrid Laurier and the Liberal Party remained in power at Ottawa. They were busy chiefly with settling the West and building railways there. Only two serious problems came up for discussion. The first was as to whether or not Canada should build a navy to help Britain protect our shores in time of war. Parliament passed the Navy Act, but the Conservatives and French Canadians continued to fight against it, and no ships were built.

The other problem was both surprising and exciting. Ever since the United States had refused to renew the Reciprocity Treaty with Canada, Canadians had mourned for the loss of

it. Ottawa had more than once suggested that Canada would like reciprocity, but the United States had always said no. Now, suddenly, the President offered it. Sir Wilfrid and W. S. Fielding, the Minister of Finance, went to Washington, worked out the treaty, and returned to get it passed in the House of Commons. Reciprocity! It was so sudden, so surprising, so exactly

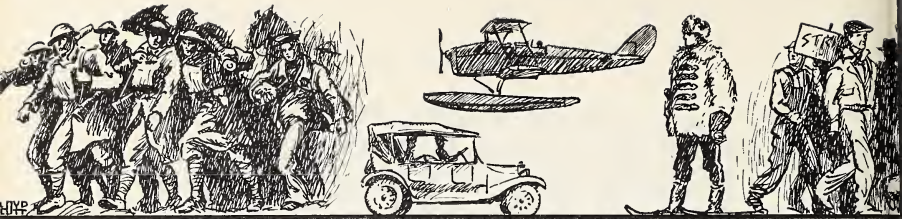


what Canadians had been wanting, that at first the Conservatives were speechless. Then they seized upon the idea that Reciprocity would make Canada a part of the United States. American speakers helped them by saying gloatingly that it would do just that. That did it! Suddenly, surprisingly, east, west and center, Canada knew that she did not want to be a part of any country; that she was a country herself, a nation. The Liberals were defeated; Canada refused Reciprocity!

. . . . .



Canada was grown up. She had been a child in French Canadian days with the Captain and the Curé to guide her people, and Champlain, Talon, Frontenac and Montcalm to take care of the country. After the British conquest she became a teen-ager, interested in learning how to make a living and how to govern herself. She was now to step out into the world, mix with other nations, and play her part among them. It was rather alarming for, although she had had her experiences (you shall hear about them presently), she was still young. Yet she had felt herself to be a nation; had told the Americans she was one. She dared not now draw back. A great test was near; Canada faced it proudly, gaily.



## Chapter Twenty

### CANADA BECOMES A NATION

#### I

##### CANADA TAKES HER TEST

FOR over 50 years Canada had been growing larger, richer, freer; she had been developing her national feeling, and learning how to think and act as a nation. In 1914 she came to her first test: the First World War. It was a stiff test for a young people who had not nearly completed their training in behaving as a nation. You will be interested to find out how she did on her test and whether or not she passed.

##### (a) *The Rising Storm*

Germany had long thought that she was the greatest nation in the world and so had a right to rule the world. She had built up her army, navy, and industry and had already defeated Austria and France. The other nations of Europe feared that she was now strong enough to conquer them. By 1914 they had lined up on two sides: Germany, Austria and Italy against Britain, France and Russia. So when a young man from Serbia shot the heir to the Austrian throne, the fatal bullet set up a terrible chain reaction: Austria attacked Serbia; Russia threatened Austria; Germany declared war on Russia;

France sprang to the side of her ally. Britain waited; her leaders were working frantically to keep the peace. But when Germany struck at little Belgium whom they had all promised to protect, Britain also declared war.

At that time the law said that if Britain was at war, the other countries of the Empire were also at war; but Canada had to decide whether she would help only a little, or "go all out" on Britain's side. Her people were of different races: French, British, Germans, Russians, who would naturally sympathize with different sides. The question was put to Canada suddenly: "Could she act as a nation?" "Would she?"

The answer was given at once and it was "Yes". When Prime Minister Borden cabled to Britain that Canada would fight, he had both parliament and people behind him. They supported him, partly because they were loyal to Britain who had helped them work out their freedom; and partly because they knew Germany to be a great military and naval power who, if she won in Europe, could easily conquer Canada. Clearly it would be wiser to defeat her in Europe, than to have her win there and then attack Canada. Canadians supported the war not because they liked war, but because they hated it. With the rest of the world, they called this "the war to end war" because they hoped to give Germany such a beating as would warn her, and all other nations, from ever again making war.

### (b) *The Canadians Win Great Glory*

When the call went out for 25,000 volunteers to assemble at Valcartier, near Quebec, 33,000 came. They sailed for Britain in October. Another division followed early in 1915 and two more later in the year. Canada had no navy, but in the Atlantic Coastal Patrol Canadians fought German submarines to keep open the sea lanes to Britain. Canada had at first no Air Force. Canadians who wished to fly joined

the British Royal Flying Corps; a third of its men were Canadians. Later a Canadian Royal Flying Corps was organized. Of the ten greatest pilots of the war, four were Canadians: Raymond Collishaw, William George Barker, "Trapper" McLaren and William Bishop, V.C. Bishop, now Air-Marshal Bishop, was the air ace of the whole war; he shot down 72 German planes. Besides her fighting men, Canada sent overseas the Canadian Railway Construction Corps, the Canadian Forestry Corps, and the Canadian Army Medical Corps: doctors and nurses who, besides front line service, manned 20 hospitals in Britain and 10 in France. Altogether over 424,000 Canadians went overseas and 60,661 were killed.

The soldiers' first fight was with cold, wet, mud, and vermin in the "trenches". These were ditches, hundreds of miles of them, which the men of both sides dug, facing one another, across northern France. Sometimes the German trenches and those of the Allies (our side) were only a few yards apart. At intervals there were underground rooms where men off duty could warm themselves and get food and a rest; but much of their time was spent standing in the mud of the trench, on guard or waiting for the "zero hour" when they must "go over the top" to attack the enemy. Trench life was terribly uncomfortable, monotonous, nerve-racking.

In battle our men fought magnificently. Their first great fight was in April, 1915, at Ypres where the Germans sent over the first poison gas ever used in war. The ghastly green fog rolled down upon the line. The unit next to the Canadians was overcome, but our men stood firm. Four days and nights they stood. Half of them died; but they held the line, kept the Germans from breaking through to the English Channel, and so "saved the day for the whole British Army". They fought so well that in the autumn of 1916 they were put into training for

their greatest fight, the capture of Vimy Ridge. Vimy is a long ridge which rises out of the plain of northern France. The Germans captured it early in the war. Three times the Allied armies had tried and failed to recapture it. By April, 1917, the Canadians were ready. At dawn, on Easter Sunday morning, they attacked the Ridge and in that one brave day they captured it, though it took a week's hard fighting to make it safe.

After that the Canadian Corps was, as Mr. Lloyd George says: "brought along to lead the assault in one great battle after another". They won so many victories that the time between August 4, 1918, and the end of the war on November 11 was called "Canada's Hundred Days". In the end the Canadians broke the Hindenburg line and were the first to enter Germany.

Proud as we are of our men, their victories and their fame, we must not forget that they were only a small part of the great army of millions from many lands who fought in the First World War "to end war" and bring peace to the world. Newfoundland, not then a province of Canada, sent many men to join Britain's army, navy and airforce. Her own Newfoundland regiment fought with unbelievable courage. In one terrible battle at Beaumont Hamel, 753 Newfoundlanders went out and only 68 returned. The Australians and New Zealanders sent their corps, the Anzacs. They, too, became world famous for the bravery and brilliance of their fighting. The story of their battles is as thrilling as that of the Canadians. The men of South Africa, India, Greece and many another country played their brave parts. In 1917, the United States joined the Allies in the field, bringing her great weight to speed the victory. Britain and France bore the brunt of the fighting. Britain gave much of her wealth and the lives of almost a million of her men. France suffered most of all for she was the battlefield. Her towns and beautiful buildings were destroyed; her land was torn and



twisted with the shelling; and over one and a quarter million of her young men were killed.

(c) *The Home Front Passes the Test*

Pride in our soldiers and sorrow for our dead united Canada as nothing had ever done before. Men, women and children worked and saved. Workers gave part of their wages; women knitted and sewed; girls and boys collected money at school. Everyone bought war bonds and gave money to the Red Cross, Y.M.C.A., and Salvation Army, all working to give comfort to our men at the front. As German submarines set themselves to starve Britain by preventing ships loaded with food from reaching her, Canadian farmers almost doubled the amount of grain grown and the food ships fought their way through the submarine blockade. Canadian factories worked night and day making munitions and supplies for the Allies. When some manufacturers were found to be shipping poor food and clothing to the soldiers, the shame and anger felt against these profiteers made all decent Canadians work the harder. When a ship loaded with gasoline crashed a munitions ship in Halifax Harbor, the explosion wrecked a large part of the city, and killed or injured nearly 6,000 people. Help was rushed in from all parts of Canada and the United States, while Halifax, her own people broken and homeless, doggedly kept the food ships moving out to Britain.

While the Canadian soldiers were passing their test with the highest honors, the nation at home had its test also. It happened in this way. Up to 1917 the Canadian army had been made up of volunteers but so many of our men were killed that, after Vimy, there were not enough volunteers to fill up the gaps in the ranks. Premier Borden felt that Canada must fall back upon conscription to get the men she needed. Most English-speaking Canadians agreed with him. They believed

that conscription is the fairest way to choose men to go to war, for if it is done by volunteering, it is chiefly the brave and unselfish who go. In this way a nation loses its best men.

The French Canadian Nationalist party objected to conscription. They had agreed to the war in the first place, but had now turned against it and were saying that it was a British war and had nothing to do with Canada. Recruiting was also mismanaged in Quebec. Sir Wilfrid Laurier believed in the war, but he stood by his people hoping to keep his influence over them. The election that year was the bitterest ever fought in Canada. Many angry and cruel words were spoken on both sides. The result was a large majority in favor of conscription. The House of Commons passed the Military Service Act and conscription became the law. Now came the great test. Confederation had been strained more than ever before. The French Canadians were still bitterly opposed to conscription; but they did not rebel. They remained loyal to Confederation and to the new, large Canada they had helped to build. The Canadian nation had passed its test.

The war ended on November 11, 1918. What a day that was! In every town and city of the democratic world, the people rushed into the streets, shouting, singing, dancing for joy. At the same time millions sat at home grieving for their dead who would return no more. Remembrance Day was decreed in their honor; cenotaphs were set up in the towns. The Peace Tower was built in Ottawa to hold the beautiful Book of Remembrance in which are written the names of all Canada's war dead. The great white Vimy



Memorial was erected on Vimy Ridge as a National Monument to our men who sleep in France. They sleep well, our honored dead, their memory treasured in the hearts of their countrymen; their gallant deeds, the glory of Canada. They still speak to us, saying:

“To you from failing hands we throw  
The Torch; be yours to hold it high!  
If ye break faith with us who die,  
We shall not sleep, though poppies grow  
In Flanders Fields.”<sup>1</sup>

## II

### CANADA BECOMES A NATION

#### (a) *In The Commonwealth*

When Canadians saw their army winning fame, and their farms and factories producing huge quantities of food and munitions for the Allies, their national feelings grew stronger and more confident. Prime Minister Robert Borden<sup>2</sup> suggested to Britain that as Canada had sent so large an army to France, she should have some say in how the war was managed. If Canada was to have a say, the other Dominions must have one too; so Premier Lloyd George of Britain organized an Imperial War Cabinet in which the Dominion premiers joined with the British leaders to plan the war.

The next year an Imperial Conference was held at which Premier Borden and Premier Smuts of South Africa brought in a resolution that the Dominions should now be recognized as free nations. They were to be independent of Britain and of

<sup>1</sup> From the poem “In Flanders Fields” by John McCrae, by permission of the Ryerson Press.

<sup>2</sup> Premier Borden was made Sir Robert Borden for his good work in helping to win nationhood for Canada.

one another, but bound together by their friendly feelings and the fact that they all had the same kind of government and lived in the same way. They were already acting like nations: governing themselves and helping Britain to defend the Empire and to fight for world peace. So it seemed only fair that they should be called nations. The other Dominions approved of this and the resolution was passed. Instead of being called an Empire, Britain and her daughter countries now began to be called: The British Commonwealth of Nations. Canada was now a nation inside the Commonwealth.

(b) *In The League of Nations*

As Canada was now recognized as a nation, and as she had done her share of the fighting, Premier Borden said she had a right to a seat with the other nations at the Peace Conference. Some nations objected to this. They did not believe that Canada and the other Dominions were now free nations, independent of Britain. They said that if the Dominions sent delegates, Britain would have more votes than the other nations. But Borden stood firm. The Dominions were admitted to the Peace Conference and proved that they were independent by expressing different opinions in the discussions. The Canadian delegates signed the Peace Treaties and Canada joined the League of Nations which was set up to guard the peace that had been won by so much hard fighting.

The final steps in Canada's Fifth Adventure came at the Imperial Conferences in 1926 and 1931. In 1926, Britain and the Dominions agreed and declared that they were "equal in status, in no way subordinate one to another", united only by their loyalty to the king and their friendly feelings towards one another. That is they made themselves free and independent, not by separating, but by associating with one another. This was the idea that Canada had worked out in her system of responsible

government. It was now being used to unite a group of nations. After careful discussion at the Conference of 1931, this "Declaration of Equality" was made into a law called the Statute of Westminster and passed by the British Parliament.

That was a proud day for Canada. She was now a nation in the Commonwealth, in the League of Nations, and by law. In less than 100 years she had worked her way up from four small colonies which were neither paying their way, nor governing themselves, to a grown-up nation. Every step along the road she had, with some help from wise Britons, thought out and fought out. All these years she had been striding along her own quiet country road to nationhood; she had now reached the intersection. She had still much to do in building up her national feeling, but she was now recognized as a nation. She must step out on the main highway and take her place among the nations of the world.

Canada had had some experience in managing her own affairs and in working with the Commonwealth countries and the United States, but she had none in working with other nations. So it was fortunate that she could make her first contacts in the League of Nations. She was kindly received and from the first played her part with dignity. Her delegates worked on committees and took part in the discussions of the Assembly. They were listened to attentively, partly because, in a way, Canada represented the United States. She did not join the League, and the other nations felt that Canada, being her neighbor and friend, could tell them how the Americans were likely to feel about things.

Senator Raoul Dandurand of Quebec was Canada's most outstanding delegate. He had charming manners and was a fine speaker in both French and English. He was so much liked and so useful in discussion that in 1926 he was appointed



President of the Assembly of the League. This was a great honor for a small, unknown nation like Canada. Senator Dandurand made such a good president that the next year Canada was honored again by being elected to the League Council.

In this way Canada took her first steps along the highway, the road to becoming a great nation. A great nation is not necessarily large or rich. A great nation, like a great person, is one who does great and good things in the world. Canada can become a great nation and Canadians believe she will some day reach that goal.

### III

#### THE BRAVE NEW WORLD

The rejoicing and excitement lasted for months after the war ended. The soldiers and overseas workers were coming home. All across Canada their "home towns" welcomed them. Bands met them at the stations, dinners and parties were given for them; families made much of them; boys and girls were proud to have a hero for a father. The government at Ottawa was busy getting the sick ones into hospitals, arranging pensions for the crippled, and finding farms and work for those who had returned safe and sound.

Suddenly there was a depression; many people were out of work and families had little or no money coming in. This was not surprising for the war factories had closed and there were thousands of workers, as well as thousands of soldiers, looking for jobs. Wages fell and this brought strikes among those who had work; prices came down; farmers got very little for their produce and so could buy little from stores and factories. The wheels turned slower and more slowly. But the hard times did not last long. The four years of war had left the world short of many things. The factories began to hum again making

peace-time goods; the factory workers had money to buy food; the farmers were able to sell their produce and so had money to buy factory goods. The wheels speeded up, fast, faster, faster than they had ever done before. Canada with the other nations strode forward into what they called "the brave new world".

The brave new world ran on a new kind of power. The motor, run by gas or electricity, was now taking the place of horses, wind, and steam power. The horse and buggy, wagon, train, and steamer began to give way to the car, truck, bus, plane and motor boat. The motor turned the wheels faster and everything and everybody had to move faster to keep up with it. Factories were built to manufacture the new kinds of transport. Henry Ford taught them to use the assembly line and so turn out the motor-driven machines more quickly and cheaply. Farmers using tractors and trucks cultivated more land and grew more food for the thousands of new factory workers.

Perhaps the greatest changes were brought about by the car. Cars had been invented before the war, but they were funny ones; high, open, carriage-like things that coughed and jerked along. Now Ford's "Model T" began to crowd the roads which had to be widened and paved to serve them. A car carried people much farther in an hour than a horse and buggy had done. Farmers could now drive to a city to sell their produce, shop, or find entertainment. They saw there houses with running water in kitchen and bathroom, steam heat, electric light, telephones. City stores were filled with ready-made clothing, furniture, radios and labor saving gadgets. There were restaurants, movies, libraries, fine churches. People everywhere began to demand these comforts and pleasures, and business boomed as more and more people were able to buy them.

New ways of communicating played their part in building the brave new world. The phonograph, moving pictures, and radio had all been invented before the war and in these prosperous days everybody began to use them. Radio was the most important of our new ways of communicating. Reginald Fessenden, a Canadian, made the first discoveries in radio and invented the radio broadcast. After Marconi had invented wireless telegraphy, Fessenden built a transmitter and receiver that would send and receive speech over the air waves. From Brant Park, near Boston, on Christmas Eve, 1906, he made the first radio broadcast in the world. He gave a short talk, played a phonograph record, gave a violin solo, and sang "Holy Night". The few people who heard his program were astounded. They had expected to hear on their wireless sets only the dot-dash of the Morse code. The music and singing seemed to them miraculous. Fessenden's instruments were not very good ones and he had no thought of regular broadcasting, but it grew from his beginning.

People in every part of Canada were soon "listening to the radio". The C.B.C. began broadcasting in 1936, and soon after set up a short-wave receiving station at Ottawa to bring in broadcasts from other countries. Many private companies also opened radio stations. In a short time Canadians were as dependent upon the radio for news, information, and entertainment as they were on the movies and the press.

## IV

### CO-OPERATION

#### (a) *The Working People Unite*

Factory workers began forming labor unions over 100 years ago. The first Canadian union was the Typographical Society in Toronto, formed in 1832. The National Policy greatly increased

the number of factories in Canada and in many of them working conditions were very bad. The owners hired women and children because they worked long hours for low wages. Children worked from six in the morning till six at night. Teen-age girls worked 60 hours a week for 80 cents. The work was often done in basements and poor buildings without proper light, heat, ventilation, or sanitation. Yet labor unions could still be prosecuted; when George Brown's printers struck in Toronto, he had them arrested and sent to jail.

After 1871, Sir John A. Macdonald had a law passed making unions legal. Many were formed but they were all local and had not much power. Then, in 1886, they united in the Trades and Labor Congress of Canada. Working all together they had great influence and soon had laws passed forbidding children to work, and regulating wages, hours of work, and workshops. In 1901 the Confederation of Catholic Workers was formed and, in 1939, the Canadian Congress of Labor was organized. Meantime the Dominion and Provincial Governments set up Departments of Labor and many useful labor laws were passed. After World War I the League of Nations formed the International Labor Organization in Geneva and it improved working conditions in many countries. During World War II, the I.L.O. had its headquarters in Montreal. It now works under the United Nations.

#### (b) *The Farmers Form Wheat Pools*

Even before the war, western farmers had been dissatisfied with the prices and grades given them for their grain by the elevator companies. They had formed co-operative elevator companies to handle their own wheat and these co-operatives had improved things considerably. During the war the Dominion Government controlled the price of grain and managed so well that the farmers asked to have the Canadian Wheat Board

continue its work. The grain buyers opposed this and the Board was given up. Then, in the short depression years, the price of wheat fell so low that the farmers had to sell their crops at a loss. They were desperate, and they formed wheat pools.

In a pool each member puts in his share of the goods and takes out his share of the profits. The farmers' greatest disadvantage is that, as a rule, he has to sell his wheat as soon as he threshes it because he needs the money. But in the fall, when everyone is bringing in wheat, the price is low; later it rises, and in the spring may be quite high. A farmer who can afford to hold his wheat till spring usually makes a good profit. A pool makes it possible for all its members to do this, for the pool can afford to hold the wheat and sell it when the price is high. When a member took his wheat to the pool elevator, he got part payment for it; later he got another payment on it, and in the spring, he got the rest of his share of the best price the pool manager had been able to get.

Henry Wise Wood, the president of the United Farmers of Alberta, started the Alberta Wheat Pool. Saskatchewan and Manitoba followed with theirs and the three set up a central pool to sell the wheat, which it did very successfully. For six years the Wheat Pool paid an average of \$1.36 a bushel to its members. The farmers were satisfied; the provincial pools were growing. Then a dreadful blow fell, as you shall hear presently.

### (c) *The Fishermen Co-operate*

While the farmers of Western Canada were organizing pools to get better prices for their wheat, the fishermen of Nova Scotia were forming co-operative societies to get better prices for their fish. A co-operative society works in much the same way as a pool. For years the fishermen had been forced to sell their fish for half a cent a pound to the merchants who sold



it for 20¢ a pound; the fishermen got 6¢ a pound for lobsters which the canneries sold for 25¢ a pound. At the low prices they received the fishermen could not provide proper food, clothing, or shelter for their families. They, too, were desperate.

To these poor people, one fortunate day, came Dr. Thompkins of St. Francis Xavier University, at Antigonish. He visited among them, talking, preaching, teaching them to read, think, and discuss, trying to rouse them from their despair. One day at Little Dover when they were complaining, he asked them why they didn't stop grumbling and do something. "What do you want?" he asked. "A cannery where we can process our own fish," suggested one. "Then build one," said Dr. Thompkins.

That winter the fishermen of Little Dover took their axes to the woods, chopped down trees, and built themselves a cannery. Dr. Thompkins and a friend lent them \$1,000 to buy machinery; in the first year they made enough to pay off the loan and give each member of the co-operative cannery 2¢ a pound extra for his fish. That cannery brought hope and courage not only to Little Dover but to many fishing villages along the coast. The people were still poor, but they knew now that by thinking, planning, and co-operating they could get what they needed.

## V

### THE GREAT NORTH

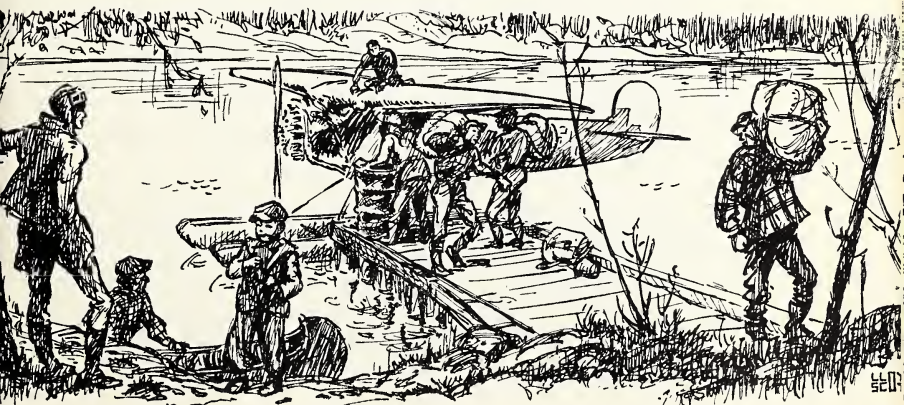
#### (a) *The Bush Pilots*

When our airmen returned after the war, life at first seemed terribly tame. Some went back to the work they had left, but many wished to go on flying. Commercial flying was just beginning then and jobs were few. Some flew at fairs, stunting and taking up passengers; others taught flying to eager young men and women. Soon the governments were using many of

them. Quebec began making forest fire patrols by air and the other provinces followed her example. The Dominion Government sent out planes to photograph the northland from the air; maps of the country were made from these aerial photographs. When oil was discovered at Norman, in 1921, the Imperial Oil Company flew in men and supplies.

Then came the bush pilots, the men who made flying a business and opened up the Great North, Canada's last frontier. The first passenger and freight service was set up at Noranda, Quebec. In 1929, C. H. "Punch" Dickens flew to Aklavik, and from that day to this planes have replaced canoes and dog teams in bringing out the rich crop of the North. Leigh Brintnell flew in Gilbert Labine, the prospector who discovered radium on the shores of Great Bear Lake. Other bold lads followed fast: W. R. "Wop" May; Grant McConachie, Hollick-Kenyon, and a dozen others, spread a network of airlines over the Northland.

At first the bush pilots flew in single-engined planes, most of them patched-up "crates", without radios, weather reports, or landing-strips. They used floats in summer and skis in winter for landing on any convenient lake or river, and remained



Bush Pilots

grounded during the spring break-up and fall freeze-up. They carried passengers and any kind of freight they could get: furs, mail, mining machinery, furniture, fresh vegetables, prefabricated houses. It was dangerous flying, but they flew carefully, never risking the lives of their passengers. If the weather was bad they stayed grounded—except on mercy flights of which they made many. If an engine failed and there was no good landing in sight, they flew low, and drove the plane between two trees. This was dangerous, of course, but with skill and luck it sliced off the wings, checked the speed, and allowed the plane to land with little more than a heavy jolt.

After the opening of the mines at Port Radium and Yellowknife, the bush pilots' business increased rapidly. They formed companies: Canadian Airways, and McConachie's Yukon Southern, besides many smaller ones. Later the two large ones united and bought in most of the smaller ones, forming Canadian Pacific Airlines. The Big North now travelled, and got its mail and freight, as regularly and more quickly than most parts of Canada. The Indians and Eskimos were experienced air travellers long before other Canadians. In 15 years the bush pilots carried 80 million pounds of freight, 8 million pounds of mail, and 250,000 passengers, many times more than were carried in any other country. They laid out air routes and landing-strips, and built up an invaluable store of information about the north and the best methods of flying there. The bush pilots put Canada in the front rank of world aviation.

### (b) *Down North*

By this time the North West Territories which the bush pilots were opening up had been quite fully explored. From the time of Hearne and Mackenzie, fur traders and missionaries had been reporting that the great Mackenzie Basin was rich in timber, coal, oil, gold; and that many grains and vegetables grew well

under the midnight sun of its short summer. In 1819, Britain sent Sir John Franklin to explore the Arctic coast. Franklin and his party went overland from Cumberland House to the Coppermine River. They were not properly supplied with food and, on the return journey, many of them died of starvation.<sup>3</sup> On a second trip Franklin did explore part of the coast; but his third expedition, made in two ships, simply vanished. Search parties combed the North for years before they found the pitiful remains of the lost ones on King William's Island. The searchers almost completed the exploration of the Arctic coast and islands; and since Confederation the Dominion Government has, each summer, sent scientists to study and report upon the Northland.

The Territories stretch from Hudson Bay to the Rockies, and from the northern boundary of the Western Provinces to the North Pole. They cover almost a million square miles. Roughly, the north east half of the mainland part lies on the Canadian Shield. It is a rocky plateau, mostly treeless, and thickly sprinkled with lakes. It has chilly summers, but mild winters and less rainfall than the south-west half, the Mackenzie lowland. The lowland has short, warm summers; long, cold winters and from 10 to 20 inches of moisture a year. The Indians live in the Mackenzie Valley, while the Eskimos inhabit the plateau and the shores and islands of the Arctic Ocean.

The Indians are slender and quiet; nearly all of them have some white blood. Nowadays they live in frame houses and cloth tents, wear ordinary clothes, and use ordinary food, tools and weapons. They go to school and church. Some still hunt and trap for the fur companies, but an increasing number work as canoe-men, guides and packers for the mining companies.

The Eskimos, too, have adopted many modern conveniences. They are strong, jolly, very intelligent and active. Many are

<sup>3</sup> You should read Franklin's story; it is as tragic and as heroic as that of Scott in the Antarctic.

tall and good looking; the women are often as good at hunting and trapping as the men. They build one-room log-houses of driftwood and use igloos only when seal-hunting on the ice. Many have motor boats and spend the summer hunting white whales and seal, as they use oil for both food and fuel. In the fall they fish hard for each family needs at least 10,000 fish for winter. In winter they hunt caribou for fresh meat, and trap the white fox, their main cash crop.

To increase the food supply of the native peoples, the Dominion Government has set apart six large, wild animal preserves; and has brought in from Alaska a large herd of reindeer. They have been placed on a range near the mouth of the Mackenzie where they are increasing rapidly. It is hoped that in time the Indians and Eskimos may become reindeer ranchers, like the Laplanders, and so live more settled lives. This is an example of the way in which the Government can bring a new resource into the country.

### *(c) Northern Trade and Government*

As the fur traders moved west and north and the settlers followed them, the fur-bearing animals fell back into the North West Territories. This is now the only large fur hunting ground in Canada and one of the few left in the world. Furs and minerals are its most valuable crops. Muskrat, fox and beaver provide the largest number of skins, but mink, otter, marten, and fisher are the most beautiful and valuable. Oil is produced at Norman and gold at Yellowknife, but pitchblende, from which radium and uranium are extracted, is the most interesting ore of the north. Surprisingly, the third industry of the Territories is agriculture. Considering the frost, dryness, short summer and lack of winter sunshine, it is amazing, but grain, potatoes, cabbages, rhubarb, and small fruits are produced all the way down to



Aklavik. The experts think it possible that some field crops might be grown, and live stock kept almost to the Arctic Ocean.

The North West Territories are governed by a Commissioner and Council at Ottawa. Specially trained Mounted Police keep order there and do many other important jobs. Magistrates are appointed to try those guilty of small offences, and judges are sent in to try criminals. Churches, schools, and hospitals are all owned by the Roman Catholic or the Anglican Church whose missionaries began building them a century ago. The Dominion Government grants money to aid them in their work. The Government also provides full-time medical health officers at the important posts; and the Royal Canadian Air Force and the bush pilots stand ready at all times to make mercy flights to bring the sick or wounded out to southern hospitals.

## VI

### BOOM

Business boomed in the brave new world of southern Canada. The overseas demand for Canadian wheat and flour continued. With their improved seed, new machinery, and the combine which came in 1922, western farmers cultivated bigger farms than ever. Two new districts, Peace River and Northern Quebec, were settled by farmers and the production of all kinds of grain kept increasing.

As production increased, transportation was improved. The Hudson Bay Railway now carried western wheat to Churchill to be shipped to Britain. The new Welland Canal was so deep and modern that the longest grain carriers and largest lake freighters could use it. The Panama Canal, built by the Americans, allowed wheat from Alberta, lumber, fish, and fruit from British Columbia, to be carried round to the Eastern States and

the Maritime Provinces quickly and cheaply. Vancouver, New Westminster, and Victoria began to grow into big ports. As railways and ships brought more grain, fruit, and lumber from the Western Provinces, the St. Lawrence and Maritime Provinces turned to dairy farming, mining, and manufacturing.

Everywhere the wheels turned faster and faster; people worked harder and harder. They were making money and buying houses, cars, furniture, jewelry, radios, everything they wanted. The wheels were spinning! Suddenly, crash! On October 29, 1929, that brave new world overturned in the ditch.

## VII

### THE GREAT DEPRESSION

The depression that followed that crash was the worst that had ever happened. Things had been going so well that people were stunned; they could not understand it. The experts thought that probably it came because men had learned to grow and produce great quantities of goods, but had not learned how to distribute these goods to the people who needed them. There were millions of people in the world who needed better food, clothing and tools, but they could not afford to buy them, or their governments would not let them trade with us. The farmers could get only very low prices for their produce, or could not sell it at all, so they had no money to buy goods from the factories. On the farm and in the factory the wheels turned very slowly or stopped altogether.

This threw millions of people all over the world, and hundreds of thousands of Canadians, out of work. The young men and women graduating from school could find no jobs at all. They had to live on their fathers, or wander about the country, unhappy, often hungry. Other people soon used up the money

they had saved. The Government gave them "relief", that is, money to buy food and clothing. A few lazy people did not care, but the great majority felt sad and angry. They were honest people who had always worked for their living and they hated charity.

(a) *Drought*

Added to the depression, the Prairie Provinces had the worst drought anyone could remember. Few shelter belts had been planted, and little effort had been made to build reservoirs to store water. Years of unwise ploughing and cropping had reduced the soil to dust. For eight long years there was too little rainfall and the crops failed. From over 500 million bushels, the crop went down, down, down to 182 million. The drought was worst in Saskatchewan. There the hot sun burned the earth to powder. The winds caught up the good topsoil from the fields in clouds and carried it miles away. It drifted up round the small houses and over the fences till only the tops of the posts showed. The farmers had nothing to sell and most of them soon had no money left even to buy food. In this great



Dust Storm

crisis Canadians again showed that they were a nation. The Dominion Government paid out great sums of money to help the provinces provide relief for their people. The Maritimes, Quebec, Ontario, and British Columbia had thousands of unemployed themselves, but they sent car-loads of food to the hard-hit prairies. The Westerners stood up bravely in their trouble. Teachers, preachers, doctors and public servants worked for little or no pay. People shared what they had and nobody actually starved, but life was grim indeed. Somehow they kept up their hope that rain and crops would come again, and, of course, they did. In 1938, the rain returned and the West again had a crop.

The great drought made Canadians realize that if they want to keep their land fertile, they must take care of it. The governments set scientists to work studying how to store up water, prevent soil drifting, and control pests. Millions of trees were planted and hundreds of dams and ponds built. Families were moved from the driest parts to better land, and the dry fields were regressed to be used as community pastures. Farmers were taught how to plant their crops so as to keep the soil from drifting.



Conservation or This? (Fire, Flood, Drought)

New kinds of cultivating machines were brought in and new studies made of pest control.

Meantime the wheat pools were in trouble. When the depression began they had made their farmer members a down payment of \$1 a bushel, and that year the price of wheat fell to 82¢. The Wheat Pools lost a great deal of money, but their purpose was to hold the farmer's wheat for him till the price was high, so they held it and bought more and more till they had a huge quantity in storage, and still the price went down. The Pools borrowed from the banks and then from the Provincial Governments. In the end the Dominion Government had to take over the great store of wheat and sell it as best they could. The Wheat Pools were honest. They turned themselves back into elevator companies and slowly earned the money and paid back their debts to the government and the banks.

(b) *Newfoundland Takes It On The Chin*

Newfoundland was the hardest hit of all. During the war and boom years, her fishing had been good, the demand for fish great, and the price high. Both fishermen and merchants were prosperous. Now in addition to the depression, came years of poor fishing. With few fish and poor prices, thousands of people had to go on relief; the Government had not enough money coming in to pay its bills. Britain made the island a grant of money and sent out a Royal Commission to study the situation and suggest what should be done. The Commission advised that Newfoundland should give up her responsible government and accept government by a commission of three Britons and three Newfoundlanders with the Governor as chairman. The commission would manage the island as if it were a large business and try to make it pay its way. Giving up their responsible government was a terrible blow, the worst that could fall upon any free country, but the Newfoundlanders gritted their teeth



and took it on the chin. They accepted commission government. The commission did succeed in putting Newfoundland on its feet financially. Still, the people wanted to govern themselves and that brought about a very important event. Perhaps you can guess what that was.

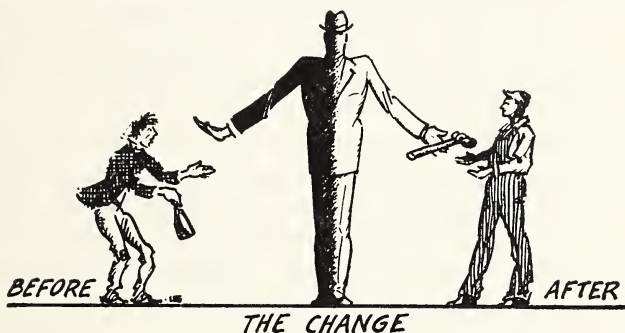
(c) *A Great Social Change*

When we were studying the social life of the French Canadians, the Loyalists, the Pioneers, and the Builders, we talked of their houses and furniture; their food and clothing; their ways of travelling, working and amusing themselves. The people who lived in the days of the First World War made changes in these things too. They built smaller, more convenient houses, lighted with electricity. They had more comfortable furniture and clothing and ate more fruit, vegetables and ice cream. They drove cars instead of horses and buggies; rode modern bicycles; used machines to do much of their work; listened to the radio, went to the moving pictures, played more games, lived more out of doors.

But the most important social change of those days was different; it was one that took place in the minds and feelings of the people. It was this: before the First World War and the Great Depression, if a person was out of work, or ill, or poor, people were apt to think it was his own fault and blame him for it. There was no help for such people unless some charitable person or society took care of them. The community provided great bare houses called orphanages, for orphans; and "poor houses" for old people who had no money; and there were charity hospitals; but most people thought it a disgrace to be sent to these places. At the beginning of the depression many people still blamed the unemployed and the poor, saying they were lazy.

The war and depression changed this. People in all countries began to understand that unemployment and sickness are usually

not the fault of the individual but of the community. They began to realize that if such things are the fault of the community, it is the duty of the community to take care of the sufferers. When the soldiers came back from the war, the governments tried to take care of them. This was a new thing; the officials made many mistakes, but they did try. During the depression, the communities and the governments cared for the unemployed and those without money. Again they made mistakes, but they tried and they were learning how to do it.



Before this most people had worked for themselves; each one tried to get as much work, money, health, and fun as he could without caring much about "the other fellow". Now people began to see that if a community wants to have work, good health, and good times for all, they must co-operate. The farmers, the fishermen and many other groups were co-operating in business. Churches which had quarreled bitterly for centuries began to co-operate. Schools which had urged their pupils to "try to beat the other fellow" began to teach them how to work together. Parents began to see that the only way to keep their children healthy and safe was to see that *all* children were healthy and safe. Sensible people everywhere began to co-operate to build better communities, provinces, and countries.

The community, the province, and the Dominion now shared the cost of social services. Money was given to widowed mothers to bring up their children in their own homes instead of sending them to orphanages. Old people were given old age pensions instead of being sent to poor houses. People out of work could get "relief" and help in finding work. Each province set up a Department of Public Health to oversee the sanitation of homes and public buildings; to quarantine contagious diseases; to give medical inspection to schools; to supervise hospitals, nursing, and child welfare. All these things made great changes in the lives of the people. More babies lived. Children grew taller and heavier than those of earlier days. Grown people were healthier and happier and they lived longer.

The change was great and good, but it cost a great deal of money and there was a difficulty about paying for it. The British North America Act said that each province should control its own social services; and that the Dominion Government should control most of the taxes. This meant that only the Provincial Governments had the power to set up social services, and only the Dominion Government had the money to pay for them. It was very puzzling. The Dominion Government appointed a commission to study the question. In its report (called the Rowell-Sirois Report) the Commission suggested that the provinces should give the Dominion the right to collect some of their taxes. In return for this, the Dominion would pay for their social services. The richer provinces, Ontario and Quebec, refused, but the others made this arrangement with the Dominion.

(d) *Enter The Ladies and Two New Parties*

During these years of boom and depression there had been many political changes, three of which were interesting. One was that after the war, for the first time, women were given the

right to vote. In 1919, Sir Wilfrid Laurier died and soon after Sir Robert Borden, who had led Canada so wisely through the war, retired. The Conservatives chose Mr. Arthur Meighen for their leader and the Liberals chose Mr. William Lyon Mackenzie King.

Mr. Meighen presently retired, but Mr. Mackenzie King became Prime Minister of Canada, a position which he held altogether for over 21 years. He was a short, stoutish man who hid his iron purposes and subtle genius under an innocent and ordinary appearance. A grandson of the Reformer, William Lyon Mackenzie, King was born in Kitchener, Ontario, and grew up in a happy family, keenly interested in politics. "Billy" King worked hard at college and became interested in labor conditions about which he wrote a book. Under Sir Wilfrid Laurier he became Canada's first Minister of Labor, and soon showed that he had a great gift for getting the parties in a dispute to compromise and settle their differences. Later, as Prime Minister, this gift made him a skilful manager of Parliament. He became famous also for his success in smoothing out difficulties at Commonwealth Conferences and in dealing with Britain and the United States. During his long years as Prime Minister, his gift helped him to carry out his two great purposes: to keep the peace between French and English speaking Canadians; and to complete Canada's development as a nation. He retired in 1948, after record years of devoted service to his country. He died at Kingsmere, near Ottawa, on July 22, 1950. Tributes to his achievement as a Canadian and world statesman poured into Ottawa from all parts of the Dominion and the world. From London came the following telegram from King George VI:

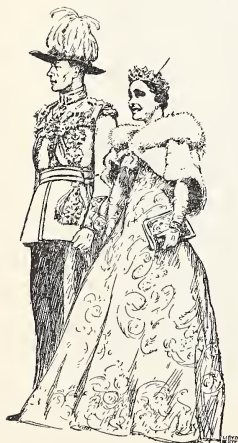
"The Queen and I were grieved to hear the news of Mackenzie King's death. His wisdom and wide experi-

ence were of constant value in the counsels of the British Commonwealth of Nations, while his lifelong service to Canada will ensure him an honored place in the history of his country and in the hearts of its people."

When the Great Depression began two new parties sprang up. Both of them were founded in Calgary and were made up of people who thought that the rich manufacturers and merchants of the great cities were getting too large a share of the profits of Canada's resources and that the Canadian people should have a larger share of them. The Social Credit Party, founded by William Aberhart of Alberta, thought this could be managed by changing the money system of Canada. The Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (C.C.F.) thought that the people should own the banks, railways, and large industries of the country so that the profits could be used for the good of the whole nation. This party was led by J. S. Woodsworth, a Methodist minister who had been a worker among the poor of Winnipeg and Vancouver. Both of these parties are active today.

(e) *The Visit of the King and Queen*

The pleasantest thing that happened in Canada in those years was the visit of the King and Queen. The girls and boys who saw them will never forget that day. King George VI and Queen Elizabeth came to visit us in May, 1939. They crossed the ocean in a battleship and steamed up the St. Lawrence to Quebec where the streets streamed with flags. The French Canadians cheered themselves hoarse to welcome their Majesties, as they had done to welcome De Tracy 300 years ago.





The royal visitors went on to Ottawa where they sat on their thrones and opened parliament. They are the King and Queen of Canada, but they had never done this before because they are usually busy in England; in Ottawa the Governor-General does it for them. The Queen wore a beautiful dress of white satin embroidered with pearls, and both the King and Queen wore their crowns. The members and their friends filled the floor and galleries; it was an unforgettable scene.

After that the King and Queen boarded a splendid silver and blue royal train and visited the cities and towns of Ontario. It was May and Canada was looking her loveliest. Everywhere there were flags and bunting and grand receptions. Little girls gave the Queen flowers, and she and the King smiled, and waved, and visited the hospitals and made friends with everyone.

Then the blue and silver train brought them to the West. The drought was just over and the West was poor, but flags and bunting waved and crowds thronged the streets to shout and cheer just the same. Parents and teachers had brought the children from as far away as 100 miles. The churches and schools had been giving concerts and socials for weeks before to earn the money. There were 24,000 children in Regina and it rained! It was the first good rain after the last big dust storm of the drought. Imagine how thankful and gay the people felt that happy day.

Visiting, talking, and making friends all day long is very tiring, so when evening came the silver train drew on to some quiet siding and the lights were put out. Their Majesties were glad to go to bed. The Mounted Police stood on guard. Then the people from the district drove up quietly and they too stood watch with hardly a whisper for fear of waking the royal sleepers. They had a good rest at Jasper and another at Victoria which was looking its loveliest in their honor.

On their way back the King and Queen visited President and Mrs. Roosevelt in the United States where they were entertained sumptuously. They then came back to visit the Maritime Provinces and say good-bye. Halifax was massed with banners and bunting and everyone hoped it wouldn't rain as it had been doing for two days. Sure enough the farewell day shone with Canada's own bright sunshine. After the receptions and visits were over the King and Queen boarded a great white ship waiting for them in the harbor. There they stood all alone, high up where everyone could see them, and waved good-bye while massed choruses sang "God be with you" and "Will ye no come back again". So the white ship carried them away into the twilight, to Newfoundland, and then home to Britain.



# *The Great Adventure: Canada Steps Out Into the World*

## Chapter Twenty-one

### CANADA IN THE SECOND WORLD WAR

1939—1945

#### I

##### HOW THE SECOND WORLD WAR BEGAN

THE League of Nations failed. It had been formed to keep peace in the world and it did not do so. When Japan attacked China, the nations of the League reproved her, but they did not send their armies to protect China. They did not stand together and tell Japan that if she fought with China she would have to fight with them all. When other greedy nations saw this they attacked their small neighbors. No one was afraid of the League any more. It had lost its power.

The Germans had been defeated in the First World War, but their army was not destroyed. As soon as they could, they began to make it ready to fight again. Their Government was weak and Hitler, an evil man, made himself dictator over the nation. He told the Germans that God had created them a superior race to conquer all other nations and rule over them. They believed him and seized Austria and Czechoslovakia. The

other nations now saw that Hitler really meant to conquer them and decided that they must stop him. When he attacked Poland, Britain and France declared war on Germany. In this way, in September, 1939, the Second World War began.

Canada and the other nations of the British Commonwealth declared war too. It was a war for freedom. Canada was a free country. She did not want to be ruled by Germany, and she did want to help Britain and France. Besides, Canadians make their living by selling their goods to other countries. If Germany controlled them, Canada's business would be ruined.

(a) *Here Come The Canadians*

Canada was better prepared for the Second World War than for the First. She knew now that war is a terrible thing and she went into it grimly. She was richer than she had been in 1914, and her people were used to paying taxes to pay for a war. This time, too, they had the radio. It was a great help, for every day it told the people how the war was going and even described the battles. This was very exciting. It made everyone feel that he was in the fight and that made him work his hardest. This time, also, Canada had an army, navy and air force. They were small but they had plans ready for becoming larger.

Even before the Dominion Parliament had passed the law that said we were at war, the War Department sent men already in the army, navy and airforce to guard our shores, and called for volunteers to enlarge the three forces. Volunteers streamed in; the only difficulty was to get uniforms and weapons for them fast enough.

Many Canadians had already joined the British Air Force (R.A.F.). They were the first Canadians to fight in the war. They formed the famous All-Canadian squadron. By November the army had 60,000 volunteers and in December the first

division sailed for Scotland. As they steamed up the River Clyde, "The Scots poked their heads out of windows and doors, waved flags, and shouted, 'Canadians! Canadians! Here come the Canadians!'" They were welcomed also by a message from the King, and were soon settled at Aldershot hard at work training. Other divisions of the army and squadrons of airmen soon followed them. This was fortunate, as you shall hear.

(b) *Dunkirk*

Germany conquered Poland in three weeks in the fall of 1939. In the spring of 1940, she seized Denmark and attacked Norway. The Norwegians fought magnificently but they were a small nation and were soon overcome. By this time the great German army was rolling. In six weeks it conquered Holland, Belgium and France. In June, Mussolini, the dictator of Italy, joined the Germans and all western Europe lay at Hitler's feet.

Only Britain remained free and she barely escaped with her life. She had sent her army to help Belgium and it was caught by the Germans on the beach at Dunkirk and hemmed in between the enemy and the sea. Their big guns had been captured and the British soldiers stood helpless under a rain of bombs from German planes. The sea off Dunkirk is shallow; big ships cannot sail in to the land. The British radio sent out a call for small boats.

For a moment it seemed as if Britain held her breath, then men, boys, and women, too, dashed for their boats. They flung in blankets, coats, food, and pushed off, putt-putting, sailing, even rowing across the narrow sea to Dunkirk. It was calm and foggy or they never could have done it. Back and forth the small boats raced, never heeding the bombs, each one picking up as many men as possible. Back and forth, hour after hour, while the bombs fell and the men stood quietly, each waiting his turn. And hour after hour all round the world



men and women sat at their radios, tears on their cheeks and a light in their eyes, listening to the radio tell of the heroism of those common men and women.

“And many a grimy little tramp and skiff  
of painted pride  
Went down in thunder to a grave beneath  
the bloody tide,  
But from the horror-haunted coast, across  
the snarling foam,  
The little boats of Britain brought our  
men in safety home.”<sup>1</sup>

(c) *The Battle of Britain*

Now began a dreadful time. Britain was almost defenceless. She had saved her men at Dunkirk, but they had lost their guns and trucks. The factory workers were working at their machines day and night till they were ready to drop with weariness, but to make weapons for 338,000 men takes months, and everyone expected Hitler to invade Britain at once. In this desperate situation General McNaughton hurriedly organized the Canadian Divisions into a “quick acting, hard hitting” force. They were stationed at a central point from which they could strike out in any direction and there they stood, ready to defend Britain to the last man. Hitler had not yet enough boats to carry his army across the Channel, so he began gathering more. The Canadians watched him “with their fingers on the triggers”. Meantime he sent his air force to smash Britain’s defences.

The British Air Force was small and as yet had the help of only four Canadian squadrons. R.C.A.F. No. 1 Fighter Squadron had just arrived from Canada, but the All-Canadian squadron had fought beside the R.A.F. over Dunkirk and France.

<sup>1</sup> From “Little Boats of Britain” by permission of the author, Sara Carsley.

The All-Canadians now had Squadron Leader Badar to lead them; he was the famous airman who flew and fought with two artificial legs. He crashed again while leading the Canadians and bent both his metal legs, but a mechanic straightened them and Badar was in the air again in half an hour.

British and Canadians faced the much larger German Air Force boldly. The Germans bombed first ports and naval bases, then airdromes. Next they attacked London and levelled great spaces in the city. The big air battle came on September 15th. That day Hitler hurled in 400 bombers and fighters. "There were more than 1,000 aircraft in the sky south of London." Nine were counted falling at one time and there were parachutes everywhere. On that famous day British and Canadian squadrons shot down 185 German planes. On the 18th, there was another great battle in which the All-Canadians led the attack upon 20 German bombers, shooting down 14 of them.

"The sky," said Badar afterwards, "seemed to be full of Spitfires and Hurricanes, queueing up to attack the enemy." It was a great fight. Altogether in the Battle of Britain, the British fighters shot down 2,375 planes besides those that limped off damaged. The Germans had had enough; the invasion boats moved away. The bombing went on all through the war, but the greatest danger was over.

While bombs and crashing planes rained upon them from the skies; while their homes and cities collapsed about them and fires raged on every hand, the British people carried on bravely. Indeed the bombing seemed to make them the more determined to win or die fighting. Many thousands were killed and many more thousands were wounded. City people sent their children to the country or to Canada for safety, but they themselves remained at their jobs in offices, factories and homes. They worked all day and spent much of the night fire-watching,

rescuing people from wrecked buildings, caring for the sick, wounded and homeless. The radio told us about it all and the courage of the British people won the admiration of the world.

## II

### THE BATTLE OF THE ATLANTIC

Germany's surface warships had never matched the British fleet, but she had long boasted of her submarines. A tough fight was expected in the Atlantic. The forward position of Nova Scotia and Newfoundland was a danger to them, but a great advantage to the Allies. Halifax at once became the base for the big convoys of troop and merchant ships which carried men, munitions and food to the armies overseas; while Newfoundland's great airports at Gander and Botwood served the planes. The United States, though not yet in the war, was building planes for Britain, but had not enough ships to carry them over. Before that, very few trans-ocean flights had been made; now Canadian, British, and American pilots began flying the new planes over in hundreds. When the hop from Gander to Iceland proved to be too long for light planes, Canada built Goose Bay in Labrador. It is now one of the great airports of the world. Also from Newfoundland took off much of the "air cover" of the convoys; the sub-spotters and sub-fighters which guarded the sea lanes to Britain; while St. John's became the "harbor of refuge" where wounded ships were repaired.

The Canadian Navy played a very important part in the Battle of the Atlantic and the Canadian Air Force did its share and more. As the Germans could not invade Britain, they planned to starve her out. Britain buys most of her food from Canada and other countries; Hitler's plan was to keep her from getting this food. He built submarine pens along the west coast of France and sent out "wolf packs" of submarines

to blow up the food ships on their way to Britain. The "wolf packs" fought in the Atlantic all through the war, but they lost that battle too. The Canadian Navy and the Canadian Air Force helped Britain to win it.

(a) *The Royal Canadian Navy*

At first the Canadian Navy had only 15 ships and less than 2,000 men, but it built itself up till it had 700 ships and nearly 100,000 men besides over 6,000 women (W.R.C.N.), Wrens they called them. The ships were destroyers, cruisers, mine sweepers, torpedo boats, sub-chasers, and corvettes. Most of them were built in Canada; in a single day eight new ships were christened. The Navy's first job was to guard Canada's shores. Our west coast has so many bays and islands that they got the fishermen and their boats to patrol that part. They knew their fishing grounds so well that they made splendid guards.

This left more men and ships free to fight at sea. They fought all over the world. They helped bring the men home from Dunkirk and fought in the battle of Britain. H.M.C.S. Fraser was cut in two by another ship, one black night, while she was taking on escaping soldiers. H.M.C.S. Restigouche with great skill moved up to the rear half and took off the men; then picked up those thrown into the water from the front half. She saved most of the men. Canadian navy ships fought alongside the British in the Battle of Norway and helped the Americans in the Battle of the Aleutians. They fought submarines in the English Channel and in the Mediterranean; they carried the Canadian army to battle in Sicily and Italy. When "D" Day came more than 100 ships and 10,000 men of the Royal Canadian Navy were there.

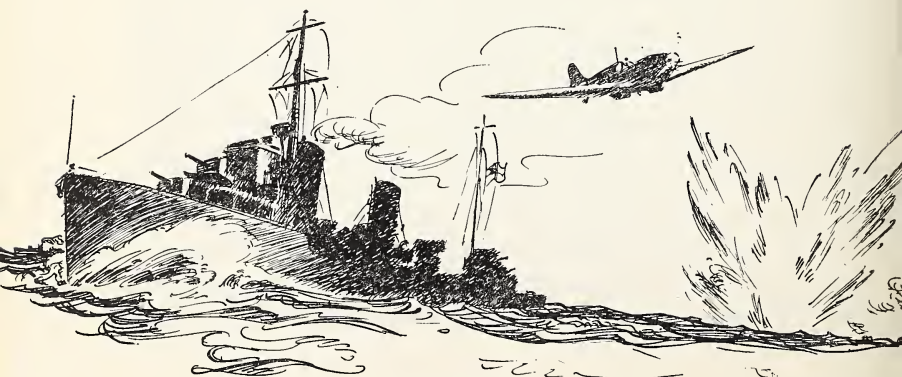
But our navy's greatest fight was in the long Battle of the Atlantic. Six days after war was declared Canadian destroyers sailed out of Halifax guarding the first convoy of ships

carrying food to Britain and our forces overseas. When the German U boats were sinking 1,000,000 tons of shipping a month in the Atlantic and torpedoing cargo boats in the St. Lawrence itself, the Canadian Navy was doing half the convoy work; before the war ended it was doing nearly all. Day and night sub-chasers, torpedo boats, and corvettes hunted the German wolf packs and fought with them.

The ships of the Merchant Navy, the cargo ships, were almost as important as the fighting ships; the men of the Merchant Navy were certainly as brave as the fighters. Their work was hard and very dangerous. On winter nights they steamed slowly along covered with ice, the men half frozen at their posts and every moment expecting a torpedo. Yet 6,000 Canadians joined the Merchant Navy and over 1,000 lost their lives.

#### (b) *The Royal Canadian Air Force*

Like the Navy the Royal Canadian Air Force was small at first, but rose to a strength of over 200,000 men and over 16,000 women. With the Navy it guarded Canada's shores, fought over Dunkirk and in the Battle of Britain, and waged the Battle of the Atlantic. Canada's share of the sea lanes was inspected every day. Before the convoys sailed, the air force searched



The Battle of the Atlantic



the sea outside the harbor. Then in fan-shaped formation, each craft patrolling back and forth in its own sector, the air force preceded the convoys across the Atlantic. Besides these "air cover patrols", by 1944 Canada had 42 air squadrons in Britain, taking part in every raid, dropping thousands of tons of bombs on Germany. The R.C.A.F. fought beside the R.A.F. in the Mediterranean, in India and in Burma; and on D-day they were there, covering the army as it swarmed up the beaches.

The great battles in which the Canadian Air Force fought make the most interesting part of its story, but perhaps its most valuable work was training the airmen of the whole Commonwealth. The bush pilots had made Canada famous as a flying nation, so when the war began the Commonwealth nations chose her to train their flyers. Many of the best airmen in Canada missed the fighting because they were teaching in the 154 schools set up to train not only Canadians, but the flyers and ground crews of Britain, Australia and New Zealand. Belgians, Czechs, Free French, Mexicans, Hollanders, Newfoundlanders, Poles, Americans, and West Indians were also trained here, while Norway set up her own training school in Ontario.

Another group of men who missed the fighting were the ground crews. They were the mechanics who took care of the planes and their instruments and guns. As each plane came in, the ground crew replaced parts, changed the guns for cleaning, and refuelled it. In the Battle of Britain they did all this in seven or eight minutes. At first all the trained ground crews in Canada were needed to work in the Air Training Schools. Later, when many of them did get overseas to Britain, Italy, Africa and India, they worked hard and got little praise. But upon their skill and care depended the life of every airman who flew and, in part, the success of every battle fought.

Still another group who missed the fighting but not the danger, was the Trans-Atlantic Ferry Pilots. These were the men who flew the new bombers from Canadian and American factories across the ocean. They made Trans-Atlantic flying a daily job, and prepared the way for the daily Trans-Atlantic flights of today. Some of the bush pilots who were too old to go to war became ferry pilots, and they were joined by many skilled flyers from the United States. There were even women ferry pilots. Soon a stream of graduates from the Air Training Schools and of bombers for them to fly was flowing across the Atlantic; it went on flowing as long as the war lasted.

### III

#### ENTER THE UNITED STATES

Through the years 1940 and 1941 the Commonwealth stood alone against the brutal enemy as he struck down nation after nation. He ploughed south through middle Europe and over brave Yugoslavia and tiny Greece. They both went down fighting like tigers. In June, Hitler turned against Russia. The German armies swept across western Russia, but the Russians fought desperately as they fell back to Leningrad, Moscow, and later to Stalingrad. At these places they stood firm; Hitler could not take them. He was stopped in the east as he had been stopped in the west by Britain.

All this time the United States had been a good friend to Canada and Britain. Hundreds of young Americans had joined the Canadian or British air force. President Roosevelt met Prime Minister Mackenzie King at Ogdensburg and they formed a Permanent Joint Board of Defence to guard North America. After that the United States set up defence bases in Greenland and Iceland, and sold or lent great numbers of bombers, tanks,

and trucks to Britain. Suddenly, like a thunderbolt from a blue sky, the news fell upon the world that Japan had bombed the American fleet at Pearl Harbor. The Americans were stunned! All the great nations were now in the war: Germany, Italy and Japan against Britain, Russia, and the United States. It was indeed a world war. The Americans got their army, navy and air force ready as quickly as they could. With Australia to help them, they took over the war in the Pacific, and prepared to attack Italy from North Africa.

## IV

### WITH THE CANADIAN ARMY

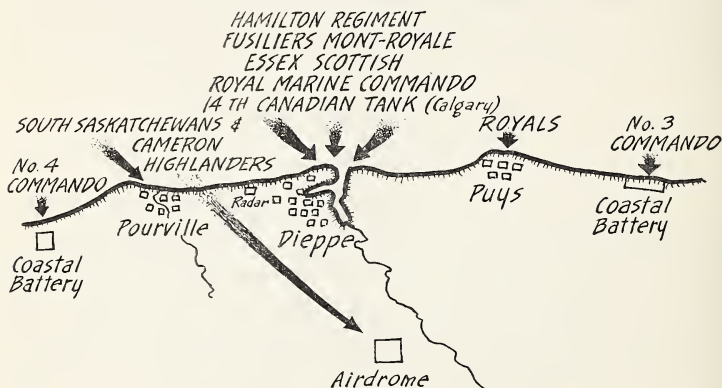
#### (a) *At Dieppe*

The Allies were now holding their own, but their leaders knew that to defeat Germany they must attack Europe. Hitler had had two years to build forts and set up big guns along her west coast; it would take hard fighting to capture them. The Allies planned a kind of super-commando raid on the coast of France to find the best way to go about the big attack, and they chose the Second Division of the Canadian army to make up most of the raiding party. When the Canadians in England were put in training for this, they were delighted. They had been complaining that they were kept on guard and got no fighting. They got plenty of fighting before the war was over.

The plan was to capture Dieppe, the old fishing port on the French coast. The soldiers were to encircle it, and the engineers to destroy all they could within the circle. Each party knew exactly what it had to do. On the night of August 19, 1942, the navy took them on board and, in darkness and silence, they slipped across the Channel to France.

They were unlucky from the first. On the way over No. 3

Commando met and fought with a German convoy. This roused the Germans who received both No. 3 and the Royals at Puy with heavy gun fire. Many were killed as they ran across the beaches. A few got over the sea wall, but the fighting was very hot and most of our men were either killed or taken prisoners. One group of the main body got into Dieppe and captured the Casino, but the tanks could not pass the road blocks and all our attacks were beaten off. No. 4 blew up its bat-



The Canadian Raid on the French Coast

tery and got away with 12 killed and 33 wounded. The Camerons dashed for the airdrome but found the enemy waiting for them; they retired, fighting as they went. One group of the South Saskatchewan landed on the wrong side of a stream and had to cross a bridge. The Germans rained shells on it and many were killed. But Captain Merritt walked calmly into the storm and led party after party across. The Saskatchewan captured a few points, but could not take the radar station.

Getting away was the worst of all. The Germans were now

sweeping the beaches with mortar-fire and many men were killed as they raced for the boats. The navy risked everything to get them off. The destroyers moved in so close that one of them grounded for a moment. The small craft sailed in boldly under the hail of shells. All through the battle Captain (Chaplain) John Foote had been carrying the wounded to shelter and giving first aid. He now carried man after man to the boats. He and Colonel Merritt allowed themselves to be taken prisoners to remain with the men. They were both given the V.C. for their unselfishness and courage. For Canada, Dieppe was a terrible sacrifice, but it was not all loss. The leaders learned many lessons about how to attack such a place. The 907 men who gave their lives at Dieppe saved thousands on D-Day.

(b) *In Italy*

When the British and Americans had driven the Germans out of Africa and were ready to push them out of Italy, part of the Canadian army in Britain was sent out to help them. They arrived in time to take part in the invasion of Sicily. They got in easily, for the Italians were about to get rid of Mussolini, their dictator, and make peace with the Allies. Then with the famous British 8th Army on their right, and the American 5th Army on their left, the Canadians crossed into Italy and began pushing the Germans up the long leg of the Italian boot.

For two long, hot summers and two cold, wet winters, the Canadians slogged along the Italian roads. They had many hard battles: Ortona, Moro River and others; and they won a reputation for overcoming difficulties. October of 1944 found them struggling through the mud and forcing their way across the swollen Savio River. It was on the Savio that Private Ernest Alvia (Smoky) Smith won his V.C. It is an amazing story.

Smoky's company had managed to cross the Savio and was arranging its defences when it was set upon by three Panther

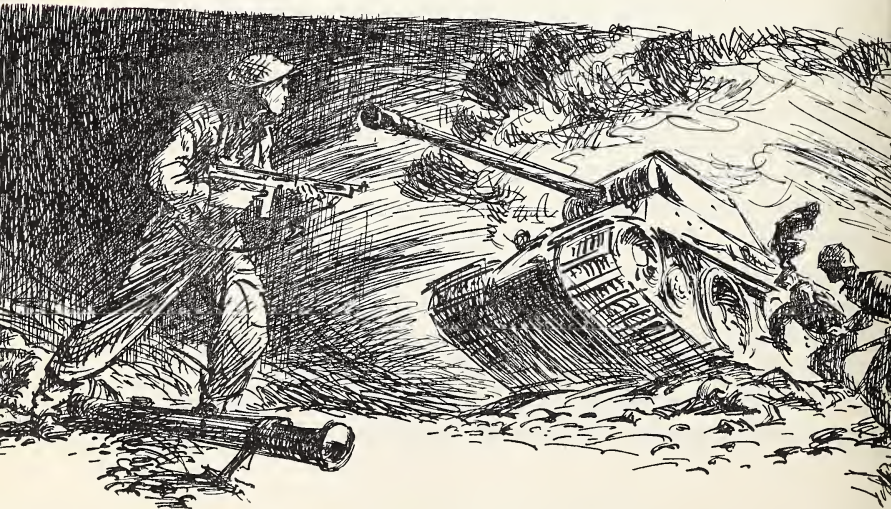


tanks and a platoon of Germans with two guns. Smith coolly let one of the tanks come almost up to him before he fired his Piat gun and put it out of action. Ten Germans jumped off the tank and attacked him. Smoky then moved out into the middle of the road and let them have it with his tommy gun. He shot four and the others fled. Another tank and more soldiers closed in on him, but he stood over a wounded comrade and fought them until they retired. He got the V.C. for that fight, and few great honors have been more boldly won.

## V

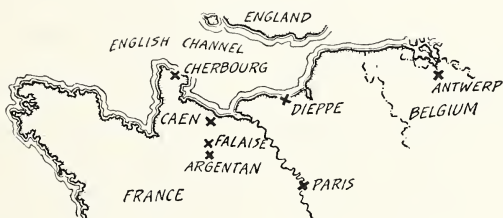
## D-DAY AND AFTER

While they were driving the Germans out of Italy, the Allies were also preparing for their big attack on western Europe. June 6, 1944 was D-Day, the day on which the Allies at last landed in France. They landed on beaches not far from Dieppe and they had not forgotten the lessons they had learned there.



Smoky Smith Wins the V.C.

For months before the big day the R.A.F. and R.C.A.F. bombed Germany at night and the U.S.A.A.F. bombed her by day. They bombed her factories and transport; destroyed hundreds of her planes; smashed airfields, railways, and bridges leading towards the D-Day beaches. The night before D-Day, the R.A.F. pounded the coastal batteries near the beaches, and in the morning the U.S.A.A.F. took over and for 30 minutes 1,000 planes poured bombs on the beach defences that had stopped our men at Dieppe. Then the three navies began. Five battle ships and 100 other warships fired their huge guns at the beaches. As



#### The Battle of Normandy

the boats carrying the troops drew near the land, the army artillery let loose; and just before the men leaped upon the shore the navies' rocket craft let go a last terrific storm of steel.

The Germans seemed stunned by the bombardment and most of the companies got ashore without great loss. The Canadians went in at the center of the British line and by night were almost ten miles inland. They reached their objective, the Caen road, the next morning. D-Day cost Canada 335 lives as compared with 907 at Dieppe. This shows how greatly the men of Dieppe helped D-Day.

The Germans now brought up their armored divisions and the Battle of Normandy began. The Americans took Cher-

bourg which gave the Allies a port through which to bring in supplies. Meantime the British and Canadians fought fiercely at Caen to pin the German army down there, while the Americans swept around behind it to catch it in a pocket between them. The Canadians were ordered to take Falaise which they did after a very hard fight. There was now only a 12-mile gap between the Canadians at Falaise and the Americans at Argentan. As the Allies slowly closed the gap, the Germans fought furiously to get out of the pocket. The roads were packed solid with their men and guns and our air Force and big guns poured bombs and shells on them day and night. The Germans lost 400,000 men besides thousands of guns and transport in the Falaise Pocket. It was a very great victory.

The Americans were already driving the Germans out of Paris and now the British and Canadians also swung into the pursuit. The Allies needed ports through which to bring in supplies and the Canadians were assigned to capture the Channel ports. They took several; at others they left guards to shut the Germans up inside, and marched on. Everywhere they met the same welcome: crowds laughing, crying, cheering, throwing flowers, climbing over the jeeps, mad with joy to be free again.

The pursuit had been a kind of holiday, but there was grim fighting ahead. The British had now taken Antwerp, a great port on the Scheldt; but the Germans still held the banks of the river lower down, and the Canadians were assigned to clear them off it. It was Fall and parts of the land were flooded which made it a cold, wet, and very muddy job. The Germans had dug in on a peninsula with a narrow neck and the Canadians had to attack over this flat narrow neck. In November, Le Regiment de Maisonneuve (Quebec) got across the neck and the Canadians were ready to attack the Germans.

Field Marshal Montgomery now sent British and American troops to help the Canadians and by the end of the month the river was clear of Germans and Antwerp open to Allied ships. The first one in was the Canadian-built "Fort Cataraqui". General Eisenhower said that the Battle of the Scheldt "was the climax of the First Canadian Army's work".

## VI

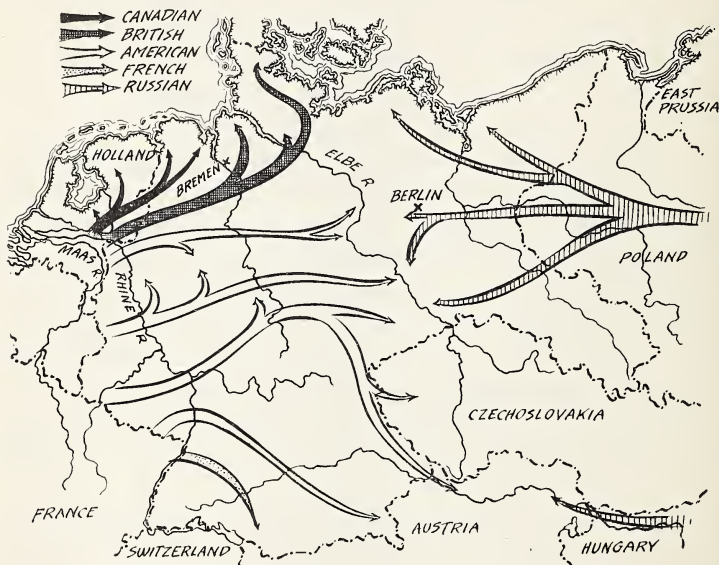
### HOW IT ENDED

#### (a) *The Battle of Germany*

The three armies now began to drive the Germans back across the Rhine into their own country. They drove in with the Americans on the right, the British in the middle, and the Canadians on the left. The Canadians and British under General Crerar cleared the space between the Maas and the Rhine Rivers of Germans. They said it was the hardest battle they had fought in the whole war. By some mistake the Remagen bridge across the Rhine was not blown up. The Americans saw it, raced across it, and roared away towards Berlin. The Germans did not forget to blow up the other bridges; the British and Canadians had to fight their way across.

Once over, the British headed for Bremen, while the Canadians fanned out to drive the Germans out of North Holland and round them up in Northern Germany. In most places they fought savagely and our men had hard fighting and heavy casualties. There was bitter fighting, too, in West Holland. The Canadians were sent there to open a supply route to the Hollanders who were starving. They forced the Germans to make a truce and the bombers dropped food to the famishing Dutch. By May 1, the food trucks were rolling in and on May 5 the Germans in Holland surrendered.

By this time the Russians had met the Americans and British on the River Elbe. Germany was cut in two, but in the north enemy "pockets" still fought savagely against the Canadians. On April 30, Hitler shot himself. On May 2, the Germans in Italy surrendered to Field Marshal Alexander. On May 4, the Canadians reached the Baltic, where they were still fighting



The Battle of Germany

"pockets" when Field Marshal Montgomery phoned General Crerar that the Germans were ready to give in. On May 5, 1945, the surrender was signed. The war in Europe was over and May 8 was set as V-E Day.

The Canadians in Germany heard it first from the B.B.C.; those in Canada from the C.B.C. Within a few minutes the



news rang round the earth and the whole world drew a great sigh of relief. Hitler, the dictator, was dead. The proud and cruel Nazis who had imprisoned, tortured, and killed millions of people were crushed. Germany, which had enslaved 15 nations, was conquered. People shouted to their neighbors. They gathered in the streets to cheer and in the churches to thank God. On V-E Day bells rang, whistles blew, and flags flew. Country people hurried to town; crowds jammed the squares to hear the speeches; people sang and danced in the streets. Freedom had been won, we thought. Since then we have learned that freedom must be fought for every day.

The war was not really over for Japan was still fighting. She did not continue long. On August 6, 1945, United States bombers dropped an atom bomb on Hiroshima, Japan; on August 8, one was dropped on Nagasaki. The two bombs destroyed much of the two cities and killed 70,000, and wounded 130,000 people. The terrible new weapon shocked and frightened the whole world. On August 10, Japan asked for peace.

### (b) *A Tragedy and a Comedy*

Canada had only two small parts in the Pacific war. The first was at Hong Kong, a great port which had been British for many years. Britain asked Canada to send a force to strengthen her garrison there and Canada sent two battalions of Winnipeg Grenadiers and Royal Rifles. They arrived just before the Japanese bombed Pearl Harbor, and were hardly settled before Hong Kong was attacked. The Canadians with the rest of the garrison fought valiantly, but were overcome. Many were killed and the rest imprisoned. The Japanese treated their prisoners so cruelly that many of them died.

Canada's other part in the Pacific war was assisting the Americans in the famous capture of Kiska. Soon after she

declared war, Japan seized the Aleutian Islands of Attu and Kiska. The Americans drove them out of Attu but it was a fierce fight, so they made great preparations for recapturing Kiska. Forty-eight hundred Canadians were sent to help them. After weeks of hard training a force of 34,000 approached Kiska. All was silent; they saw no one. They landed cautiously, but still saw no one. Expecting a trap, they searched the whole island. There was no one on it. On a foggy morning two weeks before the Japanese had sailed away. Even war has its little jokes.

(c) *The Secret Service Men*

Hundreds of brave stories are told of the Canadian Navy, the Army, the Air Force, the Corps of Signals, the Service Corps, the Pay Corps, the Forestry Corps, and the Parachute Battalions. Some of the bravest are about the Special Force, the Canadians who worked with the underground. It was extremely dangerous work for such men are killed if caught, often after torture to make them "talk". Canadians were in demand for this service for they speak so many different languages. French Canadians took first place, of course, for they are at home in both French and English; but there were also Yugoslav, Hungarian, Bulgarian, Rumanian, Japanese and Chinese Canadians working in the underground.

A typical story is that of Major G. D. A. Bieler of Le Regiment de Maison-neuve, who was parachuted into France in 1942. He was badly hurt by his drop but managed to get to the Belgian border where he worked for months sabotaging the German railways. At last he was caught by the Gestapo. He was tortured, but not a word could they get out of him. He was then sent to a concentration camp where



Canadians at Kiska

he was kept in a very small cell and given only one slice of bread, one bowl of soup and two cups of substitute coffee each day. In the end he was shot, still without betraying anything.

## VII

### WELCOME HOME

After V-E Day the first thought of every Canadian in Europe was "We're going home"; and the first thought of Canada was, "They're coming home". The government had its plans ready, but there were 282,000 to bring and ships were scarce; it was bound to take months to get them all back. Still the government did very well. Twenty-five thousand volunteered to stay as an occupation force in Germany. For the rest, in general those who had been away longest were brought home first. By October almost half the number had arrived; by February nearly all were home. The late comers came in their units, famous regiments marching home together with the battle honors of two wars thick upon them. More than that: within the next few months, the Government brought out also almost 60,000 wives and children, the brides of our men who had married abroad. They made 60,000 new young Canadians to enrich our country.

The government's plans for providing for the veterans were also good. Many said they were the most generous made by any country. There were huge new hospitals and the best of care for the sick and wounded; university training for those who wanted it; pensions for the disabled; loans for those who wished to farm or set up in business for themselves.

#### (a) *The Homefolks*

The homefolks were proud of their fighters. Every day Matthew Halton, Marcel Ouimet, Bill Herbert, Paul Barette, Paul Dupois, A. E. Powley and many other C.B.C. broadcasters

had told them what their men were doing on the ships, in the planes, on the ground, under the bombs and shells, in the heat and cold, in the rain and mud. They knew better than home-folks had ever known before what their soldiers had been through, what they had done. They were indeed proud of them.

The fighters were proud of their homefolks for they, too, had worked hard. With a working population of under 5,000,000, Canadians made Canada, for two years, the second greatest exporting nation in the world. The government had everyone register his name, age, and the work for which he was trained. They then set up a National Service Board to direct each to the work most needed and which he could do best. To free men for war, 45,000 women joined the forces and over 1,000,000 worked in factories and other industries. By co-operating, by hard work, and by greatly increasing the output of hydro-electric power, Canadians produced \$2,250,000,000 worth of food, and \$3,250,000,000 worth of manufactured goods for the Allies.

Early in the war, the government set up a Wartime Prices and Trade Board. They remembered that in the First World War, the cost of living in Canada had risen 68%; and they wanted to prevent that happening again. They put price ceilings on some goods, controls on some, and rationed some. Donald Gordon, a wise and firm man, was made head of the Board. He knew that women do 85% of all buying in Canada and he appealed to them to stick to their rations and to see that the store keepers kept to the fixed prices. The women co-operated. With their help, Gordon made price control work better in Canada than it did in any other country. The cost of living rose only 3% after Gordon and the women went into action. Canadians saved so much in this way, and earned so much by working hard, that they were able to pay for the war by paying taxes and loaning money to the government; and also to give

\$1,250,000,000 to Britain; \$75,000,000, to the other allies; and 15,000 bushels of wheat each month to Greece.

All these were day-time jobs. In the evenings and in their spare time, the homefolks collected millions of dollars for the Red Cross, Salvation Army, Y.M.C.A., Y.W.C.A., and other charities. They welcomed, fed, and entertained the men and women of the forces and war factories. The women sewed and knitted millions of garments and packed millions of food parcels for overseas; the children collected salvage and magazines; and all those who could gave their blood for the transfusions which saved the lives of so many wounded men.

At the same time, Canadians had not forgotten the lesson they had learned in the Great Depression; that the community is responsible for its people and must take care of them when they cannot take care of themselves. There were pensions now for the blind as well as for the aged; and unemployment insurance for workers. In 1944, the government brought in Family Allowances to give a fair start to every child; and set up the Department of National Health and Welfare to manage these new public services. The chief things lacking were houses, teachers, nurses, and welfare workers for the new department.

Canada was also making good progress in the study, appreciation, and practice of the arts. The teaching of music and art in the modern way in our schools was showing good results. More students were writing conservatory examinations in music and a goodly number were making names for themselves in singing, playing and composing. Our large cities had symphony orchestras; towns and country had Musical Festivals. Winnipeg, Vancouver, and Toronto had ballets. Young artists were bringing new ideas and fresh ways of painting into Canadian Art. Schools everywhere were putting on plays; cities had Little Theatre groups. Quebec, the Maritimes and other parts



of Canada were famous for their handicrafts. The Banff School of Fine Arts was growing. Americans freely admitted that the best of the C.B.C.'s radio dramas were better than theirs. The National Film Board was making documentary films and showing them in Canada and abroad. Several of these were named as among the best of their kind.

Each year more Canadians were writing poems, novels and plays and composing music. Today Canada has a choir of young poets writing with fresh, modern rhythms, expressing her feelings and her thoughts. You may remember: *The Saws are Shrieking* by W. W. E. Ross; *The Lonely Land* by A. J. M. Smith; *Woodyards in the Rain* by Anne Marriott;<sup>2</sup> *Ville-Marie* by Roger Brien; *Le livre d'une mère* by Eva O. Doyle.

In prose more Canadians are writing books of better quality. In French, *The Tin Flute* by Gabrielle Roy, and *The Town Below* by Roger Lemelin are well known novels. Hugh MacLennan, Thomas Raddall, Gwethalyn Graham have written outstanding novels in English. S. A. White's *Flaming Fur Lands*, a story about the modern fur trade; Hugh Garner's *Storm Below*, about life in a corvette; Thomas B. Costain's *High Towers*, about the Le Moyne Brothers; Jack Hambleton's *Forest Rangers*, about the pilot rangers; and Mabel Dunham's *Kristli's Trees*, are all of interest to young readers. In play writing, Quebec's Gratien Gelinas (Fridolin), Pierre Dagerrais, and Robertson Davies of Ontario are recognized abroad; while Elsie Park Gowan, Gwen Pharis Ringwood, George Palmer, Alexander Ramsey are well known at home.

In radio, Claude-Henri Grignon's seven o'clock story is listened to by every French-speaking person within range; and Lister Sinclair and Len Peterson are widely regarded as the

<sup>2</sup> See *Canadian Verse for Boys and Girls* by Garvin; *Anthology of Canadian Verse* by Ralph Gustafson (Penguin Series); and *Les Soirs Rouges* by Clement Marchand.

most original and creative thinkers in the world of English-speaking radio.

In music beside the well known composers, Healey Willan, Sir Ernest MacMillan and Lucio Agostini, each province has such promising young composers as: Dr. Alfred Whitehead, Claude Champagne, Robert Fleming and Jean Adams.

(b) *The Homeland*

Our returning warriors found Canada as big, as beautiful, and more exciting than ever. Many amazing things had happened since the men went away. As they crossed the country to their homes they saw that Canada was more prosperous than ever before. All the wheels were turning; everyone was busy. Since 1939, Canada's farmers had more than doubled their incomes. Her forest products and furs had doubled in value; her fisheries and manufactures had tripled. Canada was now the first in world production of nickel, asbestos, platinum, radium; second in gold, aluminum, mercury; third in copper, zinc, lead, silver, arsenic. The production of aluminum was up six times since before the war. The rich new iron mine at Steep Rock was coming into production; the Yellowknife gold camp was growing; and prospectors were searching the Northland for more uranium, the metal required for making atom bombs, and no one knows what other wonders.

Trains, cars, trucks were all old for few could buy new ones during the war. The roads, too, needed repair, but there was much more traffic than in 1939. The air-age had begun and Canada had an important place in it; she stood between Europe and Asia, reaching out to both, at one of the "air-cross-roads of the world". Canada had now three very large airports; Dorval near Montreal, Goose Bay in Labrador, Gander in Newfoundland for Atlantic service, and well over 300 smaller ones scattered across the country. Trans-Canada Airlines,

the "third Trans-Canada", started just before the war, were beginning to use large North Star planes for their daily flights across the Atlantic and their several flights a day across Canada.



#### Canada on the Air Crossroads of the World

The "bush pilots" (now Canadian Pacific Airlines) were flying big twin-engined planes into all parts of the busy Northland. In 1949, they began making regular Trans-Pacific flights.

When the motor became the chief means of transportation, oil and gas became important kinds of fuel. Canada was using over 77 million barrels of oil a year. She produced over seven million barrels herself and imported the rest; mostly from the United States. The Americans used so much themselves that it seemed probable they would soon have none left to sell to Canada. Long before the war was over, oil men were searching for new oil fields in Canada and suddenly they found one at Leduc, near Edmonton, Alberta.

A small crowd watched the first well "blow in" its tall column of black oil, but the news spread quickly and an oil rush began. Prospectors, drillers, oil companies, streamed in. Atlantic No. 4 at Leduc broke loose and flooded 40 acres of land with oil; it took months to bring it under control. The rush to buy oil lands and oil stocks doubled. Test wells were drilled in many districts; new fields were discovered, Woodbend, Redwater and others. The old Lloydminster and Turner Valley fields were expanded. Production was soon so great that pipe lines were planned to carry oil to Regina, Winnipeg, and the head of Lake Superior. Several new natural gas fields were also discovered and pipe lines to carry the gas to Vancouver, Seattle, and the northern States were planned.

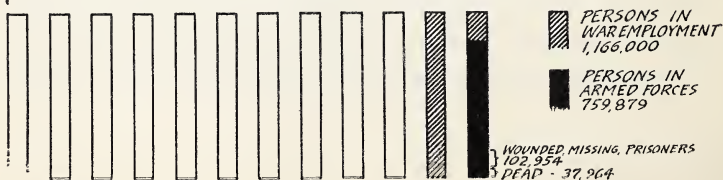
Then "out of the blue" came the discovery of a large and very rich iron deposit on the Quebec-Labrador border. Bush Pilot John Hone had been a prospector. When he became Squadron-Leader John Hone, he patrolled the Quebec border and, flying low, saw signs that excited him. When he returned from the war he told his story to a Toronto Company which hurried him off with a party of geologists to see what they could find. They found iron at once, 300,000,000 tons of it, very rich ore and almost on top of the ground. The "iron rush" is filling the fishing villages with strangers; a railway

to bring out the ore is being surveyed. Iron is needed to make steel. The Americans, whose iron mines south of Lake Superior are beginning to play out, hope to bring the Quebec-Labrador iron to their smelters; but Canada hopes to use hydro-electric power to turn her iron into steel on the spot. The lonely north shore of the lower St. Lawrence may yet be a great manufacturing center.

. . . . .

Canada was a wonderful country to come home to, and those years were a wonderful time to come home in. Radium! Uranium! Oil! Iron and Steel! and no one yet knows what other riches the ancient volcanoes may have hidden in the Canadian Shield, Canada's Christmas stocking. No one knows what wonders Canadians may yet work with them, now that they are learning to practise conservation in using their resources. Yet our soldiers were disappointed in one thing. While the men and women of the forces were far away from Canada they saw her as other nations see her: a fortunate people who live in a large country stuffed with riches and sunshine and freedom. Abroad, the troops forgot that they were French Canadians, or English Canadians, or Ukrainians, or Nova Scotians or Ontarians. They thought of themselves as just Canadians and they were proud of the name, Canada, that they wore upon their shoulders. It was disappointing, they said, on coming home to find people still thinking of themselves as Albertans or Prince Edward Islanders. This shows that older Canadians at least have something yet to learn about being a nation.

POPULATION OF CANADA - FEWER THAN 12,000,000







## Chapter Twenty-two

### CANADA AND THE NEIGHBORS

1763—1950

#### I

##### THE BIG LEAGUE

**B**RITAIN, Canada, and the United States have been neighbors for over 300 years. For the first 150, Canada and the English Colonies were like small boys who fight whenever they meet. They are grown-up now and good neighbors who never fight; but sometimes they would like to—just a little—because they are so different. Being so different, Canada so serious and steady, the United States so lively and bold, makes them very useful friends for one another, and for proud old Mother Britain.

After Britain captured Canada she owned all North America east of the Mississippi, but when the Americans won their independence she had to divide it with them. They had tried to take Canada, and now tried to get Britain to give her to them. Britain nearly did trade her for one of the Sugar Islands, but in the end she kept her. They ran the boundary up the St. Croix River, along the 45th parallel, and up the middle of the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes, leaving the tricky bits between to be settled later.

The three countries were then in their modern positions. They were like three teams in a league. Britain and the United States were even then big-league teams. The British Provinces were hardly a team at all, just a group of scrub players practising on a vacant lot. But the lot was squarely between the other two; the provinces had to play. Of course they were always beaten. Every time the big fellows fell upon them, they had just to pick themselves up, sore and angry but determined, and go in again. It has been hard training, but 150 years of it has taught Canada a good deal about how to play as a junior team in a big league.

At first the three countries just stamped round and roared at one another. The Loyalists streaming into the British Provinces complained loudly of the cruel way in which the Americans had treated them. The United States thundered at Britain because she did not give them the western fur posts as soon as she had promised. The British denounced the Americans because they did not pay for the Loyalist property they had seized. Fortunately they were all too busy straightening out the muddles in their governments to do anything but roar.

Perhaps the thing most important for the future was that the Loyalists told the stories of their sufferings to their children and grandchildren. Their tales of burned homes, and tarred-and-feathered grandfathers together with Quebec's fixed resolve to remain French Canadian, were the seeds from which grew Canada's stubborn determination *not* to become a part of the United States.

(a) *The Scrub Team Wins a Game*

1783—1815

After they had settled their governments a little, Britain went on building up her navy (using Newfoundland as a school for her sailors); and the United States and Canada went on

growing. They both grew fast. Thousands of people who wanted free farms or a freer life poured in from Europe. The Americans bought Louisiana and took Florida and new states sprang up between the Appalachians and the Mississippi. In the British Provinces settlers were coming in from both Britain and the United States. The Nor' Westers were swinging into the far North West and British Columbia. Montreal and the St. Lawrence were still leading New York and the Hudson in the competition for the Great Lakes trade. And you remember how trade boomed in all the provinces after Britain began her war with Napoleon.

Britain and the United States had agreed in Jay's Treaty (1794) that they would be "good neighbors", that they would settle their disputes by arbitration;<sup>1</sup> and that people and goods should pass freely across the Canadian-American boundary. Like children, as soon as they had promised to be good, they began fighting again. Napoleon's war ruined American trade; but Americans say that it was really the arrogance of the British officers who searched their ships that enraged them and drove them to fight Britain in the war of 1812-14.

When that war was over, Britain and the United States realized that they were both strong nations and that they had better "play ball". They did so. The United States warned all European nations that she would not allow them to interfere with any American country. This was called the Monroe Doctrine, or plan. As the Americans had not a strong fleet, the British Navy guarded America for them. Safe behind that guard, the South American countries threw off their European mother countries and became republics.

Neither of the big fellows paid much attention to the British Provinces who were still only a scrub team, although

<sup>1</sup> Arbitration means settling a dispute by the decision of a person or committee appointed to decide it.

they had fought splendidly in the war of 1812. That war made them more determined than ever not to join the United States. The provinces learned three important things from it: that whenever Britain and the United States fought, Canada would be the battlefield; that because of this Canada's plan must be to keep them from fighting with one another; that even when a big fellow attacks you, it pays to fight back.

For the provinces really did quite well when the disputes were settled after the war: Nova Scotia got the right to keep the Americans out of her inshore fisheries. Newfoundland was allowed to have settlers and be a colony, though she got also that thorn in the flesh, her "American shore". It was agreed by both sides that they would never again keep warships on the Great Lakes; and the Canadian West got a boundary: the 49th parallel from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains. This divided the Great Central Plain between the United States and Britain and gave British North America a country as large as, though with less good land than, the United States. Their new size, their pride in their success in the war, drew the provinces together and made them begin to feel like a team.

(b) *A Dangerous Situation*

1815—1871

And now the pioneers came streaming in, floods of them. In the United States they swept across the Mississippi and began their struggle with the tough prairie sod and dry prairie climate. In Canada they took up all the land to the edge of the Shield, and then passed on into the American West. There was no trouble at the boundary in those days; people went wherever they liked, wherever the ship landed them. Many didn't care and some didn't know which country they were in. All they wanted was free land and life in a country where poor men had votes, that is a say in how they were governed.

Britain and her colonies had long had governments elected by the people; but they were not really democratic, for they were elected only by people who had property. Poor people had no votes. In Britain, thinkers had been working to win votes for the poorer people for over 100 years. After the Revolution, the common people of the United States made a strong fight for votes in the new governments they set up in the States. They won this right first; then the British Provinces won it and at last, in 1867, Britain granted it to her people. The Americans were still struggling with their officials and rich men, while the provinces were fighting against the Family Compacts for responsible government. Baldwin and his ideas, Durham, Howe, and Lafontaine were much admired in the United States.

Yet this friendliness brought about a dangerous situation. When Papineau, Mackenzie and their followers fled to the States after the Rebellions, they were welcomed as heroes. Irish Americans and others who hated Britain formed "Hunter's Lodges" and made raids across the border to free the provinces from Britain. For a time the talk on both sides sounded quite warlike; but the two big teams were already each other's best customers; they could not afford to fight. Then Baldwin's clever solution of the colonial problem, and the skilful way in which the Canadians handled their newly invented system of government raised them, both in their own eyes, and in the opinions of Britain and the United States.

It was "all together for democracy", that is votes for all, rich and poor, in those days, and the three countries won a great victory for freedom. But the British Provinces soon learned that even a good neighbor may walk off with the lawn mower and forget to return it. When Lord Ashburton and Daniel Webster were appointed to settle the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick, the line they agreed upon ran so far north that



it almost cut Quebec off from Gaspé, and completely cut off Canada's short route to the Maritimes. This made the Canadians very angry; they said Britain had "betrayed" them. Four years later their anger flared again when she gave up the land north of the Columbia to American shouts of "Fifty-four Forty or Fight".

The provinces felt that the Americans were taking advantage of them, and that Britain was letting them do so. This made them angry. But even then wise Canadians knew that had Britain not been behind her, Canada would have lost much more; and that, after all, losing a little territory is a small thing compared to having one's country become a battlefield. For years the provinces walked softly wondering where the next blow would fall. As you remember their fear of their big neighbor helped to drive them into Confederation. Yet at the same time the two countries signed the Reciprocity Treaty and trade and travel between them rolled up like a snowball.

### (c) *Canada Plays As a Junior Team*

The Civil War between the Northern and Southern States made more trouble. The British and Canadian people sided with the North; but Britain had allowed Southern ships to escape from her harbors, and Halifax had harbored these raiders. The North won the war and she came out of it strong, arrogant, really "tough". She demanded huge damages for the raiders from Britain; refused to renew the Reciprocity Treaty, yet boldly fished in Nova Scotia's waters; claimed the island of San Juan in the Gulf of Georgia; and allowed her Fenians to attack Canada; indeed she threatened to annex the whole country.

But the determination of our people not to join the United States had grown steadily. The United States expected the union, many Britons hoped for it; but the Canadian leaders planned doggedly for independence. In reply to American threats,

they pushed through Confederation; brought the other provinces into it; built one railway to the Atlantic; and prepared to drive another across prairies and mountains to the Pacific. Boldly they seized the half continent behind their boundary. The question was whether the neighbors would let them keep it.

At last it was arranged that an International High Commission should meet at Washington to settle all disputes, and Britain invited Sir John A. Macdonald to be one of her delegates. Canadians thought that it was time they were allowed to speak for themselves at these conferences, but Sir John was worried. He felt sure that the Americans would demand something belonging to Canada; that Britain would give it to her; and that this would make Canadians angry again.

However, off he went to Washington, where the Americans entertained the members of the Commission most generously. But when it came to bargaining they were "tough". They made Britain promise to pay a very large sum for the damage done by the raiders. It was agreed that the ownership of San Juan Island should be arbitrated by the German Emperor. (He gave it to the Americans.) They refused even to discuss Canada's claim for damage done by the Fenians because the British had not put that topic on the agenda.<sup>2</sup> They demanded the right to use Nova Scotia's fisheries, and refused to give Canada a Reciprocity Treaty in return. Sir John fought a great fight to save the fisheries. He fought until the British Government ordered him to give in. In return, the Treaty of Washington said that the United States would pay a sum of money, to be

<sup>2</sup> Britain offered to pay for the damage the Fenians had done. Sir John proudly refused the gift, but did accept a loan.



Sir John A. Macdonald

settled by arbitrators, for the use of the fisheries for twelve years. It also said that this part of the treaty must be passed by the Canadian parliament.

The Canadians were furious about the Fenian claims being passed over, but Sir John reminded them that he had given in to keep peace between Britain and the United States, and that even giving up their rights was better than having a war in which Canada would be the battlefield of two big armies. If Canada had lost some rights she had gained others; the right to have a member on International Commissions and the right to have our parliament pass treaties. Also the foreign arbitrator voted with the Canadian against the American arbitrator, and Canada got \$5,500,000 for the fisheries. The United States was so angry that for years she refused to pay it; but in the end she paid.

(d) *The Pirate Don Durk of Dowdee*

These neighborly bickerings were soon forgotten in new excitements. Rich gold discoveries in South Africa and the Yukon brought prosperity back to the world, and the Big League played ball more agreeably than ever before. Free trade Britain was the market to which all countries brought their goods. In return she invested her money in countries all over the world. The United States now took over part of Britain's manufacturing business; and Canada began to take the United States' place in providing raw materials. The two younger countries had high tariff walls, but rivers of goods flowed over them, and all went merry as a marriage bell. That funny, old-fashioned, but comfortable world was having a last mad "fling" before it was hustled off the stage in 1914.

Britain, old, rich, and glorious, built up her gold and diamond empire in Africa and the east. The United States, young, rich, and swashbuckling, built hers in America and the Pacific. She still had no navy to speak of but she waved the

Monroe Doctrine over Central and South America; took the control of Cuba from Spain; and seized Hawaii, the Philippines, and other Pacific islands. President "Teddy" Roosevelt, like the Pirate Don Durk of Dowdee, "went through the world with a wonderful swash" and what he called a "Big Stick". With this he knocked down all who opposed him. He ordered Britain to correct the boundary between British Guiana and Venezuela. Britain swallowed her pride and did so. She had arranged to join the United States in building the Panama Canal. Without a "by your leave" Roosevelt seized the land, and the Americans did a wonderful job of building the canal by themselves. Then it was Canada's turn. Roosevelt ordered the Canadian-Alaska boundary to be drawn. Three Americans, two Canadians and an Englishman were to arbitrate it. Roosevelt cheerfully appointed three prejudiced arbitrators, and told the British that if the line wasn't drawn to suit him, he would draw it himself, meaning that he would go to war. The Englishman voted with the Americans and the boundary was drawn to suit Roosevelt; though the Canadian arbitrators refused to sign the treaty.

In all these settlements Canada had suffered to keep the peace between Britain and the United States. She had not suffered in vain. From this time on the two big teams began slowly to build up a friendship. This friendship has proved to be of the greatest importance. It has made possible the United Nations, and upon it rests the hope of the free world today.

#### (e) *Partners*

For Canada the Alaska Boundary Treaty was the last straw. She decided that she had been put upon long enough. With two good shoves she pushed both neighbors back to their own playing fields. In 1911 she refused the American offer of a Reciprocity Treaty. In 1912 she bargained with Britain that if Canada paid for three battleships to help defend the Empire,

she should be given a seat on the Imperial Defense Committee. By doing this Canada stood up before the world and claimed "Dominion Status"; Dominion Status means that when a colony is grown up and paying her own way it becomes an independent nation. Canada now claimed that she was independent and that her only connection with Britain was that she had the same king. Canada invented Dominion Status; she had been working up to it ever since responsible government days. It had grown naturally out of Baldwin's ideas; Sir John A. Macdonald had approved of it; Sir Wilfrid Laurier and Sir Robert Borden had worked for it; Mackenzie King finally won it. Dominion Status has proved to be a very useful invention. It has brought about many changes in the world as you shall hear. As Canada had been working out the idea for years, Britain and the United States were used to it and good sports about it. Without any fuss they accepted Canada as a junior partner.

As partners the three neighbors fought the First World War. It lasted four years. Britain, France, Canada and those countries who fought all through it came out very short of men and money. The United States had not gone in until the war was more than half over, so she was still rich. Britain had spent so much money on the war and lent so much to countries who could not pay her back that she could no longer afford to "police the world" as she had been doing. The Allies hoped that the League of Nations would now do it.

(f) *Quitters*

When the Allies met in Paris and made the Peace Treaty, they also organized the League of Nations to keep the peace they had made. Fifty-six nations joined the League. President Wilson came from Washington with his "Fourteen Points" and the nations wrote out their covenant, or agreement.



The key point in it (Article X) said that if any member nation was attacked, the others would send ships and soldiers to help her drive off the attacker. Canada had just won her independence and the right to decide for herself when she should join in a war, and she did not want to promise that she would send help anytime, anywhere; so she spoke against Article X, but it passed. The covenant was agreed to; and the League of Nations set itself up in Geneva and began its work.

The League lived on until World War II. Its officials in the International Labor, International Health and other organizations did much useful work in the world. But the League itself did not get very far. The trouble was that while the nations had passed Article X, none of them was really willing to carry it out. They were all "quitters" in their hearts and they soon became "quitters" in their deeds.

The United States was the first to quit. Indeed she never joined the League. The American people had at first been in favor of it. But when President Wilson returned from Paris with the Peace Treaty and the Covenant of the League, his bitter enemy, Senator Henry Cabot Lodge kept Congress from passing them at that session. He then stumped the country against the League and he won; the next Congress voted against joining it. Canada also was a "quitter". She remained a member of the League and in several ways did useful work in it. But her rule was "make no commitments", that is do not promise to help anyone. Other countries followed the same rule; they all "quit". The League made peace between several pairs of small nations who quarreled; but when Japan attacked China, when Italy attacked Abyssinia, the League did not help the attacked countries. Britain, Canada, France, nobody helped them.

Meantime Britain had been trying to keep her system of free trade, trying to get trade moving through the world again. But the United States and Canada put up high tariff walls and other countries did the same. Even Britain was forced to set up a tariff. World trade was almost stopped and this brought on the Great Depression. People everywhere were hungry, bitter, frightened. The dictators, Hitler and Mussolini were riding high, building up great armies to conquer the world. Common people everywhere watched them, fascinated, doing nothing much to stop them. It seemed as if they could not believe that anyone would really start another war. So, dumbly, helplessly, like a bird fascinated by a snake, the democratic nations, the "quitters" slid straight into World War II.

Again the three teams went in as partners. They knew now, and the world knows, that they will probably always be partners. For the thing that must never be forgotten in their story is *not* their tempers, quarrels and fights; these hardly matter at all. The thing to remember is that the people of these three nations are the same people. For 200 years, whether their governments were "playing ball" or quarreling, the three peoples have gone quietly on, travelling, visiting back and forth, marrying one another, moving from one country to the other. There are millions of Britons in the United States and Canada; millions of Canadians in the United States; millions of Americans in Canada. Except for a few of the French Canadians, they all speak the same language, read the same books, belong to the same churches, go to the same schools, believe in the same responsible government. They couldn't untangle themselves if they tried. They know that now and, in spite of family squabbles, they face the world together.



## II

### THE BRITISH COMMONWEALTH OF NATIONS

#### (a) *The Old Commonwealth*

Canada belongs also to another "club": the British Commonwealth of Nations. It used to be called the British Empire, for in the beginning Britain set up colonies for profit. She took possession of lands in different parts of the world and either sent settlers to them, or took control of the native people. Her ships carried their raw materials to Britain where they were manufactured and sold back to the colonies and to other nations. Like other mother countries of those days, Britain kept the trade of her colonies for herself. This was one of the things that brought on the American Revolution. The Americans wanted to trade with all countries; they fought with Britain and separated from her so that they could do so. Canada, on the contrary, won her independence by discussion and argument. One by one she threshed out her ideas for responsible government, Confederation, Dominion Status. It was a slow method, but it worked.

At first Britain opposed it. But in 1846 she became a free trade country. All nations now brought her their raw materials and bought her manufactured goods. She did not need her colonies, yet she had to pay for their governments and defence. She was glad when Canada became self-governing; and when she saw how smoothly Canada's new government worked, she encouraged the other large colonies to follow her example.

New Zealand was the first to do this. In 1770, Britain sent Captain Cook to look for Australia. Sailors had seen land in that part of the ocean, but no one knew what it was. Sailing round Cape Horn, Cook came first upon New Zealand. He circumnavigated the two islands and found them fertile and beautiful. The natives, called Maoris (mow rees), were tall, brown people, handsome and intelligent, but very fierce. Because

of this, Britain at first refused to allow settlers to go to the islands; settlement did not begin there till 1831.

New Zealand tried several kinds of government before she hit upon the right one. They started her off with the old fashioned Governor and Council with an elected Assembly. But the settlers were so few and scattered that they gave that up. Next they tried Confederation, with a Provincial Government in each island and a central one over all. This was top heavy for so small a colony, so they united under a single, central, responsible government. New Zealand is now famous all over the world as a model of socialist government.

When Captain Cook left New Zealand, he came next to Australia and explored her east coast. Sailing along the Great Barrier reef, the ship struck and began to sink. Suddenly the water stopped coming in and the men found that a large piece of coral had been sucked into the hole and filled it. This saved them; they got the ship ashore and repaired it.

Australia is a very interesting place. It is the largest island and smallest continent in the world. It lies just south of the equator, and so has no winter as we know it. Its plants and animals are different from those in other continents; they seem to belong to an earlier age in the life of the earth.

Britain at first used Australia as a colony for criminals; but when the pioneers began to pour out of Britain many of them settled in this beautiful warm land. New South Wales was the first and largest colony, but five others were planted along the shores. After gold was discovered in 1851, the population and wealth increased rapidly. At first all the colonies had Governor - Council - elected Assembly governments, but after Canada won responsible government, Australians also demanded, and got it. Confederation was suggested, but the colonies were rather jealous of each other and did not unite until 1901. Like

Canada, they confederated; that is each state has a government and there is a central one over all at the capital, Canberra.

South Africa did not become a Dominion until 1910. She has had a long and exciting story. She was discovered by the Portuguese, settled by the Dutch, and taken over by Britain during the war with Napoleon. When Britain took Cape Colony, the Dutch farmers, called Boers, kept slaves. As the British would not allow them to do this, they made a "Great Trek" (1836) and settled the Orange Free State and Transvaal. For a time Britain tried to rule them, but when she decided to let her colonies go, she gave them their freedom. Rich diamond and gold mines were discovered in the Boer States and British settlers streamed in. When they asked for votes and a share in the government, the Boers refused. This led to the Boer war to which Canada and the other Dominions sent troops. It was a hard-fought struggle, but Britain won, and soon after gave responsible government to the three colonies and Natal. The Boer Generals, Louis Botha and Jan Christian Smuts, who had fought against Britain, now led the new government under Britain in the Orange Free State. Later the four colonies united as the Union of South Africa.

#### (b) *The New Commonwealth*

By this time Britain was so proud of her fine, grown-up daughter nations that she began holding Imperial Conferences. Each of the Dominions and India sent representatives to London and they discussed things like communications, trade, and the defence of the Empire. Britain suggested that they should set up an Imperial Parliament to make laws about these things for the Empire. But the Dominions would not do this. They were willing to give Britain a preference in trade, and to contribute ships and money to help defend the Empire; but they would not give up their right, each one to decide for herself when and



how she would help and how much she would give. Though they had promised nothing, they all fought magnificently in World War I. During the war, as you remember, the Dominion Prime Ministers became members of the War Cabinet. At the end of it, they all signed the Peace Treaty and joined the League of Nations as independent nations. At later conferences they agreed to be not only independent, but equal nations and so, in the Statute of Westminster (1926), they became the British Commonwealth of Nations.

After World War I Canada became an important trading nation doing business with many countries. She needed business men to live in their countries and oversee her business there, so she sent Trade Commissioners to them and a High Commissioner to Britain. As she did a good deal of political business with the United States, France and Japan, she sent ambassadors to them. During World War II she sent ambassadors to 31 other countries. Before this Britain had done Canada's international business for her. Now that she was a free and independent nation, Canada did it for herself.

Before World War II, the British Commonwealth contained, besides the Dominions, many small colonies and three large possessions: India, Burma, and Malaya. The people of these countries were not British. Long ago British merchants had gone to them and gradually taken over their business and government. Gradually their people had learned the democratic way of doing business and governing a country. They approved of this way and wanted to govern themselves.

After the war, Britain gave India, Burma, and Ceylon their freedom. She withdrew her soldiers, police and government servants from their territories and left them free to govern themselves as they wished. She said that they should be Dominions for a year, and that they should then decide for themselves whether

they would remain in the Commonwealth or not. India divided into two Dominions: India and Pakistan. There were then four of these temporary Dominions. When the year was up, India decided to be a republic within the Commonwealth; Burma chose to be a republic outside the Commonwealth; Pakistan and Ceylon were content to remain Dominions.

The older Dominions have welcomed these new members to our group of nations and hope they will be happy among us. The new Commonwealth is larger, richer, and stronger than the old one. If we co-operate well together, we should make it a powerful group to work for freedom and peace in the world.

### III

#### CANADA AND THE UNITED NATIONS

##### (a) *The Atlantic Charter*

The United Nations Organization is the association that the nations formed after World War II to keep peace in the world. It took the place of the League of Nations.

The United Nations really began with the Atlantic Charter. On August 14, 1941, the news burst upon the world that President Franklin D. Roosevelt and Prime Minister Winston Churchill had met on a battleship in Placentia Harbor, Newfoundland. At this meeting the two great leaders set down the aims for which the democracies were fighting; that is what they hoped to do when the war was over. Their aims were to see that all nations, great and small, should be allowed to choose whatever form of government they wished; travel and trade freely on all seas, and oceans; buy the raw materials they needed to trade on equal terms with all other nations; co-operate with one another to improve their ways of living. When these aims were written down, the two leaders signed them. They were called "The Atlantic Charter".

The Atlantic Charter gave great comfort and hope to the nations of the world, especially to the smaller nations. On January 21, 1942, 26 nations agreed to the aims of the Charter; they pledged themselves to fight against the Nazis until victory was won, so that they could put the Charter into practice.

(b) *The United Nations Organization*

By March, 1945, victory was certain, so the Great Powers: Britain, France, Russia, China, and the United States invited the other nations to a Conference. It met on April 23, in San Francisco, to form an organization of nations to keep peace in the world. Fifty nations sent delegates to the meeting which was saddened by the absence of President Roosevelt who had died shortly before. The whole world mourned for him as one of the greatest men of our time. The Conference began with many fine speeches and lively disputes, but the delegates presently agreed that the association should be called the United Nations Organization and that it should have a General Assembly and a Security Council.

The General Assembly meets every year in September. It elects a President and seven Vice-Presidents. Its work is to discuss any question brought in by any member, especially problems about the rights and freedoms of peoples, and quarrels that might cause war. It appoints committees to study and report upon ways of improving the health and welfare of the nations, and makes recommendations about these things to the Security Council. In the General Assembly all the nations large and small are equal; each has only one vote. Its recommendations are passed by a majority vote or, if the matter is very important, by a two-thirds majority. The General Assembly can only investigate, discuss and recommend. It has no power to order anything done; but it has great influence. It has the power to bring out any mean, cruel, or wrong thing done by

a nation and hold it up for all the world to see. The General Assembly expresses the Public Opinion of the World.

The Security Council is always in session. It has five permanent delegates appointed by the five great powers and six delegates, each selected for two years by the Assembly to represent the smaller nations. Its great work is to keep peace in the world; if necessary, it may send an army to stop a war. But its power is checked by the veto. A veto is the right to say no. Each of the great powers in the Security Council has this right. Even if the other ten members agree to do a thing, one nation can use its veto to stop it. The smaller nations did not want to give the veto to the five Great Powers, but Russia insisted on having it and the other four agreed with her.

The United Nations has also an International Court of 15 Judges to try cases that come up between the nations; and a large number of committees to study and report upon different problems.

To organize all this work, the United Nations has an enormous office force headed by the Secretary-General, Mr. Trygve Lie (Trig vee Lee). He has eight assistants and about 3,000 members on his staff.

### (c) *Canada Becomes a Middle Power*

In the United Nations Canada made a startling discovery; she discovered that she was a leading nation. It was surprising and exciting. In the League of Nations she had been recognized as a nation, but as a young, small, unimportant one. In the United Nations she found herself a middle power, a leader of the smaller nations. It happened in this way.

During both World Wars Canada's men had fought alongside Britain and the United States, doing their full share. Her farmers and factory workers had poured out food and goods for the Allies; her people had given billions of dollars to those in

need. Canada came out of World War II with many nations in her debt. They saw her as a large, rich and free country and they looked up to her. More than that, they saw her people as steady, sensible, hard working, well trained in governing themselves, not proud, and they trusted them. The smaller nations respected the Great Powers, but they were always afraid that the Great Ones would do what was best for themselves rather than what was best for all. They were not afraid of Canada. They knew she had all she needed. When, at the first meeting of the United Nations, Prime Minister Mackenzie King said that Canada wanted only to co-operate with other nations and to help them, they believed him and took Canada for one of their leaders.

They had a second reason for doing this: Canada was a close friend of Britain and the United States. These two Great Powers were friends, yet they did not understand each other very well. But they both trusted Canada. She had grown up between them and she understood them both. She was not like either of them and yet she was like them both; she explained each of them to the other. In Canada, Britain saw a United States that she could understand and like. In Canada the United States saw a Britain that she could understand and like. Canada was a strong link between these two Great Powers and a friendly link between them and the smaller nations. She was a "Middle Power".

This is an important and difficult position. Canada's years of being the Junior team in the Big League, of compromising to keep the peace between Britain and the United States, have trained her for her new task of keeping the peace between great nations and small ones. More than that, Canada's idea of freedom not by separation but by association, is the idea by



which the modern world seeks to become free. But Canadians will have to study other nations carefully, and think and act wisely in order to do their important work well.

(d) *The United Nations At Work*

When the United Nations had worked out their Charter which was based on the Atlantic Charter, and appointed their committees, they began their work. At once the veto began to make trouble. Even when the other ten members of the Security Council all agreed to do a thing, Russia vetoed it. She refused to agree to the plans of the majority for forming an international army, navy and air Force to keep any nation from starting a war; reducing the armies of the nations; and for international control of atomic energy. An army of its own, and control of the armies and weapons of other nations, would give the Security Council power to keep peace in the world.

Without these two things the United Nations cannot force nations to keep the peace; but it has discovered that it can do a great deal by discussion and negotiation. Canada is a member of several important committees of the Assembly, and of the Atomic Energy Committee of the Security Council. She was an elected member of the Security Council itself for the years 1948 and 1949. In each she did her part in working out better ways of settling disputes; in setting up a pool of trained conciliators; and in working to limit the use of the veto. With others she worked to send conciliators to arrange truces between fighting nations; committees to investigate the causes of quarrels; and negotiators to settle disputes. Truces were made between Indonesia and Holland, India and Pakistan, and the Jews and Arabs in Palestine; and a committee was sent to study and report upon the fighting in Greece.

One of the first things the United Nations had to do was

to provide for over a million displaced persons living in camps in Germany and Austria. The International Refugee Organization was set up to find new homes for them. Canada took a leading part in this work by contributing \$5,415,000 in 1948 and again in 1949. She has also given homes in Canada to over 51,000 of these people and has agreed to accept as many more. Canada is a member of the Board of the International Children's Emergency Fund which carries on feeding and health services in 15 countries; to this fund Canada has given over six million dollars. Until the end of 1948 Canada was also a member of the Assembly's important Economic and Social Council whose commissions worked out the Universal Declaration of Human Rights; and a new agreement for the international control of dangerous drugs. Canada took an active part in the International Conference on Freedom of Information; and a Canadian, Dr. Brock Chisholm, was elected the Director-General of the World Health organization. Canada is also a member of the 18-Nation Council of the Food and Agriculture Organization which surveys the world's food resources and works to increase food production and improve its distribution to underfed nations. These are only a few of the committees, commissions, and organizations working under the United Nations and in all of which Canada is playing, or is ready to play her part.

(c) *The Atlantic Pact*

In 1947 the sad, tired, war-torn countries of Europe had a wonderful lift. President Truman announced the Marshall Plan. By this plan, first suggested by General Marshall, the United States offered to give over five billion dollars to the war-damaged countries of Europe. With this extraordinarily generous gift, they were to buy fertilizer, seed and stock for their farms and machinery for their factories, and so begin to

remake their war-shattered national lives. Russia refused the offer and refused to allow the other communist nations to share in it; but 16 broken countries of western Europe accepted it gladly, and began at once to prepare an outline of the amount of help they would need. With money, food, and materials with which to work, in three years they have made remarkable advances in rebuilding themselves.

The Marshall Plan required the nations receiving the money to help themselves, and each other, as much as possible. They had many meetings as they worked out their plans, and soon saw that they could increase their trade by lessening the custom duties between the different countries. Winston Churchill had already suggested a United States of Europe, and now many people began to talk of it.

As Russia still refused to co-operate in forming an international army to keep the peace, the European nations grew more and more afraid of her. The United Nations Charter allows nations to form a group to protect themselves against attack until the Security Council comes to their rescue. Suddenly Belgium, Holland, and Luxembourg announced that they had formed such a group. When Russia objected, M. Spaak of Belgium told her plainly in the General Assembly that it was fear of her that made them do it. After that things happened in a hurry: Britain and France joined the Benelux countries in a group called Western Union. This Agreement had hardly been signed when Louis St. Laurent of Canada suggested that Canada and the United States should join the Western Union nations in an Atlantic Pact to defend the nations of the North Atlantic. This Pact was agreed upon in 1949, and Italy, Norway and Denmark came into it.

The Atlantic Pact Nations are now rapidly rebuilding themselves. Food is more plentiful, trade is growing, and they

are preparing a united army, navy, and airforce to resist attack. As they grow stronger year by year it is hoped that they may be able to keep the world's peace until the Security Council of the United Nations is able to agree upon a plan for a World Police Force.

(f) *The Cold War*

Soon after the war the nations began to divide into two groups: the communist nations and the democratic nations. This was not surprising as the two groups had different beliefs and different ways of living and governing themselves.

The communist nations believe that they have the right to force other nations to become communist even against the wishes of a majority of their people. The democratic nations believe that each country has a right to choose for itself how it shall live and govern itself. The democracies do not think it wrong for the communist nations to be communist; but they do think it wrong for them to force other nations to become communist against their will.

So the two groups stand opposed to one another. The communists are trying to force as many other nations as they can to become communist. The democratic nations are trying by giving them money and advice to help weaker nations to stand on their own feet and choose for themselves the kind of government they want. This struggle between the democratic nations and the communists, which is fought with propaganda rather than with weapons, has been called "the Cold War".

## IV

### ENTER NEWFOUNDLAND

At midnight on March 31, 1949, Newfoundland entered Confederation. She became our tenth province and Canada

was complete at last. April 1 was Newfoundland Day. All across the nation flags flew, and 21-gun salutes were fired; officials held ceremonies; and the people celebrated. For weeks the pupils in the schools had been studying Newfoundland, working out projects and enterprises, and preparing programmes about her. On Newfoundland Day they had a holiday. It was a proud day for Canada and every Canadian hopes it may prove to have been a fortunate one for Newfoundland.

Newfoundland had become prosperous during the war, but she was still governed by a Commission. Imagine her excitement when suddenly Britain announced that she should now choose the form of government she wanted. In 1946, a national convention suggested that the people should choose whether to remain under the Commission; to return to self-government; or to unite with Canada. In 1948, the people voted on these three choices, but the vote did not show a clear majority. Later they voted again on the last two choices and there was a clear majority for union with Canada. Delegates were sent to Ottawa where they were welcomed heartily, and the terms of the union were arranged. These were signed in December and, on March 31, 1949, Newfoundland "came in".

The union was a happy thing for Canada. The war had shown everyone how vital Newfoundland is to the defence of our country. At the same time it made the island province one of the world's great air-crossroads. On the big airfields at Gander and Goose Bay (Labrador) the air traffic of Europe and America lands, refuels, and passes on east, west, and south. Newfoundland guards Canada's eastern doorway and adds greatly to her security and to the speed and safety of her overseas communications. She brings into Confederation rich resources, and the richest gift of all, a brave, strong, hard-working, high-hearted people.



Newfoundland Enters  
Confederation



For her part, Newfoundland now shares Canada's family allowances, old age pensions, health and welfare services. She hopes, and we hope, that she will increase her industries and enlarge her trade. With the Canadian market before her and Canada's experience in aviation and mining behind her, she should be drawn quickly into the economic life of the nation. Beyond that she will inspire, and be inspired by our vigorously growing national feeling and culture, our opportunities for service in the cause of peace and human rights, for developing into a great nation.

. . . . .

On a spring morning, 452 years ago John Cabot of Bristol first saw the high, rocky shores of his "new found land" rising out of the ocean. On that day Canada's Great Adventure began. Today this part of the story ends, as it began, with Newfoundland. For this is the end of the story of what your forefathers and foremothers have done with Canada. The rest of the story is yours to make and tell. Take it away, Youth!

THE END

# Index

- Acadia, 51, 52, 57, 71-4, 76, 101, 103, 105, 127, 134-5, 163, 174  
 Acadians, 159, 160  
 Alaska Boundary Treaty, 447  
 American Revolution, 200, 219, 237  
 Argall, Capt., 54, 71-2  
 Arts, The, 354-7, 433-4  
 Athabasca, 185, 187, 188  
 Atlantic Pact, 461  
 Airports, 416, 435, 463  
 Aviation, 394-6, 399
- Balboa, 35  
 Baldwin, Robert, 296, 297, 443, 448  
 Bees, 213, 215, 280  
 Belle Isle, 32, 33, 45  
 Biarni, 22  
 Biencourt, 53, 73  
 Bigot, Intendant, 148, 153  
 Borden, Sir Robert, 381, 384, 386, 387, 407, 448  
 Boucher, Pierre, 87, 89  
 Brattalid, 21, 22  
 British Commonwealth of Nations, 298, 451  
 British North America, 216, 221, 222, 230, 231, 244, 245, 265-6, 274, 284, 442  
 British North America Act, 323, 406  
 Brock, General Sir Isaac, 239  
 Brulé, Nicholas, 62, 106, 196  
 Burpee, David, 161, 201
- Cabot, John, 26-31, 41  
 Cadotte, 181, 182  
 Canada Company, 268  
 C.C.F. Party, 408  
 Canadian Shield, 2, 5, 7-8, 333, 375, 438  
 Canals, 270, 272, 295  
 Cape Breton, 28, 135, 139, 157, 163, 164, 230  
 Cape Diamond, 36, 57, 131, 149, 150  
 Carleton, Sir Guy, 170, 202-3, 207, 210, 216  
 Cartier, Jacques, 35-39, 41, 47, 52, 197  
 Chaleur Bay, 36, 47, 230
- Champlain, 50, 57, 58, 60, 62-3, 65, 68, 69, 78, 106, 120, 197  
 Church, Colonel, 133-4  
 Churches, 162, 286-7, 304, 365, 405  
 Civil War, 315  
 Clergy Reserves, 268, 287  
 Clipper Ship, 279  
 Colbert, 88-90, 94, 95  
 Columbus, Christopher, 26-28, 30  
 Company of New France, 64, 68, 69, 71, 74, 90  
 Confederation, 320, 322, 323, 326, 327, 332, 333, 351, 445  
 Conservation, 5, 6, 9, 30, 33, 166-7, 184, 236, 331, 376, 438  
 Lack of, 234, 236, 256, 275, 338, 371, 375, 401-2  
 Coureurs de bois, 68, 101, 122, 129, 136  
 Cunard Line, 271
- Dollier de Casson, 115, 116, 117, 136  
 Da Gama, Vasco, 35  
 De Razilly, Isaac, 74, 101  
 Dinosaurs, 3, 4  
 Douglas, James, 259, 312, 314  
 Du Luth, 122-3, 128, 129  
 Durham, Lord, 298-99, 300-1, 307, 443  
 Denys, Nicholas, 74, 76
- Education, 247, 288-91, 304, 314, 361-2, 405  
 Elgin, Lord, 301, 306  
 Eric the Red, 21  
 Eskimos, 11, 13, 397  
 Exports, 164, 168, 235, 236, 359
- Factories, 375, 386, 390, 391-2  
 Family Compact, 293-5, 299, 443  
 Farming, 19, 166, 205-7, 209, 211, 212-13, 218, 230, 234, 277, 309, 371, 374-6, 400, 435, 386, 390  
 Fathers,  
 Brebeuf, 78, 80, 83  
 Daniel, 78  
 Davost, 78  
 Lalement, 83  
 Le Caron, 62-3

- Le Jeune, 81, 86, 90  
 Marquette, 120  
 Fathers of Confederation, 317-19, 353  
 Feudal System, 92-3  
 Fisheries, 8, 23, 28, 31, 33, 34, 41, 42,  
 43-6, 67, 100, 164, 166, 219, 224,  
 245-7, 264, 278, 351, 393-4, 403, 435,  
 445-6  
 Fleming, Sir Sandford, 347, 360  
 Forts,  
   Chipewyan, 254  
   Churchill, 189, 190, 191  
   Duquesne, 143, 145  
   Frontenac, 122, 123, 124, 128, 210  
   Nelson, 178  
   Niagara, 209  
   St. Louis, 64-5, 90, 112  
   Vancouver, 262-3  
   York, 189  
 Franklin, Sir John, 397  
 Fraser, Simon, 222, 223-5, 229  
 Frobisher, Thomas, 184, 186  
 Frontenac, 120, 121, 125, 129  
 Fur-trade, 8, 46-8, 58-61, 65, 67, 69, 70-  
 1, 76, 78, 82, 85, 88, 101, 107, 120,  
 127, 136, 138, 148, 157, 168, 175,  
 176, 179, 180-1, 184, 186, 191-2, 198,  
 222, 224, 225, 235, 238, 243, 251, 256,  
 259, 262, 264, 270, 310, 312, 313, 397,  
 435  
 Gaspé, 36, 64, 164  
 "Gentlemen Adventurers", 177, 179, 180,  
 183-4, 188, 191, 249  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 41-2, 55  
 Glengarry Settlement, 211  
 Government, Federal, 321, 325-7, 340,  
 353, 366, 392, 397, 402, 406, 412  
   Provincial, 321, 366, 392, 406  
   Struggle for Responsible Government,  
   291-304, 321  
 Grand Banks, 32, 33, 46, 105  
 Grand Portage, 187, 188  
 Great Lakes, 6, 7, 51, 63, 66, 115, 123,  
 187  
 Great Plain, 3, 7, 333  
 Green Bay, 109, 117, 119, 124, 125  
 Groseilliers, Chouart, 108-113, 117, 118,  
 177, 196  
 Habitant, 94-5, 96, 97, 98, 124, 129, 136,  
 138, 153  
   Company of the Habitants, 71, 85,  
   86  
 Haldimand, Governor, 154, 209  
 Halifax, 144-5, 146, 159, 164, 174, 410,  
 417  
 Hearne, Samuel, 189, 191, 196, 198, 225,  
 396  
 Hébert, Louis, 61, 68  
 Henday, Anthony, 178, 196  
 Henry, Alexander, 180-182  
 Homes, Early, 202, 204, 205, 210, 212,  
 220, 230, 282  
 Howe, Joseph, 294, 300-1, 308, 322, 327-  
 8, 358, 443  
 Hudson Bay, 2, 60, 65, 112, 117, 118,  
 119, 128, 135, 142, 222, 249, 257, 177,  
 178, 184, 186, 188  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 177, 179, 184,  
 185-7, 189, 191, 225-6, 245, 249, 251,  
 254, 255-6, 311-4, 328, 329, 333, 340  
 Hudson, Henry, 60  
   "The Hungry Year", 211  
 Hydro-Electric Power, 375, 432  
 Ice-age, 10  
 Iceland, 21-22, 31  
 Immigration,  
   Irish, 246  
   Scottish, 211, 230  
   U.S., 231  
 Imperial Conferences, 386, 387, 453  
 Imports, 169  
 Indians, 11-19, 36-7, 46-9, 96-7, 116,  
 129, 154, 157, 160, 177, 184, 191, 226,  
 245, 258-60, 238-40, 264, 310, 334-5,  
 338, 343, 356, 396, 397  
 Indian Chiefs,  
   Brant, Joseph, 157, 209  
   Donnacona, 36, 38  
   Pontiac, 154-7, 182, 183  
   Tecumseh, 240, 241  
 Indian Medicine Man, 15, 16  
 Indian Tribes,  
   Algonkian, 57, 66, 69, 82, 84  
   Blackfeet, 11, 18, 178, 191, 264, 334-  
   5  
   Cree, 11, 13, 18, 110-13, 123, 178,  
   334

- Hurons, 12, 13, 59, 62, 63, 65-6, 69, 78, 80, 82-5, 108, 128  
 Iroquois, 12-13, 18, 37, 50, 57-8, 63, 65-6, 81-4, 88-9, 91, 105-6, 108, 110, 112, 120-3, 128-9, 209, 270  
 Staring Hairs (Ottawas), 62, 107-10  
 Indies, West, 26, 27, 34, 50, 73, 100, 105, 130, 139, 140, 168, 169, 200, 219, 237, 265, 278  
 Inventions, 360-1, 390, 391  
 Isle St. Jean, 101, 135, 157, 163  
 Jay's Treaty, 243, 441  
 Johnson, Sir William, 157, 182  
 Jolliet, 114, 116, 120  
 Kelsey, Henry, 178, 196  
 King, Mackenzie, 407, 420, 458  
 Kirke, Sir David, 103  
 Labrador, 28, 29, 32, 157, 219, 463  
 Labor Unions, 391  
 Lachine, 37, 50, 59, 60, 116, 128, 129, 187  
 Lafontaine, Louis, 296, 330, 443  
 LaSalle, Robert de, 116, 120-22, 123-5, 128, 142, 184  
 LaTour, Charles de, 73-4, 76, 101, 162  
 Laurier, Sir Wilfrid, 367, 377, 385, 407, 448  
 Laval, Bishop, 98-100, 123  
 La Vérendrye, Pierre, 143  
 League of Nations, 387-88, 392, 411, 448-9, 454, 457  
 Leif the Lucky, 22, 24  
 Le Moyne d'Iberville, 132-33, 142, 165, 178  
     Brothers, 129, 131  
 Louisburg, 143-4, 146, 148  
 Lumbering, 6-8, 235, 275-7, 375  
 Macdonald, Sir John, 275, 317, 319, 323, 326, 328, 332, 345, 366, 392, 446, 448  
 Macdonald, Miles, 250  
 Macdonald, "Red George", 239  
 Mackenzie, Alexander, 192, 194-5, 222-3, 229, 249, 264, 396  
 Mackenzie, William Lyon, 295, 443  
 Mackinac, 181, 184, 187, 240  
 Maisonneuve, 81, 84  
 Manitoba Act, 330  
 Manufacturing, 167-8, 351, 400, 432, 435  
 McTavish, Simon, 186, 222  
 Meighen, Arthur, 407  
 Merchant Navy, 418  
 Métis, 252, 310, 311, 329, 342  
 Military Service Act, 385  
 Minerals, 1, 5, 25, 38, 39, 68, 278, 351, 397, 400, 435  
     Gold Rush, 313-14, 331, 376  
 Missionaries, 334-5  
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 147, 149  
 Montreal, 37, 59, 60, 81, 84, 88, 95, 99, 107, 115, 123, 129-30, 136, 148, 151, 154, 166, 174, 180, 181, 183, 186, 188, 209, 232, 235, 237, 270  
 Murray, General James, 152, 154, 158, 159, 166, 170, 202  
 Newfoundland, 28, 32, 33, 41-2, 55, 73, 77, 103-4, 105, 132-5, 157, 164-66, 238, 245, 376-7, 403, 416, 440, 442, 455, 462-4  
 Newspapers, 166, 247, 357-9  
 Niagara, 148, 157, 182, 240, 241, 243  
 Nicolet, 106, 196  
 Nootka Agreement, 199  
 North West Mounted Police, 336-7, 339, 343, 399  
 North West Company, 186, 187, 188, 191, 226, 228-9, 235, 240, 249, 251, 253, 254-5, 256  
 Oil, 5, 437  
 Okanagan Trail, 261  
 Order of Good Times, 52  
 Oregon Treaty, 312  
 Papineau, Louis, 295, 443  
 "Pedlars", 177, 179, 180, 183, 184-6, 191, 249  
 Phipps, Sir William, 130, 133  
 Place Royal, 59, 62, 69, 81  
 Pond, Peter, 185, 191-2, 193-4, 196  
 Pontgrave, 50-2, 57, 59  
 Port of Joy, 163  
 Port Royal, 49, 52-3, 61, 71-2, 74, 76, 101, 130, 133-4  
 Postal Service, 273  
     Early Post Offices, 169  
     Postage Stamp, 360  
     Wm. Weller's Royal Mail Line, 274  
 Poutrincourt, Baron de, 51, 53, 73  
 Prince Edward Island, 163, 207-8, 230, 231

- Pulp and Paper, 377  
 Puritans, 72  
 Quebec, 36, 57, 61-4, 69, 80-4, 86, 88,  
     90, 99, 112-3, 129-30, 135, 137, 139,  
     141, 148, 151, 163, 166, 174, 175, 202,  
     232, 237, 239, 243  
 Quebec Act, 170, 174  
 Radio, 391, 434  
 Radisson, Pierre, 108-13, 117, 118, 177,  
     179, 196  
 Railways, 272-3, 307, 309-10, 316, 332,  
     360, 377, 445-7  
     Canadian National, 370  
     Canadian Northern, 370  
     Canadian Pacific, 346-50  
     Grand Trunk, 307-8  
     Hudson Bay, 399  
     Intercolonial, 345  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 53  
 Ranching, 341-2, 376  
 Rebellion Losses Bill, 302  
 Reciprocity Treaty, 306, 316, 323, 444,  
     445, 447  
 Red River Settlement, 250-1, 254, 256,  
     264, 309, 328-9, 330, 334  
*Relations*, 81, 114  
 Riel, Louis, 329, 343-4  
 Roads, 164, 169, 232-3, 268-9, 314, 315,  
     331  
 Robinson, Peter, 268  
 Roberval, 38, 39, 40  
 Rogers, Major, 154  
 Rowell-Sirois Report, 406  
 R.C.A.F., 414, 416, 418-19, 425  
 R.C.N., 416-18  
 St. Ignace, 83  
 St. John's, 32, 39, 41, 133  
 St. Joseph, 83  
 St. Laurent, Louis, 461  
 Ste. Marie, 79, 80, 83  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 107, 109, 110, 114, 119  
 Saunders, William, 371  
 Scurvy, 37, 52, 57, 153  
 Seigneurs, 93-4, 136, 138, 153, 181, 217,  
     295  
 Selkirk, Lord, 250, 252, 253-4, 264  
 Selkirk, Alex., 231  
 Settlers, Early, 207-8, 230-2, 236, 247,  
     267-8, 370  
 Settlements, Early  
     New Brunswick, 160-2  
     Nova Scotia, 159-61  
     Prince Edward Island, 163-4  
 Seven Oaks, 253  
 Seven Years' War, 174, 179  
 Ship Building, 237, 278, 279, 351, 359,  
     360, 375  
 Simcoe, Colonel John, 214, 218, 231, 233  
 Simpson, George, 257-8, 262, 310  
 Smith, Donald, 346, 350  
 Smith, Private Ernest Alvia, 423-4  
 Sackett's Harbor, 241  
 Social Credit Party, 408  
 Spice Islands, 25-7, 35  
 Sports, 280-1  
 Stamp Act, 172  
 Steamers, 270  
 Sydenham, Lord, 300  
 Tadoussac, 57, 58, 59, 69, 88  
 Talbot, Thomas, 268  
 Talon, Jean, 91, 92-3, 94-6, 100, 106-7,  
     114, 117, 120, 125, 136, 147  
 Telegraph, 360, 376  
 Telephone, 361  
 Thompson, David, 224, 225-9, 260  
 Three Rivers, 107, 112-3, 129  
 Time Zone, Introduction of, 360  
 Tracy, Marquis de, 90-2, 103  
 Transportation, 232-34, 399, 435, 437  
 Transportation, modes of  
     canoe, 15, 16, 19  
     dog-sleds, 14  
     kyak, 15  
     snowshoes, 15, 19  
     stage coaches, 270  
     toboggans, 14, 19  
     travois, 15  
 Tonto, 123-5, 128  
 Trade, 164, 166, 168, 169, 175, 202, 224,  
     233, 234, 237-8, 242, 245, 247, 261,  
     265, 454  
 Trans-Atlantic Ferry Pilots, 420  
 Treaty of Paris, 157, 175  
 Treaty of Utrecht, 135  
 Union Act, 300



- United Empire Loyalists, 200-6, 207, 209-10, 221, 225, 234, 275, 286, 440  
United Nations Organization, 455-60  
United States, 11, 175, 200, 221, 237, 238, 243, 261, 265, 306, 315, 420, 440, 444  
Vancouver, Capt. George, 197, 198, 199  
Vancouver Island, 312-13  
Van Horne, Wm., 346, 347, 350  
Vérendrye, 142, 143, 178, 183, 197  
Vignau, Nicholas, 60  
Voyageurs, 188, 192, 196, 224-5, 236, 240, 252, 254, 257, 258, 287, 309  
Washington, George, 145, 173, 174-5  
Watson, Brook, 203  
Wheat, 5, 8, 235, 371, 399  
    Pool, 392-3, 403  
Whitbourne, Sir Richard, 55, 56, 76  
Wolfe, James, 148, 202  
World War I, 380  
World War II, 412-32, 450  
Wright, Philemon, 235  
York Factory, 191







FC 172 D55 1950 C-2  
DICKIE D J 1883-1972  
THE GREAT ADVENTURE

39584806 CURR HIST



\*000011546181\*

FC 172 D55 1950 c.2  
Dickie , D. J., 1883-1972  
The great adventure;

39584806 CURR HIST

